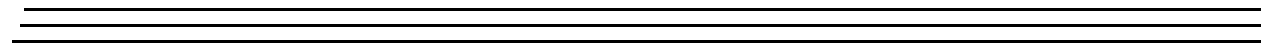
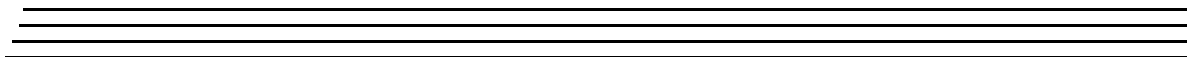
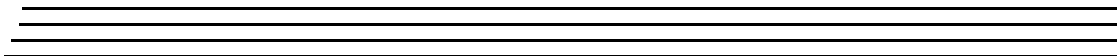




UM-17790-D

GLOBAL LAB Image/2
User's Manual
(for Windows)



Fourth Edition
April, 2001

Copyright © 1999-2001 by Data Translation, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, by photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Data Translation, Inc.

Information furnished by Data Translation, Inc. is believed to be accurate and reliable; however, no responsibility is assumed by Data Translation, Inc. for its use; nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent rights of Data Translation, Inc.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer software clause at 48 C.F.R. 252.227-7013, or in subparagraph (c)(2) of the Commercial Computer Software - Registered Rights clause at 48 C.F.R., 52-227-19 as applicable. Data Translation, Inc., 100 Locke Drive, Marlboro, MA 01752

Data Translation, Inc.
100 Locke Drive
Marlboro, MA 01752-1192
(508) 481-3700

www.datatranslation.com
Fax: (508) 481-8620
E-mail: info@datx.com

Data Translation and GLOBAL LAB are registered trademarks of Data Translation, Inc. MACH Series is a trademark of Data Translation, Inc.

All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Table of Contents

About this Manual	xv
Chapter 1: Installing GLOBAL LAB Image/2	1
Introduction.....	2
System Requirements	3
Installing the Software.....	4
Upgrade Instructions.....	6
Installing a New Version of GLI/2.....	6
Saving Custom Filters.....	7
Testing the Security Key	9
Using the Online Help.....	11
Removing the Software	12
Chapter 2: Using GLOBAL LAB Image/2	13
Introduction.....	14
Starting GLOBAL LAB Image/2	15
The Main Application	16
File Menu Options.....	16
Window Menu Options	18
Display Menu Options.....	19
Options Menu Options.....	24
Tools Menu Options	29
Toolbar	31
Status Bar	32
Viewports.....	34

ROIs	36
ROI Manager Tool	36
ROI Types	36
The Active ROI	38
Attaching ROIs	38
Selecting ROI Types and Actions	39
Point and Click Method	39
Short-Cut Key Method	41
Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts	42
Zoom	43
Images	44
Image Types	44
Managing Images	46
Converting Bitmap Files to .AVI Files	46
The Clipboard	47
Printing	48
File I/O	49
Opening an Image	49
Saving an Image	49
Drag and Drop	50
Supported File Types	50
Initialization File	50
Localization File	51

Chapter 3: Using the Arithmetic Tool	53
Introduction.	54
Description of Arithmetic Tool Options	57
Example of Using the Arithmetic Tool	60
Point & Click Script	63
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	63
Editing the Point & Click Script	63
Chapter 4: Using the AVI Player Tool	65
Introduction.	66
Description of AVI Player Tool Options	68
Example of Using the AVI Player Tool	72
Point & Click Script	73
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	73
Editing the Point & Click Script	73
Chapter 5: Using the Blob Analysis Tool	75
Introduction.	76
Description of Blob Analysis Tool Options.	90
File Menu Options.	90
Options Menu Options.	91
Transfer Menu Options	92
Main Dialog Box Options.	94
Blob Settings Dialog Box Options.	99
Statistic Settings Dialog Box Options.	104
P&C Script Settings Dialog Box Options.	106
Example of Using the Blob Analysis Tool.	109
Point & Click Script	113
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	113
Editing the Point & Click Script	113

Chapter 6: Using the Calibration Tool	115
Introduction.	116
Description of Calibration Tool Options.	120
File Menu Options.	120
Options Menu Options.	121
Main Dialog Box Options.	122
Example of Using the Calibration Tool	126
Point & Click Script	129
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	129
Editing the Point & Click Script	130
 Chapter 7: Using the Color Plane Tool	 131
Introduction.	132
Description of Color Plane Tool Options	134
Example of Using the Color Plane Tool	135
Point & Click Script	138
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	138
Editing the Point & Click Script	138
 Chapter 8: Using the Custom Script Tool	 139
Introduction.	140
Description of Custom Script Tool Options	142
Example of Using the Custom Script Tool	144
 Chapter 9: Using the Display Tool	 149
Introduction.	150
Description of Display Tool Options.	153
File Menu Options.	153
Edit Menu Options	154
Function Menu Options	156

Transfer Menu Options	157
Display Options Dialog Box Options.	159
Example of Using the Display Tool	166
Point & Click Script	171
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	171
Editing the Point & Click Script	171
Chapter 10: Using the Edge Finder Tool	173
Introduction.	174
Description of Edge Finder Tool Options.	178
File Menu Options.	178
Options Menu Options.	179
Main Dialog Box Options.	181
Example of Using the Edge Finder Tool	186
Point & Click Script	190
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	190
Editing the Point & Click Script	190
Chapter 11: Using the Export Tool.	191
Introduction.	192
Description of Export Tool Options.	193
Variables Tab Options.	194
Images Tab Options	198
Example of Using the Export Tool.	201
Point & Click Script	204
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	204
Editing the Point & Click Script	204

Chapter 12: Using the File Manager Tool	205
Introduction.	206
Description of File Manager Tool Options	208
File Menu Options f	208
Dialog Box Options.	209
Example of Using the File Manager Tool	212
Quick Example	212
Step-by-Step Example.	212
Point & Click Script	214
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	214
Editing the Point & Click Script	216
 Chapter 13: Using the Filter Tool	 217
Introduction.	218
Description of Filter Tool Options	220
File Menu Options.	220
Dialog Box Options.	221
Example of Using the Filter Tool	227
Point & Click Script	230
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	230
Editing the Point & Click Script	230
 Chapter 14: Using the Histogram Tool	 231
Introduction.	232
Description of Histogram Tool Options	234
Dialog Box Options.	234
File Menu Options.	235
Edit Menu Options	236
Function Menu Options	238
Transfer Menu Options	240
Point & Click Script Menu Options	243

Example of Using the Histogram Tool	246
Point & Click Script	248
Adding to the Point & Click Script.....	248
Editing the Point & Click Script	248
Chapter 15: Using the Image Manager Tool	249
Introduction.....	250
Description of Image Manager Tool Options.....	252
Example of Using the Image Manager Tool.....	255
Chapter 16: Using the Image Modifier Tool.....	257
Introduction.....	258
Description of Image Modifier Tool Options.....	259
Crop Tab Options	259
Rotation Tab Options	262
Scale Tab Options	264
Example of Using the Image Modifier Tool	266
Point & Click Script	270
Adding to the Point & Click Script.....	270
Editing the Point & Click Script	270
Chapter 17: Using the Import Tool.....	271
Introduction.....	272
Description of Import Tool Options.....	273
Variables Tab Options.....	273
Images Tab Options	275
Example of Using the Import Tool.....	277
Point & Click Script	278
Adding to the Point & Click Script.....	278
Editing the Point & Click Script	278

Chapter 18: Using the Line Profile Tool.	279
Introduction.	280
Description of Line Profile Tool Options	282
Dialog Box Options.	282
File Menu Options.	283
Edit Menu Options	284
Function Menu Options	286
Transfer Menu Options	290
Point & Click Script Menu Options	293
Line Profile Options Dialog Box Options	295
Find Edges Dialog Box Options	298
Example of Using the Line Profile Tool.	301
Point & Click Script	307
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	307
Editing the Point & Click Script	307
 Chapter 19: Using the Measurement Tool.	 309
Introduction.	310
Description of Measurement Tool Options.	312
Transfer Menu Options	312
Point & Click Script Menu Options	314
Main Dialog Box Options.	316
Example of Using the Measurement Tool.	328
Point & Click Script	332
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	332
Editing the Point & Click Script	332

Chapter 20: Using the Morphology Tool	333
Introduction.	334
Description of Morphology Tool Options.	336
File Menu Options.	336
Dialog Box Options.	337
Example of Using the Morphology Tool.	340
Point & Click Script	343
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	343
Editing the Point & Click Script	343
 Chapter 21: Using the Picture Tool	 345
Introduction.	346
Description of Picture Tool Options	348
File Menu Options.	348
Settings Menu Options.	349
Dialog Box Options.	352
Example of Using the Picture Tool.	358
Point & Click Script	359
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	359
Editing the Point & Click Script	359
 Chapter 22: Using the Pixel Change Tool	 361
Introduction.	362
Description of Pixel Change Tool Options	363
Example of Using the Pixel Change Tool	365
Point & Click Script	367
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	367
Editing the Point & Click Script	367

Chapter 23: Using the Point & Click Script Tool	369
Introduction.	370
Description of Point & Click Script Tool Options	374
File Menu Options.	374
Edit Menu Options	375
Options Menu Options.	376
Script Menu Options.	379
Dialog Box Options.	380
Example of Using the Point & Click Script Tool	393
 Chapter 24: Using the Prompt Tool	 401
Introduction.	402
Description of Prompt Tool Options	403
Button Tab Options	403
Text Tab.	406
Example of Using the Prompt Tool	408
Point & Click Script	410
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	410
Editing the Point & Click Script	410
 Chapter 25: Using the ROI Manager Tool	 411
Introduction.	412
Description of ROI Manager Tool Options.	413
Draw Tab Options.	413
Position Tab Options.	417
Example of Using the ROI Manager Tool.	420
Point & Click Script	424
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	424
Editing the Point & Click Script	424

Chapter 26: Using the Serial I/O Tool	427
Introduction.	428
Description of Serial I/O Tool Options	430
Example of Using the Serial I/O Tool	435
Point & Click Script	436
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	436
Editing the Point & Click Script	436
 Chapter 27: Using the Sound Tool	 437
Introduction.	438
Description of Sound Tool Options	439
Example of Using the Sound Tool	441
Point & Click Script	442
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	442
Editing the Point & Click Script	443
 Chapter 28: Using the Text Tool	 445
Introduction.	446
Description of Text Tool Options	448
Example of Using the Text Tool	451
Point & Click Script	454
Adding to the Point & Click Script.	454
Editing the Point & Click Script	454
 Chapter 29: Using the Threshold Tool	 455
Introduction.	456
Description of Threshold Tool Options	459
Threshold Display Graph Options	459
File Menu Options.	460
Edit Menu Options	461
Function Menu Options	463
Threshold Controls Dialog Box Options	463

Example of Using the Threshold Tool	467
Point & Click Script	469
Adding to the Point & Click Script	469
Editing the Point & Click Script	469
Chapter 30: Using the TWAIN Tool	471
Introduction	472
Description of TWAIN Tool Options	473
Point & Click Script	475
Adding to the Point & Click Script	475
Editing the Point & Click Script	475
Chapter 31: Product Support	477
General Checklist	478
Service and Support	479
Telephone Technical Support	479
E-Mail and Fax Support	482
World-Wide Web	482
Appendix A: Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts	483
Index	487

About this Manual

This manual describes how to install and use both the full GLOBAL LAB® Image/2 (GLI/2) package and GLI/2 Streamline™.

GLI/2 Streamline is a limited version of GLI/2. It is not supported for Windows NT 4.0. It does not include the GLOBAL LAB Image/2 API or the Custom Script, Export, Import, or Prompt tools. In addition, you can use the Point & Click Script tool to open and save only one script. This manual assumes that you are using the full GLI/2 package. Functions that are not supported for GLI/2 Streamline are noted throughout. Note, however, that some of the screens and dialog boxes may be slightly different for GLI/2 Streamline.

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for scientists, technicians, or others responsible for performing imaging operations. It is assumed that you are familiar with the Windows® 98, Windows Me (Millennium Edition), Windows NT® 4.0, or Windows 2000 operating environment on the IBM® PC or compatible computer platform, that you are familiar with image processing principles, and that you have clearly defined your requirements.

What You Should Learn from this Manual

Using this manual, you should be able to successfully install GLI/2 or GLI/2 Streamline and use the GLI/2 or GLI/2 Streamline application and image processing tools to perform imaging operations.

Organization of this Manual

This manual is organized as follows:

- [Chapter 1, “Installing GLOBAL LAB Image/2,”](#) describes how to install the GLI/2 application and tools.
- [Chapter 2, “Using GLOBAL LAB Image/2,”](#) describes how to use the GLI/2 application.
- [Chapter 3, “Using the Arithmetic Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Arithmetic tool.
- [Chapter 4, “Using the AVI Player Tool,”](#) describes how to use the AVI Player tool.
- [Chapter 5, “Using the Blob Analysis Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Blob Analysis tool.
- [Chapter 6, “Using the Calibration Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Calibration tool.
- [Chapter 7, “Using the Color Plane Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Color Plane tool.
- [Chapter 8, “Using the Custom Script Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Custom Script tool. Note that the Custom Script tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.
- [Chapter 9, “Using the Display Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Display tool.
- [Chapter 10, “Using the Edge Finder Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Edge Finder tool.
- [Chapter 11, “Using the Export Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Export tool. Note that the Export tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.
- [Chapter 12, “Using the File Manager Tool,”](#) describes how to use the File Manager tool.
- [Chapter 13, “Using the Filter Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Filter tool.

- [Chapter 14, “Using the Histogram Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Histogram tool.
- [Chapter 15, “Using the Image Manager Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Image Manager tool.
- [Chapter 16, “Using the Image Modifier Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Image Modifier tool.
- [Chapter 17, “Using the Import Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Import tool. Note that the Import tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.
- [Chapter 18, “Using the Line Profile Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Line Profile tool.
- [Chapter 19, “Using the Measurement Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Measurement tool.
- [Chapter 20, “Using the Morphology Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Morphology tool.
- [Chapter 21, “Using the Picture Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Picture tool.
- [Chapter 22, “Using the Pixel Change Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Pixel Change tool.
- [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Point & Click Script tool.
- [Chapter 24, “Using the Prompt Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Prompt tool. Note that the Prompt tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.
- [Chapter 25, “Using the ROI Manager Tool,”](#) describes how to use the ROI Manager tool.
- [Chapter 26, “Using the Serial I/O Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Serial I/O tool.
- [Chapter 27, “Using the Sound Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Sound tool.

- [Chapter 28, “Using the Text Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Text tool.
- [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool,”](#) describes how to use the Threshold tool.
- [Chapter 30, “Using the TWAIN Tool,”](#) describes how to use the TWAIN tool.
- [Chapter 31, “Product Support,”](#) describes how to get help if you have trouble using GLI/2 or GLI/2 Streamline.
- [Appendix A, “Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts,”](#) describes how ROIs are used in point & click scripts.

An index completes this manual.

Conventions Used in this Manual

The following conventions are used in this manual:

- Notes provide useful information that requires special emphasis, cautions provide information to help you avoid losing data or damaging your equipment, and warnings provide information to help you avoid catastrophic damage to yourself or your equipment.
- Items that you select or type are shown in **bold**. For example, if the instructions tell you to click **OK**, click the OK button found in the GLI/2 window.
- Angle brackets indicate that you must press a key on the keyboard. For example, if the instructions tell you to press **<Spacebar>**, press the space bar key.
- When navigating the screens, an instruction such as **File | Save** means to select “Save” from the drop-down menu under “File.”

Related Information

Refer to the following documentation for more information on using GLI/2:

- *GLOBAL LAB Image/2 API Manual*. This manual contains information that allows you to create custom tools and your own imaging applications using the GLI/2 object-oriented APIs. APIs are included for the GLI/2 application and for most tools. Note that no APIs are provided for GLI/2 Streamline.
- GLOBAL LAB Image/2 online help. This contains all the information included in this manual and in the *GLOBAL LAB Image/2 API Manual*. Refer to [page 11](#) for information on how to open this help file.
- Documentation for Data Translation® frame grabber boards.

Some boards are shipped with a user's manual and a device driver manual. The user's manual describes how to install the board, how to get started using the board, and the features of the board. The device driver manual describes how to install the device driver for the board and the capabilities supported by the device driver.

Some boards are shipped with a getting started manual and a user's manual. The getting started manual describes how to install the board, how to install the device driver for the board, and how to get started using the board. The user's manual describes the features of the board and the capabilities supported by the device driver for the board.

Where to Get Help

Should you run into problems installing or using GLI/2, the Technical Support Department is available to provide technical assistance. Refer to [Chapter 31, “Product Support,”](#) for information on how to contact the Technical Support Department. If you are outside the U.S. or Canada, call your local distributor, whose number is listed in your Data Translation product handbook or contact the Data Translation web site (www.datatranslation.com).



Installing GLOBAL LAB Image/2

Introduction.....	2
System Requirements	3
Installing the Software.....	4
Upgrade Instructions.....	6
Testing the Security Key	9
Using the Online Help.....	11
Removing the Software	12

Introduction

GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2) is an object-oriented, scientific imaging software product that provides the following features:

- Is intuitive and easy to use.
- Can be used as a stand-alone image processing application.
- Allows you to easily add custom tools that you can use with the tools supplied with GLI/2 and with third-party tools.
- Supports a wide range of imaging devices such as imaging boards, NDT equipment, and medical devices.
- Runs under Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, and Windows 2000.

Note that you cannot run GLI/2 Streamline under Windows NT 4.0.

To make GLI/2 powerful, expandable, and still easy to use and understand, the application is segmented into two distinct parts. These two parts can be described by using the familiar idea of a simple workshop. In a workshop, you would have an object that you are working on, for example, a block of wood that you want to turn into a toy boat. In the workshop are several tools, such as screwdrivers, drills, sanders, and a hammer. You use these tools on the block of wood to turn it into the toy boat. In other words, tools are being used on an object.

To relate this to how GLI/2 is designed, think of an image as the object you need to work on. You might need to enhance the image to see a fine detail, to better show a defect, or to take some kind of measurement. In any case, you need some image processing tools to work on the image. These tools might perform a histogram, run a filter, or subtract one image from another. In these cases, you could use the GLI/2 Histogram tool, Filter tool, or Arithmetic tool.

System Requirements

1

The following are the recommended requirements for using GLI/2:

- Pentium-class/AMD-based processor (or higher).
- Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0, or Windows 2000. For Windows NT, you must have Service Pack 3 (or higher) and Administrator rights to install this application.

Note that GLI/2 Streamline is not supported for Windows NT 4.0.

- At least 32 MB of RAM.
- At least 60 MB of available hard disk space.
- CD-ROM drive.
- SVGA monitor.
- Display resolution set to 1024x768 (recommended).
- Frame grabber board (optional).
- Sound card (optional).
- Microsoft® Visual C/C++ 6.0 for creating custom tools or applications.

Installing the Software

Note: If a previous version of GLI/2 is already installed in your system, refer to [page 6](#) for upgrade instructions.

Before installing GLI/2, make sure that the security key that you received with the GLI/2 package is attached to the parallel port of your computer. If you have any problems installing GLI/2, you can use the Key Test Utility, which is shipped with GLI/2, to ensure that you are using the appropriate security key. For more information, refer to the next section.

To install GLI/2, perform the following steps:

1. Insert the GLI/2 CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
If Auto-Run is enabled, the software installation procedure starts automatically when you insert the CD-ROM; continue at step 5. If Auto-Run is disabled, continue at step 2.
2. From the Windows Start menu, click **Run**.
The Run dialog box is displayed.
3. Either enter **x:\SETUP.EXE** (where *x* is the letter of your CD-ROM drive) or use the Browse button to locate SETUP.EXE.
4. Click **OK**.
The Welcome screen is displayed.
5. Respond to the on-screen instructions, as appropriate.
6. When the software installation is complete, click **Finish**.

If you have not already done so, it is recommended that you read the Release Notes document (README.TXT). This document contains valuable and up-to-date information concerning GLI/2. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**, click the name of the GLI/2 program group (**Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2**, by default), and then click **Release Notes**. The Release Notes document is also located on the GLI/2 CD-ROM; use any text editor to view this file.

Upgrade Instructions

This section describes how to upgrade to the current version of GLI/2 if a previous version of GLI/2 or GLI/2 Streamline is already installed in your system and how to save any custom filters that you may have created.

Installing a New Version of GLI/2

Note: If you used the Filter tool to create your own custom filters or to modify any of the default filters shipped with GLI/2, refer to the next section before you install GLI/2 to ensure that your custom filters are preserved. In addition, if you modified any installed files (such as DTTools.ini), make sure that you save them to a different directory so that they are not overwritten.

If a previous version of GLI/2 or GLI/2 Streamline is already installed in your system, perform the following steps to upgrade to the current version of GLI/2:

1. Leave the original security key installed in the parallel port of your computer.
2. Insert the upgrade security key that was included in the GLI/2 Ver. 3.0 upgrade package into the original security key.
3. Insert the CD-ROM that was included in the GLI/2 Ver. 3.0 upgrade package into the CD-ROM drive.
If Auto-Run is enabled, the software installation procedure starts automatically when you insert the CD-ROM; continue at step 7. If Auto-Run is disabled, continue at step 4.
4. From the Windows Start menu, click **Run**.
The Run dialog box is displayed.

5. Either enter **x:\SETUP.EXE** (where *x* is the letter of your CD-ROM drive) or use the Browse button to locate SETUP.EXE.
6. Click **OK**.
The Welcome screen is displayed.
7. Respond to the on-screen instructions, as appropriate.
8. When the software installation is complete, click **Finish**.
The software is updated to include the new features of GLI/2.
9. Remove the upgrade security key from your computer and store it in a safe place. You will need the upgrade security key if you ever have to perform the upgrade procedure again.

Note that the upgrade security key is associated with the original security key. You can use the upgrade security key to update GLI/2 on any computer that has the original security key installed.

If you have not already done so, it is recommended that you read the Release Notes document (README.TXT). This document contains valuable and up-to-date information concerning GLI/2. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**, click the name of the GLI/2 program group (**Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2**, by default), and then click **Release Notes**. The Release Notes document is also located on the GLI/2 CD-ROM; use any text editor to view this file.

Saving Custom Filters

Versions of GLI/2 prior to Version 2.5 saved only a .ker file. This file contained the kernel information only; it did not contain the gain, offset, divide, or thresholding information. GLI/2 Version 2.5 or higher saves both a .ker file, which contains the kernel information, and a .flt file, which contains the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding information.

If you used a version of GLI/2 prior to Version 2.5 to create your own custom filters or modify any of the default filters, perform the following steps to ensure that your .ker files are preserved and that the appropriate .flt files are created:

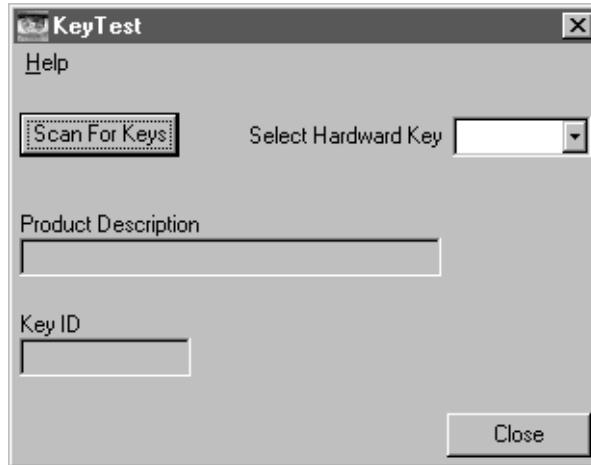
1. Run the old version of GLI/2 and open the Filter tool.
2. For each filter that you created or modified, write down the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding values.
3. Locate the directory where the filter files are stored (C:\GLI\GLI\Tools\DT_Filtr, by default) and move your custom and modified filter files (*filtername.ker*) to a different directory.
4. Install the new version of GLI/2. Refer to the previous section.
5. When the installation is complete, move your custom and modified filter files (*filtername.ker*) back to the appropriate directory (C:\GLI\GLI\Tools\DT_Filtr, by default).
6. Run the new version of GLI/2 and open the Filter tool.
7. If the Filter tool encounters a filter for which only a .ker file exists, the tool displays a warning indicating that a .flt file was not found. Click **OK** to create a .flt file with the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding parameters set to their default values.
8. Select one of the custom or modified filters from the filter list.
9. Reset the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding values.
10. Select **Save Kernel** from the File menu to save the filter.
The kernel information is saved in a .ker file; the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding information is saved in a .flt file.
11. Repeat steps 8 to 10 for each custom and modified filter.

Testing the Security Key

1

If you have any problems installing or using GLI/2, you can use the Key Test Utility, which is shipped with GLI/2, to ensure that you are using the appropriate security key. To test the security key, perform the following steps:

1. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**.
2. Click the name of the GLI/2 program group (**Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2**, by default), then click **Utilities\Data Translation Key Test Program**.
The Key Test dialog box is displayed.




3. If multiple keys are attached to the parallel port of your computer, select the key that you want to test from the **Select Hardware Key** drop-down list. Note that Key 1 is the key closest to the computer.
4. Click **Scan for Keys**.
*The name and version of the product that you are authorized to run is displayed in the **Product Description** field and the serial number of the security key is displayed in the **Key ID** field.*

5. If you have received a security key for the wrong product or if an error is returned, indicating that the security key is defective, contact Data Translation for assistance. For more information, refer to [Chapter 31, “Product Support.”](#)
6. When you have finished, click **Close** to exit the utility.

Using the Online Help

1

The online help is accessible while you are using GLI/2. If no GLI/2 tools are open, click **F1** to open the online help for the main application. If a GLI/2 tool is open, click **F1** to open the online help for that tool.

You can also access the online help from the GLI/2 program group. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**, click the name of the GLI/2 program group (**Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2**, by default), and then click **Custom Tools, GLOBAL LAB Image2 API, Main Application**, or **Tool Help**. All online help files are represented by the icon .

Removing the Software

If you are having problems with GLI/2, you may want to remove the software and then reinstall it. In addition, it is highly recommended that you remove previous versions of the software before you install a new version.

The Uninstall option allows you to remove GLI/2 from your hard drive. This option removes the GLI/2 directory and any references to the application in the system files.

To run the Uninstall option, perform the following steps:

1. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**.
2. Click **Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2**, then click **Uninstall GLOBAL LAB Image2**.

Note: You can also use the Add/Remove Programs option from the Windows Control Panel to remove the software.



Using GLOBAL LAB Image/2

Introduction.....	14
Starting GLOBAL LAB Image/2	15
The Main Application	16
Viewports.....	34
ROIs	36
Zoom	43
Images	44
The Clipboard	47
Printing	48
File I/O	49
Localization File	51

Introduction

The main application of GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2) is the part that shows you the image(s) you are working on. It is easy to use, leaving most of the functionality to the tools. With GLI/2, you can select the tools you want and replace or upgrade these tools whenever necessary.

The main application contains windows, called viewports, that allow you to view the image you are working on. The main application is responsible for file I/O, printing, the clipboard, and other normal Windows operations. Attached to the main application (loaded by the main application) are the tools. They are kept in a special window called the Toolbox. To use a tool on an image, you click on the tool's icon in the Toolbox. You can have any number of tools loaded in your Toolbox.

A common set of image processing tools is provided with GLI/2. If you want to use a tool that is not provided by GLI/2, you can add your own custom tools or obtain third-party tools. All tools that follow the GLI/2 convention can work together.

Starting GLOBAL LAB Image/2

To start GLI/2, perform the following steps:

1. From the Windows Start menu, click **Programs**.
2. Click **Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2\GLOBAL LAB Image2**.

2

The Main Application

File Menu Options

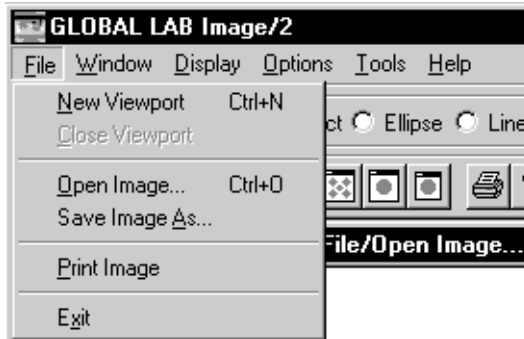


Figure 1: File Menu Options

New Viewport

Select this option to create a new viewport so that you can view an image. The new viewport becomes the active viewport.

Close Viewport

Select this option to close the active viewport and delete any ROIs attached to the viewport.

Open Image

Select this option to open an image from disk. The image must be stored in standard Windows bitmap format (noncompressed). The image can be opened as a binary, 8-bit grayscale, 16-bit grayscale, 32-bit grayscale, floating-point grayscale, 24-bit RGB (Red/Green/Blue), or 24-bit HSL (Hue/Saturation/Luminance) color image. By default, the image is opened as an 8-bit grayscale image. To change this, select the desired type under **Options | Image Type**.

Save Image As

Select this option to save the image in the active viewport as a standard Windows bitmap file. If the image is a 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point grayscale image, only the displayed 8-bit portion of the image is saved with the bitmap file. The 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point data is saved in a separate file in the same directory; this file has the same name with an extension of *.i16 (for 16-bit data), *.i32 (for 32-bit data), or *.flt (for floating-point data).

Print Image

Select this option to print the image exactly as it is seen in the active viewport. Zoomed images print exactly as seen. Images are printed as large as possible while keeping their aspect ratios.

Exit

Select this option to close the application and all open tools. As with most GLI/2 options, the software does not provide any warnings.

Window Menu Options

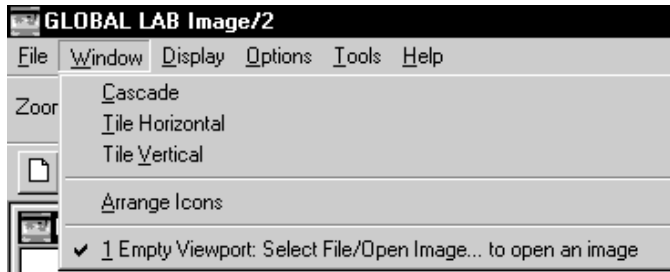


Figure 2: Window Menu Options

Cascade

Select this option to organize all viewports (windows) that are not closed or minimized in a cascading fashion.

Tile Horizontal

Select this option to organize all viewports (windows) that are not closed or minimized in a tiled horizontal fashion.

Tile Vertical

Select this option to organize all viewports (windows) that are not closed or minimized in a tiled vertical fashion.

Arrange Icons

Select this option to arrange all iconized viewports (windows).

Names of open viewports

A list of viewport names is added to the end of this menu. If you select one of these names, the software brings the associated viewport to the front.

Display Menu Options

2

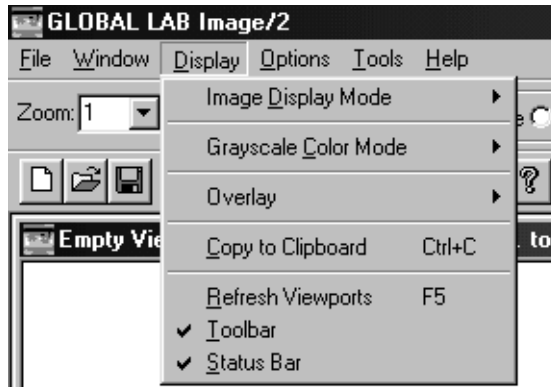
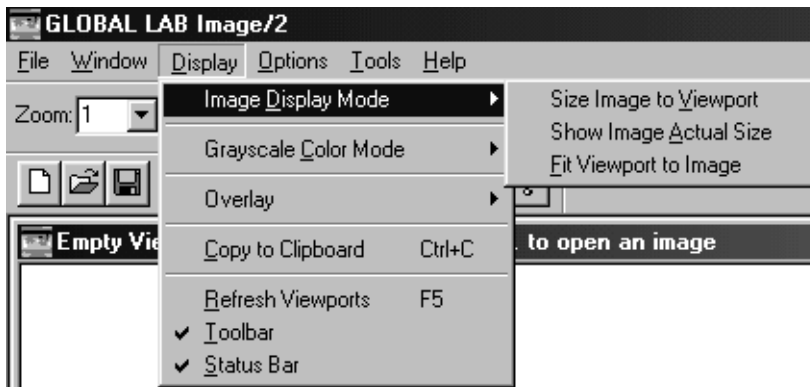


Figure 3: Display Menu Options

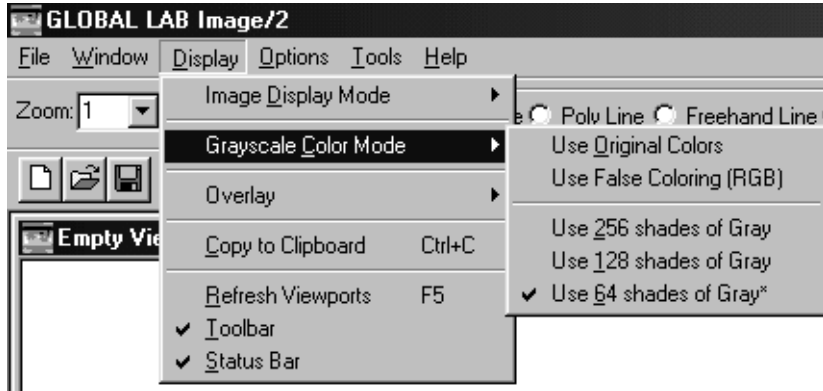
Image Display Mode



The Image Display Mode option allows you to select one of the following modes for determining how a viewport displays its associated image:

- **Size Image to Viewport** – Stretches or shrinks the image so that the entire image fits inside the viewport without resizing the viewport. This mode does not keep the aspect ratio of the image.
- **Show Image Actual Size** – Keeps the aspect ratio and normal size of the image as it is displayed in the current viewport. If the viewport is too small to show the entire image, the software adds scrollbars to the viewport so that you can scroll the image inside the viewport. The viewport does not automatically change size.
- **Fit Viewport to Image** – Resizes the viewport to the size of the entire image while keeping the image's aspect ratio and actual size. If you resize the viewport with the mouse, the software automatically adds scrollbars when necessary.

Grayscale Color Mode



When an image is displayed, the image is passed through an output look-up table (LUT) (also called a color table). The output LUT specifies how the pixel values are displayed. The Grayscale Color Mode option allows you to select one of the following output LUTs:

- **Use Original Colors** – Views images opened from disk showing the image exactly as it is stored in the BMP file. This mode uses the output LUT that came with the image.
- **Use False Coloring (RGB)** – Shows the image data with a linear RGB output LUT. Use this mode if you want to allow false coloring of grayscale images. By default, an image pixel of value 0 is mapped to a grayscale value of 0, an image pixel of value 1 is mapped to a grayscale value of 1, and so on, up to 255. You can use the Display tool to change this mapping so that a certain group of image pixels map to a certain color. For example, pixel values in the range of 5 to 10 can map to the color blue. For more information on changing the output LUT for an image, refer to [Chapter 9, “Using the Display Tool.”](#)

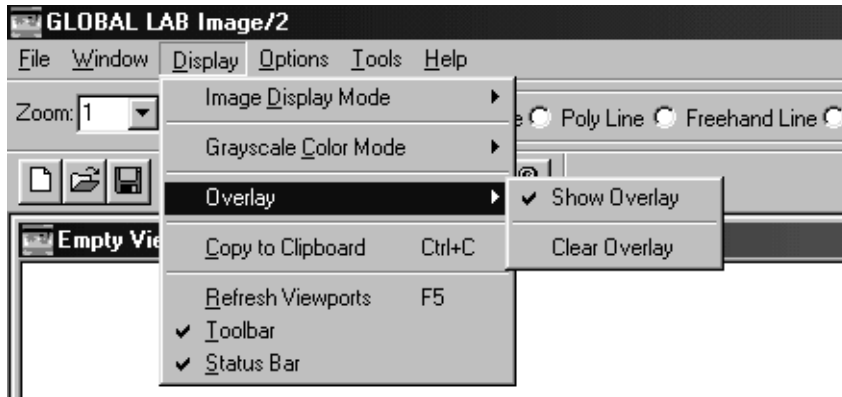
- **Use shades of Gray (256, 128, 64)** – Always displays the image data as a grayscale image.

The default mode is Use 64 shades of Gray because this mode works with almost all monitors. This mode is also useful for developing algorithms on the PC that are intended to be ported to a different platform with a different display.

For example, if you are using a monitor in 256-color mode and you want to display one image in grayscale, one image with false coloring, and one 24-bit RGB color image, you will run out of colors. In this case, you may want to use only 64 colors to display each grayscale image leaving more colors for the color image. On the other hand, if you are thresholding a grayscale image, you may want to be as exact as possible. In this case, you would most likely use 256 colors to display your grayscale image. These modes have no effect on 24-bit color images.

Note: It is possible to view an image in any combination of these display modes by placing the same image in different viewports (using the Image Manager tool) and selecting a different output LUT for each. Selecting a different output LUT for a grayscale image does not change the image's data, only how it is displayed.

Overlay



The Overlay option allows you to select one of the following overlay modes:

- **Show Overlay** – Toggles (showing/not showing) the overlay for the image in the active viewport.
- **Clear Overlay** – Clears the overlay for the image in the active viewport.

Copy to Clipboard

Select this option to copy the current image to the clipboard. If an active ROI is present, only the ROI portion of the image is copied to the clipboard. If the overlay is showing, the overlay is also copied to the clipboard.

Refresh Viewports

Select this option to redraw the images in the open viewports.

Toolbar

Select this option to show or hide the toolbar. For more information about the toolbar, refer to [page 31](#).

Status Bar

Select this option to show or hide the status bar. For more information about the status bar, refer to [page 32](#).

Options Menu Options

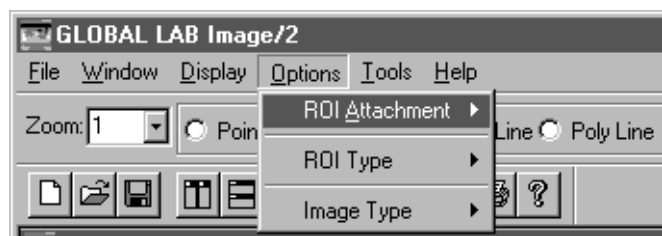
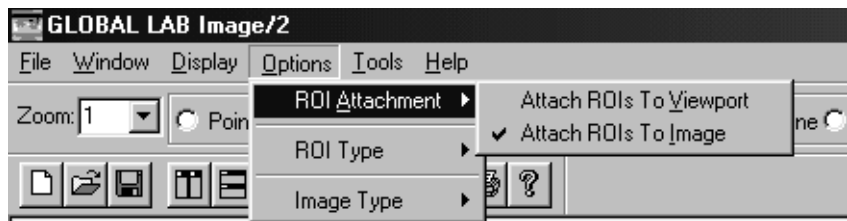


Figure 4: Options Menu Options

ROI Attachment



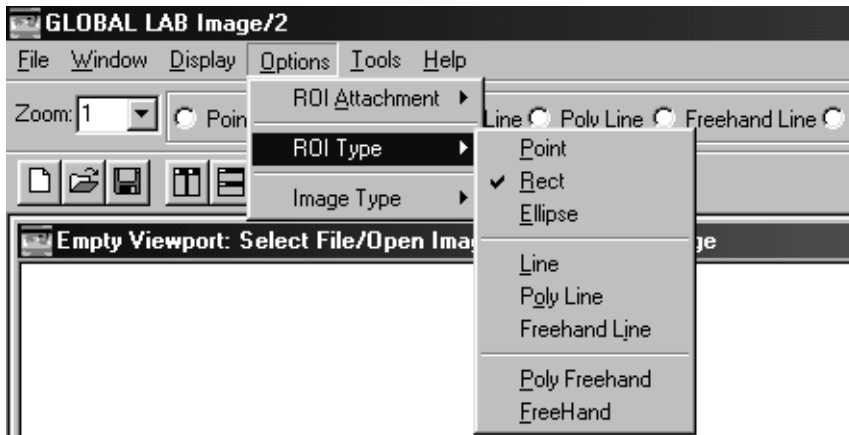
In GLI/2, an ROI can be attached to either the viewport or the image itself. The mode you select applies to all the viewports and you can switch back and forth between modes at any time. The ROI Attachment option allows you to select one of the following modes:

- **Attach ROIs to Viewport** – An advanced user mode in which the ROI attaches itself to the viewport. This mode is useful if you are looking at several different parts made on an assembly line. Since the ROI is attached to the viewport, you can select different images into the same viewport; the ROI references the same area on each image. For example, assume that you want to inspect a phone made on an assembly line and you put a rectangle ROI around the #3 key on the phone pad. Since the phones are in roughly the same place when the image is captured and since the images are the same size, the ROI is around the #3 key on every phone image.

Using this mode, you can put different images in the same viewport, run a tool on the image, and get some type of result without having to draw an ROI on each image you want to analyze.

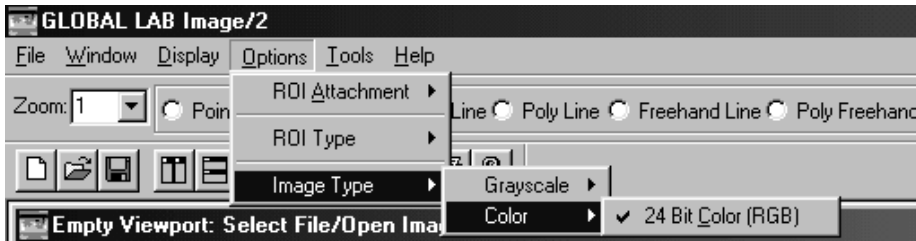
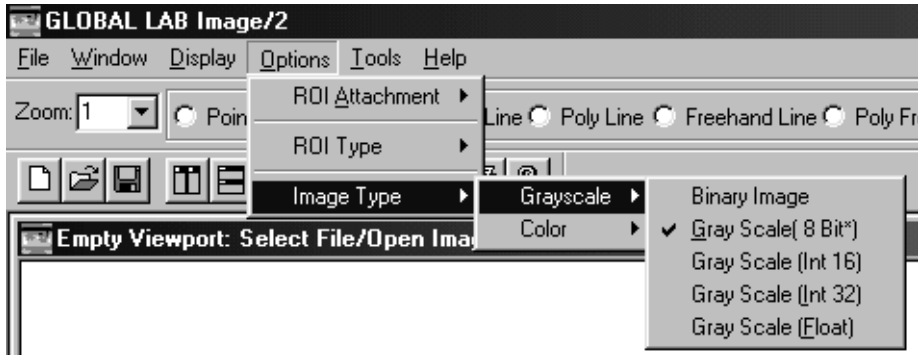
- **Attach ROIs to Image** – The default mode in which the ROI attaches itself to an image. This mode is useful for analyzing a single image displayed differently in multiple viewports. In each viewport displaying the same image, the ROI references the same area. As you move the image to different viewports, the attached ROI moves with the image.

ROI Type



GLI/2 provides eight different types of ROIs. Each ROI is created, moved, copied, selected, used, and deleted in the same way. The ROI type that you select determines the type of ROI that is created. You can also specify the ROI type using the ROI menu bar and the ROI Manager tool. For more information on using ROIs, refer to [page 36](#). For more information on the ROI Manager tool, refer to [Chapter 25](#), “Using the ROI Manager Tool.”

Image Type



The Image Type option allows you to open an image as one of the following grayscale or color image types:

- **Grayscale and Binary** – Allows you to open a supported image as either an 8-bit grayscale, 16-bit grayscale, 32-bit grayscale, floating-point grayscale, or binary image.

In image processing, a process may produce pixel values outside the standard range of 0 to 255. In these cases, you may decide to scale or threshold the output to the range of 0 to 255, discarding very important precision. By using a 32-bit image (or even a floating-point image), you can keep this important precision and use it in your analysis.

Since GLI/2 is an object-oriented application, the use of most tools on an image (regardless of the type) is the same. For example, you could use the Arithmetic tool to take two 8-bit images and add them together, placing the resulting image in a 32-bit image. You could then use the Histogram tool to take a histogram of the output image. The Arithmetic and Histogram tools access the two 8-bit images and the 32-bit image in the same way.

Opening an image as a binary image is useful when you are using a tool, such as the Morphology tool, that works only with binary images.

- **Color** – Allows you to open a supported image as a 24-bit RGB color image or as a 24-bit HSL color image.

Note that at the present time, GLI/2 supports 24-bit RGB and 24-bit HSL color images only. Other color formats may be supported in future releases.

Tools Menu Options



Figure 5: Tools Menu Options

The **Show Toolbox** option allows you to display the Toolbox if it is not currently displayed or hide the Toolbox if it is currently displayed. The Toolbox, shown in [Figure 6](#), is the part of the main application that holds all the loaded tools. To use a tool in the Toolbox, click on the tool icon.

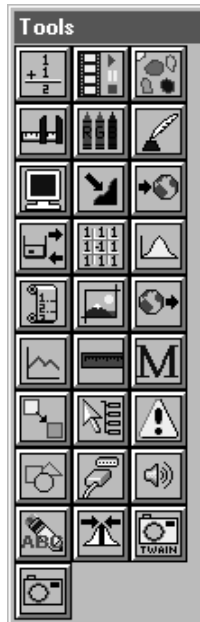


Figure 6: Toolbox

The other selections on the Tools menu open the specified tool. The list of tools changes, depending on which tools are loaded by GLI/2. If you create your own tools or purchase third-party tools, these tools are listed along with the tools supplied by GLI/2.

Notes: There is no difference between selecting a tool from the Tools menu and selecting a tool from the Toolbox.

You can use multiple instances of most tools.

2

Toolbar



Figure 7: Toolbar

The first three buttons on the toolbar correspond to the following menu options:

- **File | New viewport**
- **File | Open Image...**
- **File | Save Image As...**

The next three buttons on the toolbar correspond to the following menu options:

- **Window | Tile Vertical**
- **Window | Tile Horizontal**
- **Window | Cascade**

The next three buttons on the toolbar correspond to the following menu options:

- **Display | Image Display Mode | Size Image to Viewport**
- **Display | Image Display Mode | Show Image Actual Size**
- **Display | Image Display Mode | Fit Viewport to Image**

The last two buttons on the toolbar correspond to the following:

- **File | Print Image** menu option
- Shows the *About box* for GLI/2

Status Bar

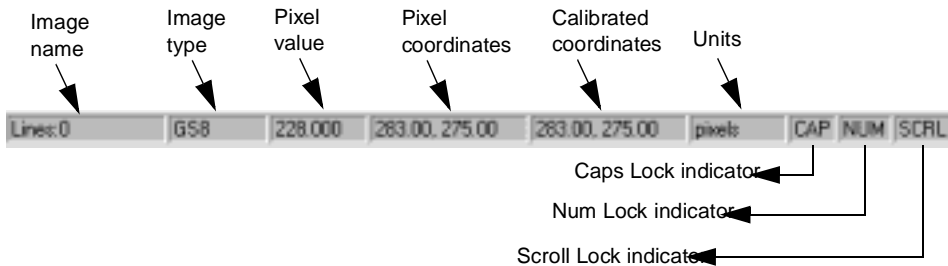


Figure 8: Status Bar

The status bar is displayed in the lower right corner of the main application window. An example status bar is shown in [Figure 8](#). The items shown in the status bar are described as follows:

- **Image name** – the name of the image in the active viewport.
- **Image type** – the type of image in the active viewport (binary, 8-bit grayscale, 16-bit grayscale, 32-bit grayscale, floating-point grayscale, RGB color, or HSL color).

- **Pixel value** – the value of the pixel at the current cursor location. For a color image, the pixel value is based on the current setting of the Color Plane tool (Red plane, Green plane, Blue plane, or Luminance for an RGB color image; Hue, Saturation, or Luminance for an HSL color image). For more information, refer to [Chapter 7, “Using the Color Plane Tool.”](#) The pixel value is displayed with subpixel accuracy.
- **Pixel coordinates** – the location (x, y) of the pixel at the current cursor location, where 0, 0 refers to the lower-left corner of the image.
- **Calibrated coordinates** – the location (x, y) of the pixel at the current cursor location in calibrated units (if the image has an attached calibration object).
- **Units** – the unit of measure that GLI/2 uses to perform its calculations. By default, GLI/2 uses pixel measurements. If the image has an attached calibration object, GLI/2 displays the measurements in calibrated units.
- **Caps Lock indicator** – CAPS indicates that the Caps Lock key is ON (alphabetic characters on the keyboard are shifted to uppercase).
- **Num Lock indicator** – NUM indicates that the Num Lock key is ON (the numeric keypad on the keyboard is activated).
- **Scroll Lock indicator** – SCRL indicates that the Scroll Lock key is ON (the cursor control keys on the keyboard are affected).

Viewports

A viewport is a window in which to view an image. Each viewport contains a view and a title bar. The view portion of the viewport is the portion actually showing you the image. The title bar contains information about the viewport. Viewports also have scrollbars that you can use to move the image around if the image does not fit inside the viewport. [Figure 9](#) shows two open viewports with two instances of the image *Classify*.

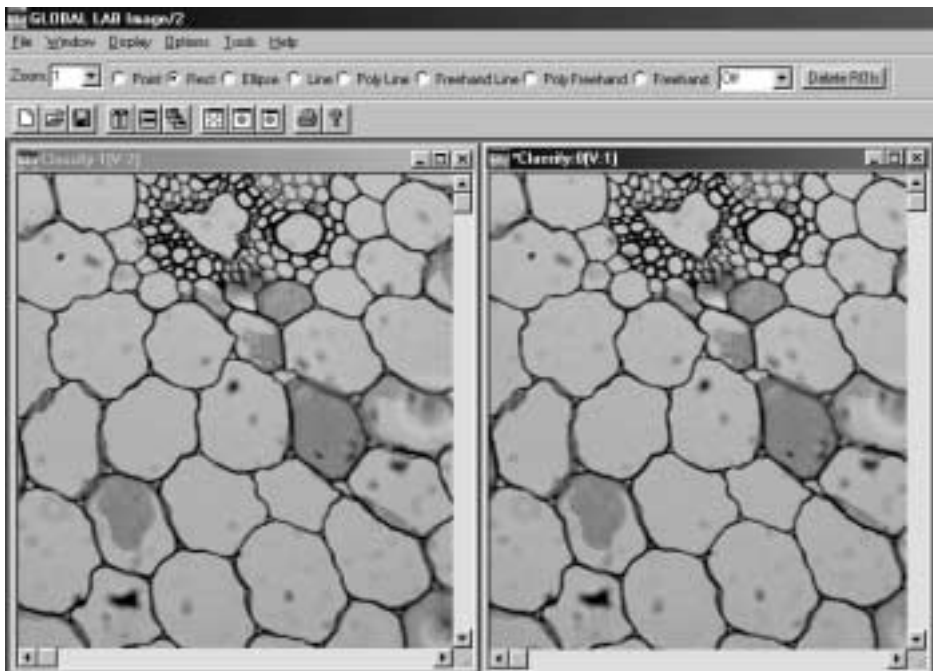


Figure 9: Viewports

The information about the viewport (child window) that is shown in the title bar uses the following convention:

**Image Name:Image Instance[Viewport Number]*

Note that the asterisk (*) is optional; it denotes the active viewport.

[Table 1](#) lists the information provided for each viewport shown in [Figure 9](#).

Table 1: Information in Title Bar of Viewports

Viewport	Information	Meaning
Left: *Classify:1[V:2]	*	This is the active viewport because it contains an asterisk (*) in its title bar.
	Classify	This viewport is displaying the image 'Classify'.
	:1	This viewport is showing you the second instance of the image 'Classify' that is open in the system (the numbering of multiple instances of an image is zero-based).
	[V:2]	This viewport is the second viewport open in the system.
Right: Classify:0[V:1]	Classify	This viewport is displaying the image 'Classify'.
	:0	This viewport is showing you the first instance of the image 'Classify' that is open in the system (the numbering of multiple instances of an image is zero-based).
	[V:1]	This viewport is the first viewport open in the system.

ROIs

An ROI is a region of interest. It is the portion of an image that you want to manipulate. This section contains additional information about ROIs.

ROI Manager Tool

To help you create ROIs, move ROIs, and perform other ROI functions, GLI/2 provides an ROI Manager tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 25, “Using the ROI Manager Tool.”](#)

ROI Types

You can specify the ROI type by using the ROI menu bar, the ROI Manager tool and/or **Options | ROI Type** from the main application. Refer to [Figure 10](#).

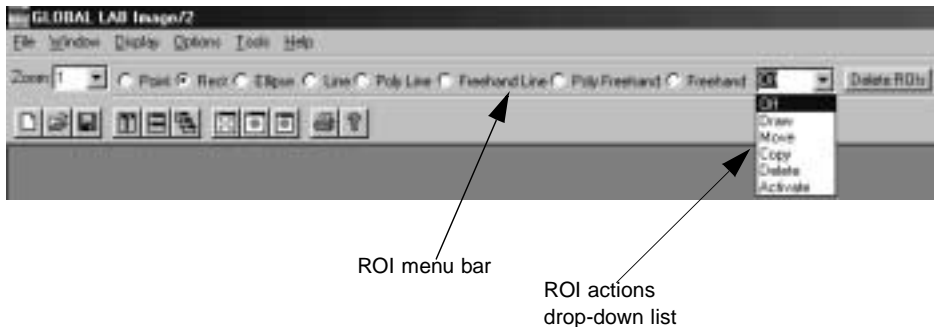


Figure 10: ROI Types

GLI/2 supports the following types of ROIs:

- Point
- Rectangle
- Ellipse
- Line
- Poly line – A poly line ROI is composed of several straight line segments. When you release the left mouse button, the first line segment is drawn and you create the second line segment by moving the mouse. Each time you click the left mouse button, you add a line segment. Continue this until the ROI is completely drawn.
- Freehand line – A freehand line ROI is a continuous, user-drawn line. When you release the left mouse button, the line is drawn.
- Poly freehand – A poly freehand ROI is composed of several straight line segments joined together and closed. When you release the left mouse button, the first line segment is drawn and you create the second line segment by moving the mouse. Each time you click the left mouse button, you add a line segment. Continue this until the ROI is almost complete. Then, click the right mouse button to close the ROI by adding a line from the mouse cursor to the beginning the ROI.
- Freehand – A freehand ROI is a continuous, user-drawn line that is closed. When you release the left mouse button, the line is drawn and closed.

Note: When drawing a poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, do not cross or touch previously drawn line segments. Although the ROI may appear to be drawn, it may not work as expected.

The Active ROI

An ROI can be either active or inactive. Only one ROI can be active in each viewport and the active ROI is displayed in red. All other ROIs in the viewport are inactive and are displayed in green. Tools working on an image do so with respect to the active ROI. For example, the Histogram tool creates a histogram of all eight ROI types. Activate the ROI you want with the mouse and create a histogram.

You can activate an inactive ROI in one of the following ways:

- Click inside the ROI with the right mouse button. The newly activated ROI turns red and the previously activated ROI turns green.
- Select **Activate** from the ROI actions drop-down list and then click inside the ROI with the left mouse button to activate it.
- Right-click any ROI in the image and then use the <Tab> key until the appropriate ROI is activated (red).

Attaching ROIs

A ROI can be attached to either a viewport or an image. You can select either attachment mode at any time by using **Options | ROI Attachment** from the main application. For more information, refer to [page 24](#).

GLI/2 keeps a list of all ROIs attached to viewports and a list of all ROIs attached to images. When you create (add) an ROI, GLI/2 checks which mode you are in and adds the ROI to the correct list. Therefore, if you run the program in **Attach ROIs To Viewport** mode, the ROI is attached to the view. If you run the program in **Attach ROIs To Image** mode, the ROI is attached to the image.

Attach ROIs To Image is the default attachment mode for the application.

The attachment mode you select applies to the entire application; therefore, you can see and use only one set of ROIs at a time for all viewports.

Selecting ROI Types and Actions

2

You can select the ROI type and/or the action you want to perform using a point and click method in the main application and/or a short-cut key method. You can use either method or a combination of both. The methods are described in the following sections.

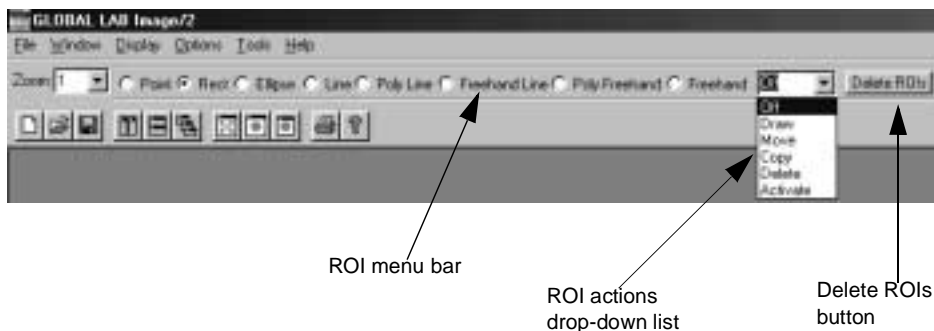


Figure 11: ROI Types and Actions

Point and Click Method

ROI Menu Bar

To select the ROI type, click the appropriate type in the ROI menu bar.

ROI Actions Drop-Down List

To select the ROI action, click one of the following actions in the ROI actions drop-down list:

- **Off** – Turns off ROI actions. You can still select the ROI type and use the short-cut key methods.
- **Draw** – Continuously draws ROIs of the selected type using the left mouse button. All ROIs are added as inactive ROIs (green). The active ROI is red.

When you finish drawing your ROIs, it is recommended that you select **Off** from ROI actions drop-down list. This ensures that you do not inadvertently create ROIs in the active image.

- **Move** – Moves the active ROI using the left mouse button.
- **Copy** – Copies the active ROI using the left mouse button.
- **Delete** – Deletes the active ROI using the left mouse button.
- **Activate** – Activates an ROI using the left mouse button.

Note: To perform operations on ROIs that are close together, select the operation from the ROI actions drop-down list, right-click any ROI in the image, use the <**Tab**> key to move to the appropriate ROI, and then left-click the ROI to perform the operation.

Delete ROIs Button

To delete all ROIs in the active viewport, click the **Delete ROIs** button. Note that ROIs that have text associated with them are not deleted. For more information, refer to [Chapter 28, “Using the Text Tool.”](#)

Short-Cut Key Method

Drawing an ROI

To draw an ROI, perform the following steps:

1. From the menu or ROI Manager tool, select the type of ROI you want to create.
2. Place the mouse at the position you want to start drawing the ROI.
3. Hold down the <Shift> and <Ctrl> keys. Click and hold down the left mouse button.
4. Drag the mouse until the ROI is the size you want.
5. Release the left mouse button.

Moving an ROI

To move an ROI, perform the following steps:

1. Activate the ROI, if it is not already active, by clicking inside the ROI with the right mouse button.
2. Place the mouse inside or on the ROI.
3. Hold down the <Shift> key. Click and hold the left mouse button.
The cursor changes to a move cursor.
4. While holding down the left mouse button, drag the ROI to the desired location.
5. When you have the ROI at the desired location, release the left mouse button.

Copying an ROI

To copy an ROI, perform the following steps:

1. Activate the ROI, if it is not already active, by clicking inside the ROI with the right mouse button.
2. Place the mouse inside or on the ROI.
3. While holding down the <Ctrl> key, click and hold the left mouse button.
The cursor changes to a copy cursor.
4. While holding down the left mouse button, drag the ROI to the desired location.
5. When you have the ROI at the desired location, release the left mouse button.

Deleting an ROI

To delete an ROI, perform the following steps:

1. Activate the ROI, if it is not already active, by clicking inside the ROI with the right mouse button.
2. Place the mouse inside or on the ROI.
3. While holding down the <Ctrl> key, click the right mouse button.

Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts

In some cases, ROIs that you create when using a GLI/2 tool are automatically recreated at run-time in your point & click script. Refer to [Appendix A, “Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts,”](#) for information about the input ROIs that you can create for each tool, the output ROIs that are created by each tool, and the input ROIs that are automatically recreated in your point & click script.

Zoom

GLI/2 allows you to zoom in on your images. Click on the appropriate magnification factor in the zoom drop-down list. Scrollbars are automatically added to the viewport, if needed.



Figure 12: Zoom Options

Images

This section provides information about the use of images in GLI/2.

Image Types

Note: Not all tools support all image types.

GLI/2 supports the following image types:

- **8-bit grayscale** – The value that each pixel can hold ranges from 0 to 255.
- **16-bit grayscale** – The value that each pixel can hold is limited by a 16-bit integer value.
- **32-bit grayscale** – The value that each pixel can hold is limited by a 32-bit integer value.
- **Floating-point grayscale** – The value that each pixel can hold is limited by a floating-point value.

16-bit, 32-bit, and floating-point grayscale images are useful if an imaging process produces pixel values outside the standard range of 0 to 255. Instead of scaling or thresholding the output to the range of 0 to 255, which would discard very important precision, you can use a 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point image to keep this important precision and use it in your analysis.

Since GLI/2 is an object-oriented application, the use of most tools on an image (regardless of the type) is the same. For example, you could use the Arithmetic tool to take two 8-bit images and add them together, placing the resulting image in a 32-bit image. You could then use the Histogram tool to take a histogram of the 32-bit output image. The Arithmetic and Histogram tools access the two 8-bit images and the 32-bit image in the same way.

- **24-bit RGB color** – You access the data for the color image through the red, green, or blue plane.
- **24-bit HSL color** – You access the data for the color image through the hue, saturation, or luminance.
- **The luminance (intensity) of a YIQ image** – Y is the luminance in the YIQ color image space. It is calculated from the RGB values and corresponds to how the human visual system perceives the intensity of a color image. It is calculated as follows:

$$Y = 0.299R + 0.587G + 0.114B.$$

For more information, refer to the following:

- Gonzalez, Rafael C., and Woods, Richard E. [1992]. *Digital Image Processing* Addison-Wesley pp. 225-230.
- Rodriguez, J.J., and Yang, C.C. [1994] “Effects of Luminance Quantization Error on Color Image Processing.” IEEE Transactions on Image Processing, Vol3, No. 6, November 1994.

You can use the Color Plane tool to specify how you want to access a color image through the tools. For more information, refer to [Chapter 7, “Using the Color Plane Tool.”](#)

In addition to the image types provided by GLI/2, you can use the GLI/2 API to create your own types of images. You can use these image types with all other image types using the tools. For example, you could take two 8-bit images and add them together into a 32-bit image. You could also take a 24-bit color image, run a filter on it, and place the output in a floating-point image. You could then take the 32-bit image and subtract the floating-point image, putting the result in another image.

Note: APIs are not provided for GLI/2 Streamline.

Managing Images

GLI/2 provides the Image Manager tool, which allows you to load images into viewports, display image information, and delete images. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15, “Using the Image Manager Tool.”](#)

Converting Bitmap Files to .AVI Files

GLI/2 provides the Bitmap-to-AVI Converter utility, which allows you to convert one or more 24-bit RGB color or 8-bit grayscale images to an .AVI file. Note that all bitmap images must be the same size and the same color organization (24-bit RGB color or 8-bit grayscale). The utility is located in C:\GLI\GLI\Utilities\BmpToAvi, by default.

To use the Bitmap-to-AVI Converter utility, perform the following steps:

1. From the Windows Start menu, select **Programs\Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2\Utilities\Data Translation Bitmap to AVI Converter**.
2. Click **Add BMP File** to open the Load BMP File dialog box.
3. Select the bitmap file to add, then click **Open**.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have added all the bitmap files that you want to convert.

To remove a bitmap file from the .AVI file, highlight the file and click **Delete BMP File**.
5. Click **Create AVI File**.
6. Enter a name for the new .AVI file in the Save AVI File dialog box, then click **Save**.
7. When you are finished with the utility, click **Close**.

The Clipboard

Although the standard Windows clipboard supports cut, copy and paste, GLI/2 supports copy only. This allows you to copy images to the clipboard to be used for reports.

If an active ROI is present, only the smallest bounding rectangle is copied to the clipboard. If no active ROI is present, the entire image is copied to the clipboard.

2

Printing

You can print the entire image exactly as it is seen in the active viewport. The image is printed as large as possible while keeping the image's aspect ratio. For example, if you zoom an image, the image is printed zoomed as seen in the viewport.

File I/O

Opening an Image

Use the **File | Open Image** menu option to open a standard Windows bitmap file (*.bmp). For grayscale images, the bitmap file must be a 256 color noncompressed bitmap. The way that the image is opened depends on the image type option selected in **Options | Image Type**.

For example, if you want to open a grayscale image from disk as a 32-bit grayscale image, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Options | Image type | Grayscale | Gray Scale (Int32)**.
2. Activate the desired viewport by selecting it with the mouse.
3. Select **File | Open Image....**
4. Open a grayscale image from disk. The image is opened as a 32-bit image in the active viewport.

Note that after you select **Options | Image type | Grayscale | Gray Scale (Int32)**, all files are opened as 32-bit grayscale images. This applies to all viewports.

Saving an Image

Use the **File | Save Image As** menu option to save the image in the active viewport in its default format. If the image is a 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point grayscale image, only the displayed 8-bit portion of the image is saved with the bitmap file. The 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point data is saved in a separate file in the same directory; this file has the same name with an extension of *.i16 (for 16-bit data), *.i32 (for 32-bit data), or *.flt (for floating-point data).

If GLI/2 cannot find the 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point data when opening an image, GLI/2 uses the 8-bit data.

Drag and Drop

You can open an image (or group of images) by dragging it (them) from the Windows Explorer to an open viewport. A list of the images is added to the Image Manager tool. Note that all the rules for opening a file using **File | Open Image...** still apply.

Supported File Types

The main application supports only the standard Windows bitmap file type. If you need to open another file type, refer to [Chapter 12](#), “Using the File Manager Tool.”

Initialization File

The dttools.ini file is a standard Windows initialization file that must be located in the same directory as the GLI/2 executable file. Do not put this initialization file in the Windows system directory.

On startup, GLI/2 loads all the tools specified in the dttools.ini file. If you want to add your own tools or customize the order in which the tools are loaded, you must edit this file using the Data Translation INI Editor (from the Windows Start menu, select **Programs\Data Translation, Inc\GLOBAL LAB Image2\Utilities\Data Translation INI Editor**). Click **File | Open** and browse to the location of the DTTools.ini file (C:\GLI\GLI, by default).

To add a new tool, select **New Tool Entry** from the **Edit** menu. Double-click **LOCATION**, browse to the location of the new tool .DLL file, then click **Open**. Double-click **AUTOSTART** and specify whether you want GLI/2 to automatically start the tool at program startup. If desired, double-click **DESCRIPTION** and enter a brief description of the tool.

To delete a tool, highlight the tool in the list of tool entries, then select **Delete Tool Entry** from the **Edit** menu. To change the order in which

a tool is loaded, highlight the tool in the list of tools, then drag the entry to the desired location.

Localization File

2

Several GLI/2 tools, such as the Blob Analysis tool and the Histogram tool, allow you to send selected data to Microsoft Excel so that you can display the data in charts, graphs, and spreadsheets. By default, GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file (located in C:\GLI\GLI, by default) to indicate the language you are using.

Using any text editor (such as Notepad), open the GLI.DEF file. The first line in the file (r%dc%d:r%dc%d) indicates the English-language version of Excel, where "r" stands for "row" and "c" stands for "column." To specify a different language, replace each instance of "r" with the first letter of the word for "row" in the language you are using and replace each instance of "c" with the first letter of the word for "column" in the language you are using. Then, save and close the file.



Using the Arithmetic Tool

Introduction.....	54
Description of Arithmetic Tool Options	57
Example of Using the Arithmetic Tool	60
Point & Click Script	63

Introduction

The Arithmetic tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It performs arithmetic operations on two input images, placing the result in an output image.

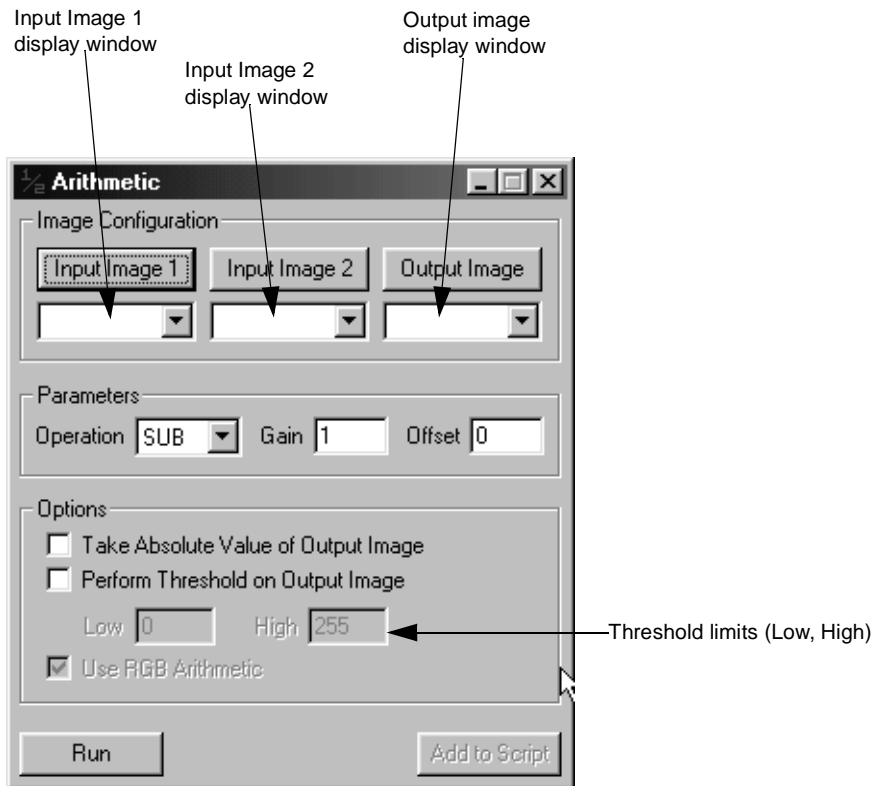


Figure 13: Arithmetic Tool

Table 2 describes the operations that the Arithmetic tool can perform. Note that all operations are performed with respect to the active ROI in input image #1. If no active ROI is present, the whole image is used.


Table 2: Arithmetic Tool Operations

Operation	Description	Calculation
ADD	Adds input image #1 to input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image.	Image Out = Image #1 + Image #2.
SUB	Subtracts input image #2 from input image #1, placing the resulting data in the output image.	Image Out = Image #1 – Image #2.
MULT	Multiplies input image #1 by input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image.	Image Out = Image #1 x Image #2
DIV	Divides input image #1 by input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image.	Image Out = Image #1 / Image #2.
AND	Performs a bitwise logical AND on input image #1 and input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image. ^a	Image Out = Image #1 AND Image #2
OR	Performs a bitwise logical OR on input image #1 and input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image. ^a	Image Out = Image #1 OR Image #2
XOR	Performs a bitwise logical exclusive OR on input image #1 and input image #2, placing the resulting data in the output image. ^a	Image Out = Image #1 XOR Image #2

Table 2: Arithmetic Tool Operations (cont.)

Operation	Description	Calculation
COPY	Copies input image #1 to the contents of the output image. Note that Image #2 is not used in this operation.	Image Out = Image #1

a. This operation is typically used with binary images.

To open an Arithmetic tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Arithmetic** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Arithmetic tool is fully compatible with all tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Arithmetic tools open at the same time.

Description of Arithmetic Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Arithmetic tool dialog box.

Input Image 1

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as input image #1. The image name displays in the **Input Image 1** display window. You can also select the input image from the display window drop-down list.

Input Image 2

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as input image #2. The image name displays in the **Input Image 2** display window. You can also select the input image from the display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name displays in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Arithmetic tool automatically creates an output image when you perform the operation. Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Operation

Select the operation that you want to perform from the drop-down list. For more information, refer to [Table 2](#) on [page 55](#).

Gain and Offset

Specify the gain and offset. The gain is multiplied by the result of the arithmetic calculation. The offset is added to the result of the arithmetic calculation. For example, if you are performing an addition operation, the calculation would be as follows:

```
Output image = Gain * (Input Image #1 + Input Image #2) + Offset
```

Take Absolute Value of Output Image

Select this checkbox if you want to use the absolute value of the output image. This calculation is performed after the gain and offset have been calculated.

Perform Threshold on Output Image

Select this checkbox if you want to threshold the output value of the output image to the specified **High** and **Low** threshold limits. This calculation is performed after the absolute value is performed (if it is performed).

Use RGB Arithmetic/Use HSL Arithmetic

Select this checkbox if you want to perform arithmetic operations on all three color planes (red, green and blue) of a 24-bit RGB color image or on all three color settings of a 24-bit HSL color image.

Clear this checkbox if you want to perform arithmetic operations on only the color plane/color setting that is selected in the Color Plane tool. This allows you to perform operations on each color plane/color setting independently. For example, to add only the red color plane of RGB color images, you can open a Color Plane tool, select the red plane, and then perform the addition. For more information, refer to [Chapter 7, “Using the Color Plane Tool.”](#)

Run

When all options for the tool are set appropriately, click this button to perform the operation.

Add to Script

After you perform the calculation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Arithmetic Tool

This example shows how to perform quality control inspections in a manufacturing environment. Using the Arithmetic tool, you can compare the manufactured part (shown in the image Actual) to a known perfect part (shown in the image Perfect) and then display all defects in an output image.

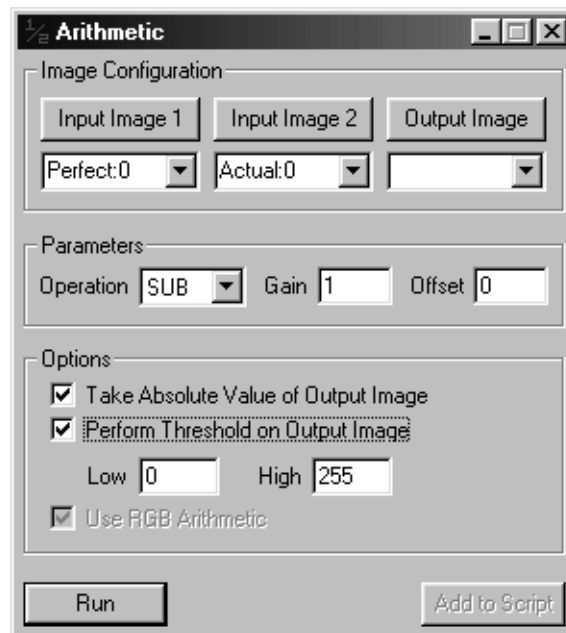


The operation is as follows:

1. Open an Arithmetic tool (if one is not already open).
2. To set input image #1, go to the main application and click in the viewport on the image Perfect.
It is now the active viewport and is denoted with an asterisk.
3. Click **Input Image 1** to load the image Perfect. Note that you can also select the image from the display window drop-down list.

4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to set input image #2, using the image Actual. Note that you can also select the image from the display window drop-down list.
5. To set the output image, you can select an output image as described in steps 1 and 2, or you can run the operation and let the Arithmetic tool create an output image for you. For this example, the tool automatically creates the output image.
6. Select the options you want to use when performing the arithmetic operation. In this example, set the Gain to 1, set the Offset to 0, clear the **Take Absolute Value of Output Image** checkbox, and select the **Perform Threshold on Output Image** checkbox.
7. Select the operation you want to perform. In this example, you want to perform a subtraction operation. Therefore, click **SUB** from the drop-down list.

The Arithmetic tool looks as follows:



8. Now that the tool is correctly set up, perform the subtraction by clicking **Run**.

The result is as follows:



The output image contains the result of the subtraction operation (Perfect minus Actual). The Actual part is defective because of the missing 5.

In a manufacturing environment, you can now process your defective part. For example, you could automatically reject and remove the defective part from the assembly line.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Arithmetic tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Arithmetic tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Arithmetic tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input and output images, the arithmetic operation, and the active ROI (if you are using one). Click **Run** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

3

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Arithmetic tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input and output images, the desired arithmetic operation, and the active ROI (if an ROI was used). The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.




Using the AVI Player Tool

Introduction.....	66
Description of AVI Player Tool Options	68
Example of Using the AVI Player Tool	72
Point & Click Script	73

Introduction

The AVI Player tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to view a previously captured .AVI video file. You can then select one or more frames from the .AVI file to process using other tools, such as the Blob Analysis tool.

To open an AVI Player tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **AVI Player** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The AVI Player tool is fully compatible with all tools. It does not use ROIs. It can import frames from 8-bit color, 16-bit color, and 24-bit color .AVI video files, where 24-bit color AVI frames are imported as 24-bit RGB or HSL color images, 16-bit color AVI frames are converted to 24-bit RGB or HSL color images, and 8-bit color AVI frames are imported as 8-bit grayscale images.

You can have two AVI Player tools open at a time.

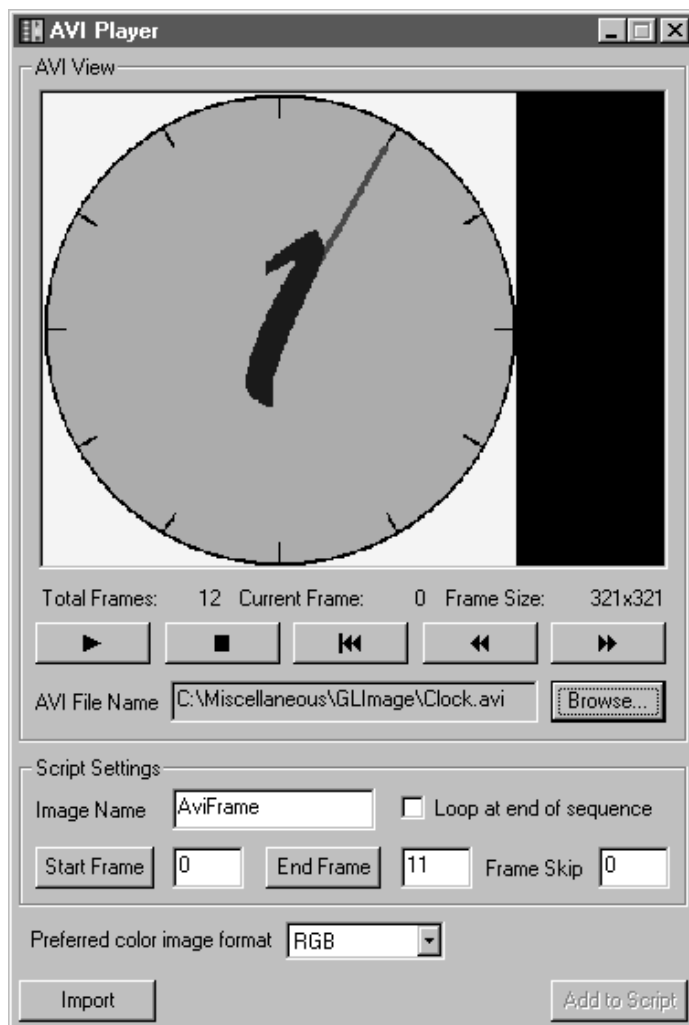


Figure 14: AVI Player Tool

Description of AVI Player Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the AVI Player tool dialog box.

AVI File Name

This field displays the name of the current .AVI video file. To open an .AVI file, click the **Browse** button. A Load AVI File dialog box is displayed. Locate the file you want to open, then click **Open**.

Note that the only color images supported by GLI/2 are 24-bit RGB and 24-bit HSL color images. If you open a 16-bit color .AVI file, it is automatically converted to 24-bit RGB or HSL color format, depending on the **Preferred Color Image Format**. If you open an 8-bit color .AVI file, it is interpreted as grayscale. No other file formats are supported.

AVI View

This is the viewing window in which you play the .AVI video file.

Total Frames

This field displays the total number of frames in the .AVI video file.

Current Frame

This field displays the frame within the .AVI video file that is currently displayed in the viewing window.

Frame Size

This field displays the size of the frames in the .AVI video file, in pixels.

Play 

Click this button to play the .AVI video file in the forward direction, beginning at the current frame. After the last frame is played, the tool plays the file again, beginning at the first frame. Play continues until you click the Stop button.

Stop 

Click this button to stop playing the .AVI video file.

Rewind 

Click this button to return to the beginning of the .AVI video file.

Frame Backward 

Click this button to move backward one frame in the .AVI video file and display the frame in the AVI view. If the current frame is the first frame in the file, the tool moves to the last frame in the file.

Frame Forward 

Click this button to move forward one frame in the .AVI video file and display the frame in the AVI view. If the current frame is the last frame in the file, the tool moves to the first frame in the file.

Script Settings

Set the following options if you want to import selected frames from the .AVI file in a point & click script:

- **Image Name** – The name of the image into which the current frame is imported either when you click **Import** or when an instance of the AVI Player tool imports a frame into a point & click script. Enter the name in the text box.

If an image with the same name already exists in GLI/2, the current frame replaces the existing image.

- **Loop at end of sequence** – Specifies what the point & click script does when the last frame in the .AVI file has been imported. Select this checkbox if you want the script to import the frames again, starting with **Start Frame**. Clear this checkbox if you want the script to stop importing frames.

Note that if you clear this checkbox, a failure condition (stop light) occurs in the point & click script when the last frame is imported. For more information, refer to [page 381](#).

- **Start Frame** – The first frame in the .AVI file that you want to import into the point & click script. Click the **Start Frame** button to specify the current frame as the start frame, or enter the number of the start frame in the text box. If you enter a frame that is not in the .AVI file, the tool sets the start frame to 0.
- **End Frame** – The last frame in the .AVI file that you want to import into the point & click script. Click the **End Frame** button to specify the current frame as the end frame, or enter the number of the end frame in the text box. If you enter a frame that is not in the .AVI file, the tool sets the end frame to the last frame in the file.
- **Frame Skip** – The number of frames that you want to skip before importing the next frame. Enter the number in the text box. For example, to process every frame in the .AVI file, set **Frame Skip** to 0. To process every tenth frame in the .AVI file, set **Frame Skip** to 9.

Preferred Color Image Format

If you are importing frames from 24-bit or 16-bit color .AVI video files, select the color format you want to use (RGB or HSL) from the drop-down list.

Import

Click this button to import the current frame into the image **Image Name** and display the image in the active viewport.

Add to Script

After you click **Import** and ensure that your image is valid, click this button to add the point & click script settings to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the AVI Player Tool

This example shows how to use the AVI Player tool with the Blob Analysis tool in a point & click script to analyze cells growing in a petri dish.

The operation is as follows:

1. Capture an .AVI file (called celltest.avi) that shows the growth of cells in a petri dish over several hours.
2. Open an AVI Player tool (if one is not already open).
3. Click **Browse** and locate the file celltest.avi.
4. Use the Play, Stop, Rewind, Frame Forward, and Frame Backwards buttons to navigate through the .AVI file to determine which frames you want to analyze.
5. Set the **Image Name** to **Cell Test**.
6. Assume that you want to analyze every 30th frame from frame 30 through frame 300. Navigate to the 30th frame and click **Start Frame**. Navigate to the 300th frame and click **End Frame**. Set **Frame Skip** to **29**.
7. Click **Import** to load the current frame into the active viewport.
8. If the image loaded successfully, click **Add to Script**.
9. Create a loop in the point & click script that uses the Blob Analysis tool to analyze each image and to send the statistics to Microsoft Excel.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the AVI Player tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the AVI Player tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the AVI Player tool to perform the desired function. This includes the start frame, the end frame, and the number of frames to skip between processing. Click **Import** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

4

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the AVI Player tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the start frame, the end frame, and the number of frames to skip between processing. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Blob Analysis Tool

Introduction.	76
Description of Blob Analysis Tool Options.	90
Example of Using the Blob Analysis Tool.	109
Point & Click Script	113

Introduction

The Blob Analysis tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to perform blob analysis operations on an input image.

Given an input image and a binary mask image, the Blob Analysis tool finds, counts, and measures all blobs within the active rectangle ROI of the input image. If no active ROI is present, the tool finds, counts, and measures all blobs within the whole input image. A blob is defined as a number of connected pixels within a specified threshold range. Pixels are connected if they are horizontally, vertically, or diagonally adjacent.

The Blob Analysis tool finds, counts, and measures all parent blobs and all child blobs. A child blob is defined as a blob within another (parent) blob with a grayscale value outside the grayscale range of the parent blob. Each child blob is considered to be a parent blob and may have child blobs, which in turn may have child blobs, and so on. There is no limit to the number of child blob levels.

All blobs are treated as independent objects, so the same calculations are performed for all blobs, both parent and child. Instead of showing you the outline of a found blob (or one of its children), the Blob Analysis tool creates a freehand ROI for the found blob. This allows you to use other tools on the found blob just as you would with any other ROI.

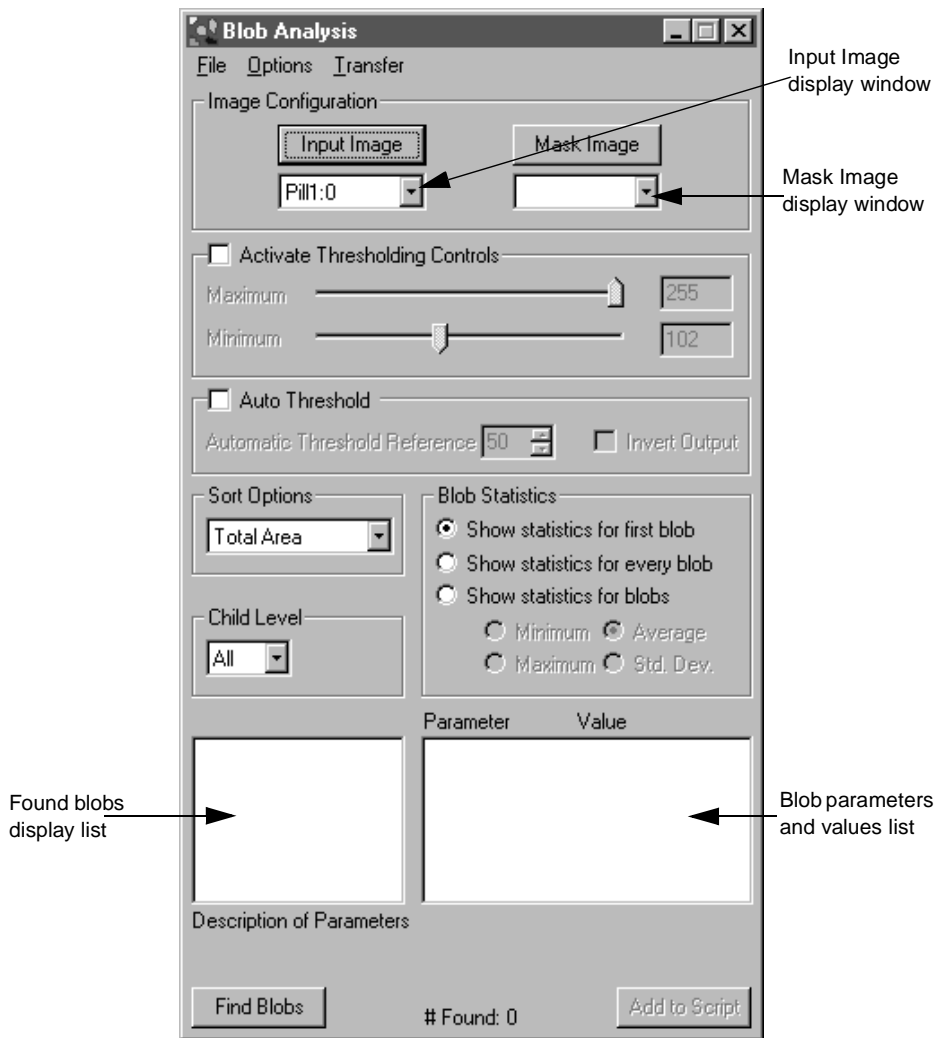


Figure 15: Blob Analysis Tool

Table 3 describes the calculations that the Blob Analysis tool can perform for each blob (parent and child). The level number shown in the table is the recommended calculation level that the tool should use when finding blobs. For more information on calculation levels, refer to [page 102](#).

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations

Blob Option	Description
Parent Area (Calibrated) (Level 2)	The area of the blob, not including any child blobs. If the image has not been calibrated, this is the number of pixels in the parent blob, not including child pixels.
Total Area (Calibrated) (Level 2)	The total area of the parent blob and all child blobs. If the image has not been calibrated, this is the total number of pixels in the parent blob, including child pixels.
Child Area (Calibrated) (Level 2)	The area of all child blobs belonging to the parent blob. This value includes all levels of child blobs of the parent blob.
ROI Area (Calibrated) (Level 0)	The total area of the user-defined rectangle input ROI. If no ROI is present, this is the area of the entire image.
ROI Ratio(P) (Calibrated) (Level 2)	The ratio of the Parent Area to the ROI Area (Parent Area / ROI Area). The value can range from 0 to 1.
ROI Ratio(T) (Calibrated) (Level 2)	The ratio of the Total Area to the ROI Area (Total Area / ROI Area). The value can range from 0 to 1.

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

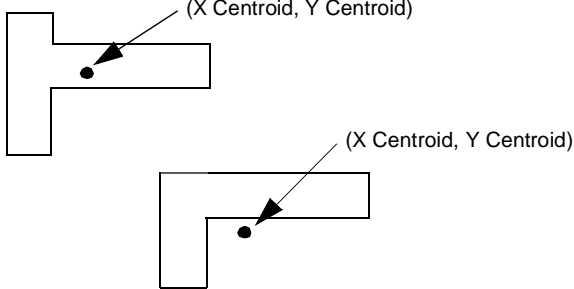
Blob Option	Description
X Centroid(P) (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The x-coordinate of the center of mass of the Parent Area. The origin of the image (0,0) is located at its lower left corner. Note that (X Centroid, Y Centroid) is not necessarily a point within the blob.</p> 
X Centroid(T) (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The x-coordinate of the center of mass of the Total Area. The origin of the image (0,0) is located at its lower left corner. For more information, refer to X Centroid(P).</p>
Y Centroid(P) (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The y-coordinate of the center of mass of the Parent Area. The origin of the image (0,0) is located at its lower left corner. For more information, refer to X Centroid(P).</p>
Y Centroid(T) (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The y-coordinate of the center of mass of the Total Area. The origin of the image (0,0) is located at its lower left corner. For more information, refer to X Centroid(P).</p>
#Children (Level 0)	<p>The total number of child blobs belonging to the parent blob. This includes all levels of child blobs.</p>
Child Ratio (Calibrated) (Level 2)	<p>The ratio of the child area to the total area of the parent blob and all child blobs (Child Area /Total Area). The value can range from 0 to 1.</p>
GrayAverage(P) (Level 4)	<p>The average grayscale value of all pixels within the Parent Area. If you are using a color image, this value is luminance.</p>

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

Blob Option	Description
GrayAverage(T) (Level 4)	The average grayscale value of all pixels within the Total Area. If you are using a color image, this value is luminance.
RedAverage(P) (Level 4)	The average red value of all pixels within the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
RedAverage(T) (Level 4)	The average red value of all pixels within the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
GreenAverage(P) (Level 4)	The average green value of all pixels within the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
GreenAverage(T) (Level 4)	The average green value of all pixels within the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
BlueAverage(P) (Level 4)	The average blue value of all pixels within the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
BlueAverage(T) (Level 4)	The average blue value of all pixels within the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
GrayTotal(P) (Level 4)	The total grayscale intensity of the Parent Area, calculated by summing the intensities of each pixel within the blob. If you are using a color image, this value is luminance.
GrayTotal(T) (Level 4)	The total grayscale intensity for the Total Area, calculated by summing the intensities of each pixel within the blob. If you are using a color image, this value is luminance.
RedTotal(P) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the red color plane of the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

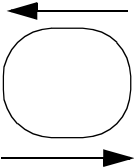
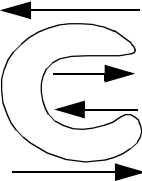
Blob Option	Description
RedTotal(T) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the red color plane of the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
GreenTotal(P) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the green color plane of the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
GreenTotal(T) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the green color plane of the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
BlueTotal(P) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the blue color plane of the Parent Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
BlueTotal(T) (Level 4)	The total intensity of the blue color plane of the Total Area. If you are not using a color image, this value is not used.
Perimeter (Calibrated) (Level 0)	The length around the outside edge of the blob. Note that the calculation may be somewhat inaccurate due to pixel quantization errors. A correction term is used to average out the error, resulting in a possible fractional perimeter value.
XPerimeter (Calibrated) (Level 0)	The X component of the perimeter, measured along the x-axis. <div> XPerimeter of convex blob</div> <div> XPerimeter of concave blob</div>

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

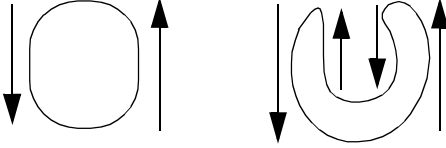
Blob Option	Description
YPerimeter (Calibrated) (Level 0)	<p>The Y component of the perimeter, measured along the y-axis.</p>  <p>YPerimeter of convex blob YPerimeter of concave blob</p>
Roundness (Calibrated) (Level 2)	<p>A measure of roundness that can range from 0 (not round) to 1 (perfectly circular). A circle has a roundness value of 1. The value is calculated as:</p> $\text{Roundness} = 4\pi \times \text{Total Area} / \text{Perimeter}^2$
PPDA (Calibrated) (Level 2)	<p>A common blob value calculated as:</p> $\text{PPDA} = \text{Perimeter}^2 / \text{Total Area}$
SumX(P) (Level 1)	The sum of the x-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Parent Area.
SumX(T) (Level 1)	The sum of the x-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Total Area.
SumXX(P) (Level 1)	The sum of the squared x-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Parent Area.
SumXX(T) (Level 1)	The sum of the squared x-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Total Area.
SumY(P) (Level 1)	The sum of the y-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Parent Area.
SumY(T) (Level 1)	The sum of the y-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Total Area.
SumYY(P) (Level 1)	The sum of the squared y-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Parent Area.

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

Blob Option	Description
SumYY(T) (Level 1)	The sum of the squared y-coordinates of all pixel locations in the Total Area.
SumXY(P) (Level 1)	The sum of the XY product (the x-coordinate times the y-coordinate) of all pixel locations in the Parent Area.
SumXY(T) (Level 1)	The sum of the XY product (the x-coordinate times the y-coordinate) of all pixel locations in the Total Area.
MaxX (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The maximum (rightmost) x-coordinate value in the blob.
MaxY (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The maximum (bottommost) y-coordinate value in the blob.
MinX (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The minimum (leftmost) x-coordinate value in the blob.
MinY (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The minimum (topmost) y-coordinate value in the blob.
YatMaxX (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The y-coordinate corresponding to the value of MaxX. If there is more than one, the bottommost is used.
XatMaxY (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The x-coordinate corresponding to the value of MaxY. If there is more than one, the rightmost is used.
YatMinX (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The y-coordinate corresponding to the value of MinX. If there is more than one, the topmost is used.
XatMinY (Calibrated) (Level 3)	The x-coordinate corresponding to the value of MinY. If there is more than one, the leftmost is used.

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

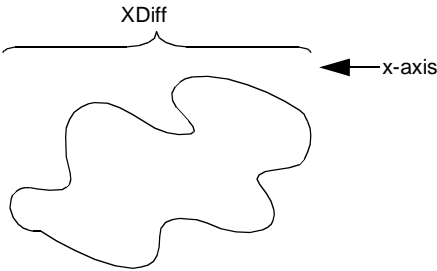
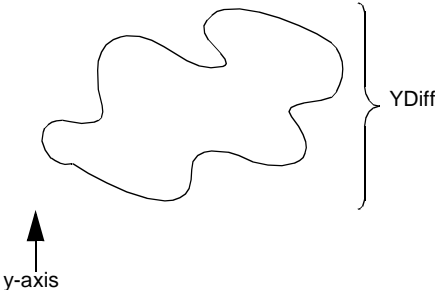
Blob Option	Description
XDiff (Calibrated) (Level 3)	<p>The extent (width) of the blob measured along the x-axis. This is equal to $\text{MaxX} - \text{MinX}$.</p> 
YDiff (Calibrated) (Level 3)	<p>The extent (height) of the blob measured along the y-axis. This is equal to $\text{MaxY} - \text{MinY}$.</p> 
Box Area (Calibrated) (Level 3)	<p>The area of the smallest bounding box, oriented along the x and y axes, that encompasses the blob. This is equal to $\text{XDiff} \times \text{YDiff}$.</p>
Box Ratio(P) (Calibrated) (Level 3)	<p>The ratio of the Parent Area to the Box Area (Parent Area / Box Area). The value can range from 0 to 1.</p>
Box Ratio(T) (Calibrated) (Level 3)	<p>The ratio of the Total Area to the Box Area (Total Area / Box Area). The value can range from 0 to 1.</p>
AvgRadius (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The average radius from the center of the blob (X Centroid, Y Centroid) to the perimeter of the blob.</p>

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

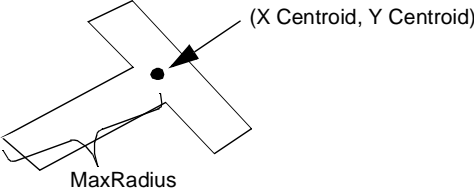
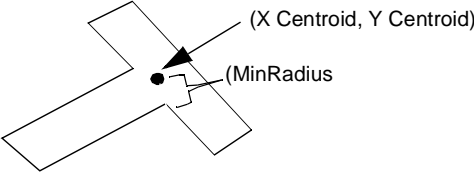
Blob Option	Description
MaxRadius (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The maximum radius from the center of the blob (X Centroid, Y Centroid) to the perimeter of the blob. This is the distance from the centroid of the blob to the farthest point on the blob's perimeter.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a cross-shaped blob. A black dot at the center is labeled '(X Centroid, Y Centroid)' with an arrow. A line segment extends from this dot to the outermost point of the blob's perimeter, labeled 'MaxRadius'.</p>
MinRadius (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The minimum radius from the center of the blob (X Centroid, Y Centroid) to the perimeter of the blob. This is the distance from the centroid of the blob to the nearest point on the blob's perimeter.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a cross-shaped blob. A black dot at the center is labeled '(X Centroid, Y Centroid)' with an arrow. A line segment extends from this dot to the innermost point of the blob's perimeter, labeled '(MinRadius)'.</p>
CDistance (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The distance from the origin (0,0) to the centroid of the blob.</p>

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

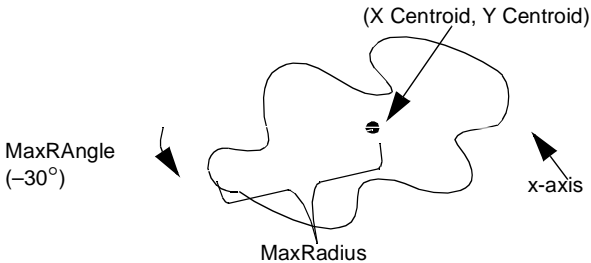
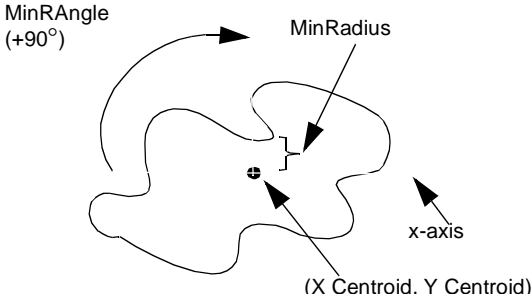
Blob Option	Description
MaxRAngle (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The angle (in degrees) from a horizontal line passing through the centroid of the blob to a line passing through the MaxRadius. The value can range from -90° to $+90^{\circ}$, in a clockwise direction.</p> 
MinRAngle (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The angle (in degrees) from a horizontal line passing through the centroid of the blob to a line passing through the MinRadius. The value can range from -90° to $+90^{\circ}$, in a clockwise direction.</p> 
DiffRAngle (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The difference between the maximum radius angle and the minimum radius angle ($\text{MaxRAngle} - \text{MinRAngle}$).</p>
RRatio (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The ratio of the minimum radius angle to the maximum radius angle ($\text{MinRAngle} / \text{MaxRAngle}$).</p>
# of Pixels(P) (Level 0)	<p>The number of pixels in the Parent Area of the blob.</p>

Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

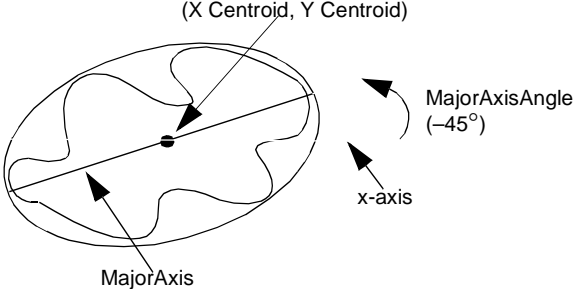
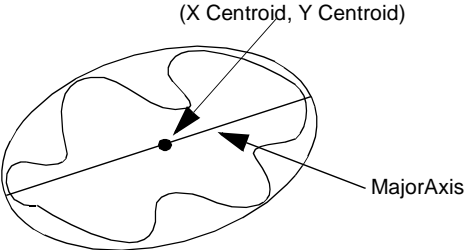
Blob Option	Description
# of Pixels(T) (Level 0)	The number of pixels in theTotal Area of the blob.
MajorAxisAngle (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The angle (in degrees) between the x-axis and the MajorAxis. The value can range from -90° to $+90^{\circ}$, in a clockwise direction.</p>  <p>The diagram shows an irregular blob shape. A horizontal line with an arrow pointing right is labeled 'x-axis'. A line with an arrow pointing from the center towards the top-left is labeled 'MajorAxis'. A dot at the center is labeled '(X Centroid, Y Centroid)'. An arc between the x-axis and the MajorAxis is labeled 'MajorAxisAngle (-45°)'.</p>
MajorAxis (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The length of the major axis (the longer of the two axes of symmetry) through the centroid of an ellipse equivalent to the blob.</p>  <p>The diagram shows an irregular blob shape. A line with an arrow pointing from the center towards the top-left is labeled '(X Centroid, Y Centroid)'. A line with an arrow pointing from the center towards the bottom-left is labeled 'MajorAxis'.</p>


Table 3: Blob Analysis Tool Calculations (cont.)

Blob Option	Description
MinorAxisAngle (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The angle (in degrees) between the x-axis and the MinorAxis. The value can range from -90° to $+90^{\circ}$, in a clockwise direction.</p> <p>The diagram shows an irregular blob shape. A point inside represents the (X Centroid, Y Centroid). A horizontal arrow points left, labeled 'x-axis'. A line segment passes through the centroid, labeled 'MinorAxis'. An arc indicates the angle between the x-axis and the MinorAxis, labeled 'MinorAxisAngle (+60°)'.</p>
MinorAxis (Calibrated) (Level 1)	<p>The length of the minor axis (the shorter of the two axes of symmetry) through the centroid of an ellipse equivalent to the blob.</p> <p>The diagram shows an irregular blob shape. A point inside represents the (X Centroid, Y Centroid). A line segment passes through the centroid, labeled 'Minor Axis'.</p>
AxisRatio (Level 1)	<p>The ratio of the minor axis to the major axis (MinorAxis / MajorAxis). This value is can range from 0 to 1. Note that if the centroid (total) of the blob does not lie within the blob itself, the MajorAxis and MinorAxis are not calculated. However, the MajorAxisAngle and MinorAxisAngle are always calculated.</p>
#BlobsFoundTotal ^a	<p>The total number of blobs found during the Find Blobs operation.</p>

Table 3: Blob AnalysisTool Calculations (cont.)

Blob Option	Description
#BlobsFoundParent ^a	The number of parent blobs found during the Find Blobs operation.
#BlobsFoundChild ^a	The number of child blobs found during the Find Blobs operation.

a. This calculation is intended to be used only in a point & click script.

To open a Blob Analysis tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Blob Analysis** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The input image can be any grayscale or 24-bit color image. (Although you can open 24-bit HSL color images, HSL statistics are not supported.) The mask image must be a binary image. The Blob Analysis tool can create a binary mask image either by using built-in thresholding (see [page 95](#)) or by using automatic thresholding (see [page 96](#)). You can also create a binary image by using the Threshold tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#) The active ROI on the input image must be a rectangle ROI.

You can have up to 100 Blob Analysis tools open at the same time.

Description of Blob Analysis Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Blob Analysis tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

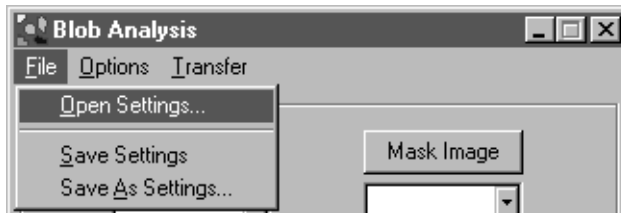


Figure 16: Blob Analysis Tool - File Menu

Open Settings...

Select this option to open Blob Analysis tool settings that you have saved. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a file (the name must be followed by the extension .blb), the settings are loaded into the Blob Analysis tool.

Save Settings

Select this option to save the Blob Analysis tool settings back to disk.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save the Blob Analysis tool settings to a file with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter the file name with the extension .blb.

Note that if you save a settings file with the name default.blb, the file will automatically open each time you open a Blob Analysis tool. You must save default.blb in the DT_Blob directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Options Menu Options

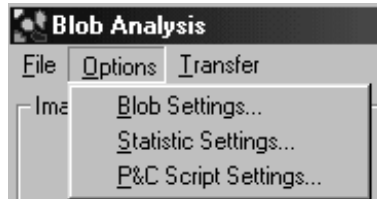


Figure 17: Blob Analysis Tool - Options Menu

Blob Settings...

Select this option if you want to change the default blob settings. The tool opens the Blob Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 99](#).

Statistic Settings...

Select this option to specify how you want to display parameters in the blob parameters and values list in the Blob Analysis tool main dialog box. The tool opens the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

P&C Script Settings...

Select this option if you want to perform point & click scripting. The tool opens the P&C Script Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 106](#).

Transfer Menu Options

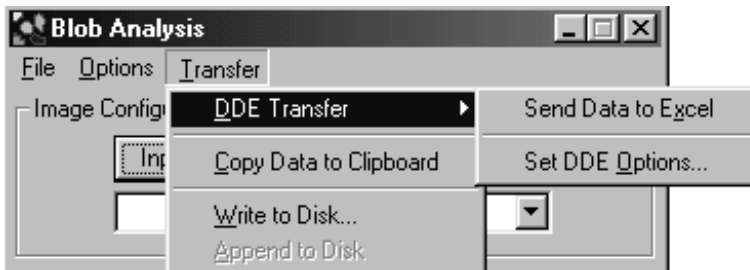


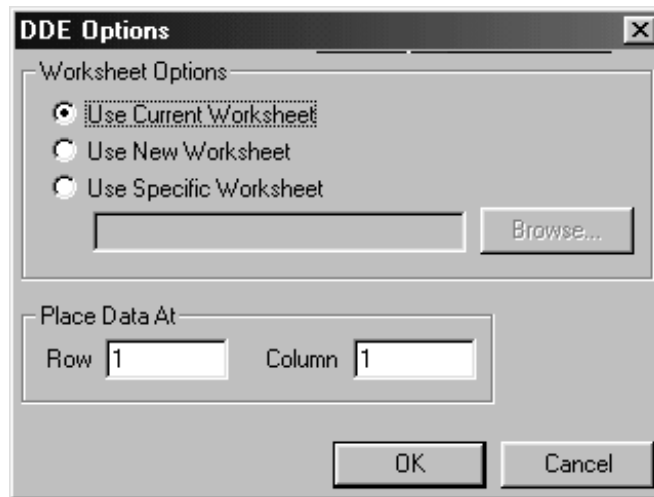
Figure 18: Blob AnalysisTool -Transfer Menu

DDE Transfer

Note: It is recommended that you use the Export tool to send variables and/or images from GLI/2 to Excel. For more information, refer to [Chapter 11, “Using the Export Tool.”](#) The DDE options in the Blob Analysis tool have been retained for backward compatibility.

The DDE Transfer option allows you to select the following options for sending blob data to the spreadsheet program Excel:

- **Send Data to Excel** – Select this option to send all the current blob data (parameters and values) to Excel. Excel automatically opens and loads the data. When the blob data is loaded into Excel, you can display the data in any supported format, such as charts, graphs, and spreadsheets.
- **Set DDE Options...** – Select this option to open the DDE Options dialog box.



Click the appropriate radio button to specify the Excel worksheet you want to use. You can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. You can place your data at a specific row and/or column in the specified worksheet. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the DDE Options dialog box without saving your changes.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Copy Data to Clipboard

Select this option to copy all current blob data to the clipboard. You can then paste from the clipboard to any supported program, such as Word, Excel, or Notepad.

Write to Disk

Select this option to write all current blob data to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate directory and enter the file name, then click **Save**.

Append to Disk

Select this option to add the current blob data to the end of the file you saved using **Write to Disk**.

Main Dialog Box Options

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The input image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the Input Image display window drop-down list.

Mask Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the binary mask image. Use this button only if you have already created a binary mask image using the Threshold tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#) The mask image name is shown in the Mask Image display window. You can also select the mask image from the Mask Image display window drop-down list.

By creating the binary mask image yourself, you can first process the image with other tools such as the Morphology tool. This allows you

to remove unwanted particles, to smooth particles, and to separate touching particles. You can also logically AND, OR, or XOR binary images together before finding the blobs contained in the input image.

If you do not require the advanced features of the Threshold tool, you can let the Blob Analysis tool threshold the input image and create a binary mask image using either built-in thresholding (see [page 95](#)) or automatic thresholding ([page 96](#)). After you perform the **Find Blobs** operation, the mask image name (in the format *ImageName.msk:x*) is shown in the Mask Image display window and you can select the mask image from the Mask Image display window drop-down list.

To view a mask image that is created by the Blob Analysis tool, use the Image Manager tool. If you double-click the name of the mask image in the list of images in memory, the tool places the mask image in the active viewport. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15](#), “Using the Image Manager Tool.”

Activate Thresholding Controls

By default, the Blob Analysis tool uses built-in thresholding to threshold the input image and create a binary mask image using the threshold limits shown in the **Maximum** and **Minimum** text boxes. If you want to change the threshold limits, select the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox. Then, use the **Maximum** and **Minimum** slider controls to adjust the upper and lower limits. You can also enter the limits manually and use the arrow keys to fine-tune the values.

Note that you can perform either built-in thresholding or automatic thresholding. If you select the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox, the **Auto Threshold** checkbox is grayed out.

Auto Threshold

Select this checkbox to enable automatic thresholding. Clear the checkbox to disable automatic thresholding.

If automatic thresholding is enabled, select a reference value from the **Automatic Threshold Reference** spin box. Assuming that the lower threshold value is 0, the reference value is the position (percentage) between the left-most peak in the associated histogram and the right-most peak in the associated histogram at which the upper threshold value occurs. By default, the reference value is 50%.

If automatic thresholding is enabled, you can select the **Invert Output** checkbox to invert the output binary image. The foreground pixels are output as background pixels and the background pixels are output as foreground pixels.

Note that automatic thresholding is not appropriate for all images. It is intended for images whose histogram has a bimodal distribution. If automatic thresholding does not produce the results you expect, try built-in thresholding (see [page 95](#)), or use the Threshold tool to create a binary image. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#)

Note that you can perform either automatic thresholding or built-in thresholding. If you select the **Auto Threshold** checkbox, the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox is grayed out.

Sort Options

Select the criteria that determines how the found blobs in the found blobs display list are sorted. By default, the tool sorts the list according to the total area of the blob. Other options in the Blob Settings dialog box determine which blobs to display in the list, whether to sort the list in ascending or descending order, and whether to keep the parent-child relationship.

Child Level

Select the level of children that you want to display in the found blobs display list. Although the Blob Analysis tool always finds all levels of children, you can use this control to limit how many levels are displayed.

Blob Statistics

Click one of the following radio buttons to specify which statistics you want to display in the blob parameters and values list and, if you are performing point & click scripting, which statistics you want to send to your point & click script:

- **Show statistics for first blob** – Click this radio button if you want to display/send statistics for the first blob in the found blobs display list. You select the statistics you want to display/send using the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

If you want to display/send statistics for a blob other than the first blob in the found blobs display list, you must modify the **Sort Options**. For more information, refer to [page 96](#).

Note that the statistics displayed when you click this radio button are the same as the statistics displayed when you click **Show statistics for every blob**. However, when you click this radio button, only statistics for the first blob in the found blobs display list are sent to the point & click script.

- **Show statistics for every blob** – Click this radio button if you want to display/send statistics for all blobs in the found blobs display list. You select the statistics you want to display/send using the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

Note that the statistics displayed when you click this radio button are the same as the statistics displayed when you click **Show statistics for first blob**. However, when you click this radio button, statistics for all blobs are sent to the point & click script.

- **Show statistics for blobs** – Click this radio button if you want to display/send either the minimum value, the maximum value, the average, or the standard deviation of all blobs in the found blobs display list for each statistic. You select the statistics you want to display/send using the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

Found Blobs Display List

The tool displays all found blobs in the found blobs display list. You can select (highlight) a blob from the list by clicking on it. If you select a blob from the image itself (as you would select any other ROI), the corresponding blob is highlighted in the list.

Blob Parameters and Values List

The tool displays all the parameters and values (calculations) for the blob that is highlighted in the found blobs display list in this area. If you are interested in a specific parameter for multiple blobs (for example, roundness), you can select the parameter Roundness from the blob parameters and values list. The parameter stays selected as you highlight different blobs in the found blobs display list.

Description of Parameters

This field displays a description of the parameter highlighted in the blob parameters and values list.

Find Blobs

Click this button to perform the blob analysis.

Found:

After each execution, this field displays the number of found blobs that the tool finds. Note that this may not equal the total number of blobs in the found blobs display list.

Add to Script

After you perform the blob analysis operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Blob Settings Dialog Box Options

The Blob Settings dialog box is opened when you select **Options | Blob Settings**. When you have specified all appropriate values, click **Apply** to save the settings without closing the dialog box. Click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving changes.

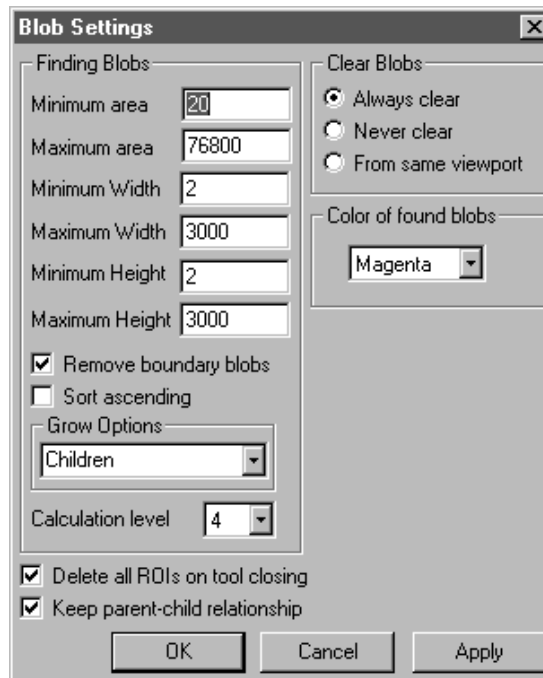


Figure 19: Blob Settings Dialog Box

Minimum Area

Specify the minimum size for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose area is smaller than this value, the tool discards the blob. This is useful in noisy images to prevent finding extraneous background blobs in the image. The minimum blob area is 4 pixels.

Note: If there is more than one level of child blobs below the minimum blob size and you do not grow these smaller children, the parameter totals do not include the information contained in the ungrown child blobs. In some cases, this is what is desired; in other cases, it may be an incorrect value.

Maximum Area

Specify the maximum size for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose area is larger than this value, the tool discards the blob. This value must be 4 pixels or greater.

Minimum Width

Specify the minimum width for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose width is smaller than this value, the tool discards the blob. The minimum blob width is 2 pixels.

Maximum Width

Specify the maximum width for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose width is larger than this value, the tool discards the blob. This value must be 2 pixels or greater.

Minimum Height

Specify the minimum height for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose height is smaller than this value, the tool discards the blob. The minimum blob height is 2 pixels.

Maximum Height

Specify the maximum height for a blob in the parent area, in pixels. If the tool finds a blob whose height is larger than this value, the tool discards the blob. This value must be 2 pixels or greater.

Remove Boundary Blobs

Select this checkbox if you want the tool to discard a blob that is touching the active ROI. Clear this checkbox if you want the tool to truncate a blob that is touching the active ROI to fit inside the active ROI. If you want only certain blobs discarded, you can find all blobs and then delete the unwanted blobs yourself (just as you would delete any other ROI).

Sort Ascending

Select this checkbox if you want blobs in the found blobs display list to be sorted in ascending order. Clear this checkbox if you want blobs in the found blobs display list to be sorted in descending order.

Grow Options

You can select of the following grow options:

- **Bi-dir with children** – If you select this option, the child blobs are calculated and grown on both sides of the object.
- **Children** – If you select this option, the child blobs are calculated and grown on one side of the object.
- **No Children** – If you select this option, child blobs are not grown or displayed. This option speeds up the overall growing of the blobs. This is useful if only the blob's perimeter ROI is important, if you don't care about child blob information, or if you know that there are no child blobs to be found.

Note: If you select **Bi-dir with children**, the found blobs display list shows levels of child blobs. If you select **Children**, the found blobs display list shows each child as a separate blob.

If more than one level of child blobs exists and you select **No Children**, the parameter totals do not include the information contained in the ungrown child blobs. In some cases, this is what is desired; in other cases, it may be an incorrect value.

Calculation Level

Specify the calculation level that you want the tool to use when finding blobs. The lower the calculation level, the fewer parameters are calculated. Therefore, you can speed up the finding of blobs by using a lower calculation level. By default, all parameters are calculated using a calculation level of 4. If a parameter is not calculated, it uses a calculation level of -1. To determine the calculation level that is required for each parameter, refer to [Table 3](#) on [page 78](#).

Clear Blobs

Click one of the following radio buttons to specify what you want to do with the blobs in the found blobs display list when you push the **Find Blobs** button:

- **Always clear** – Always clear the list when finding new blobs. This is the default.
- **Never clear** – Never clear the list when finding new blobs. This is useful when you want to find blobs in two separate regions either in the same image or in different images.
- **From same viewport** – Delete any blobs in the list that are from the same viewport as the viewport you are currently finding blobs in. Blobs found in other viewports remain in the list.

Color of Found Blobs

Specify the color that you want to use to display the blob highlighted in the found blobs display list on the image. You can select multiple blobs in one color, select a new color, and then select more blobs. This is useful for displaying all blobs that have certain features in the same color, while displaying other blobs in another color. Note that if you perform an action that causes the image to be redrawn, you will lose this coloring.

Delete all ROIs on Tool Closing

Select this checkbox if you want to delete all the freehand ROIs created by the Blob Analysis tool when you close the tool. Clear this checkbox if you want to keep these ROIs when you close the tool; this is useful if you want to use these ROIs in other tools.

Keep Parent-Child Relationship

Select this checkbox if you do not want to include child blobs in the sort criteria when sorting the blobs in the found blobs display list. In this case, only the parents are sorted and the children stay attached to their parents.

Clear this checkbox if you do not want to use the parent-child relationship when displaying the blobs in the list. In this case, all blobs (including the children) are considered in the sort criteria when sorting the list. The parent-child relationship still exists, but it is not used when displaying the list.

You can toggle back and forth without having to find the blobs again.

Statistic Settings Dialog Box Options

The Statistic Settings dialog box is opened when you select **Options | Statistic Settings** from the Blob Analysis tool main dialog box. When you have specified all appropriate values, click **OK** to accept and validate the options. Click **Cancel** to close the Statistic Settings dialog box without saving your changes.

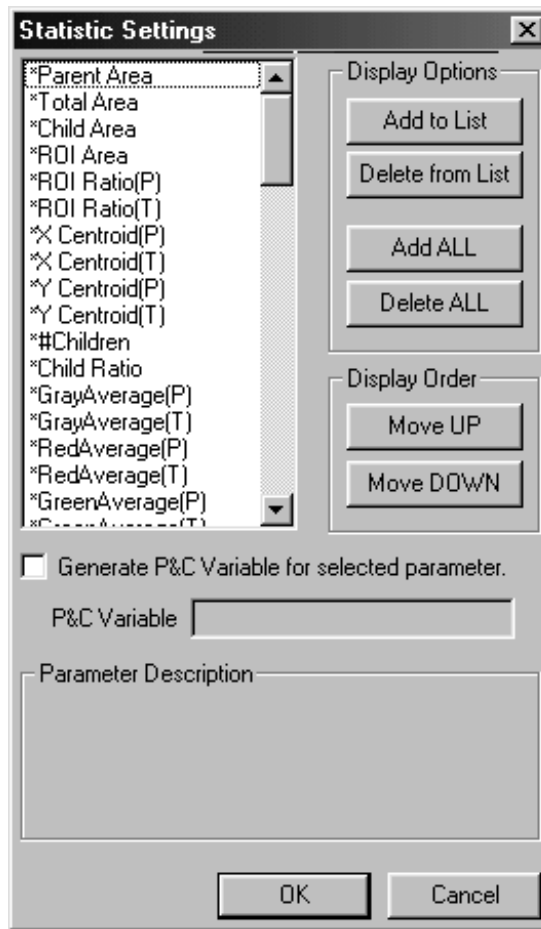


Figure 20: Statistic Settings Dialog Box

Click on a parameter to select (highlight) it. A description of the parameter is displayed in the **Parameter Description** field. If the parameter is a calibrated measurement, the word “Calibrated” is also displayed.

Click **Add to List** to add the selected parameter to the blob parameters and values list, click **Delete from List** to delete the selected parameter from the list, click **Move UP** to move the selected parameter up in the list, or click **Move DOWN** to move the selected parameter down in the list. You can also click **Add ALL** to add all parameters to the list or click **Delete ALL** to delete all parameters from the list. All parameters that will be displayed in the blob parameters and values list are denoted with an asterisk (*).

If you are performing point & click scripting, select the **Generate P&C Variable for selected parameter** checkbox to generate a point & click script variable for the selected parameter. The name of the variable is displayed in the **P&C Variable** field. By default, the name of the variable is the same as the name of the parameter; however, you can change the name, if desired.

P&C Script Settings Dialog Box Options

The P&C Script Settings dialog box is opened when you select **Options | P&C Settings** from the Blob Analysis tool main dialog box. When you have specified all appropriate values, click **OK** to accept and validate the options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

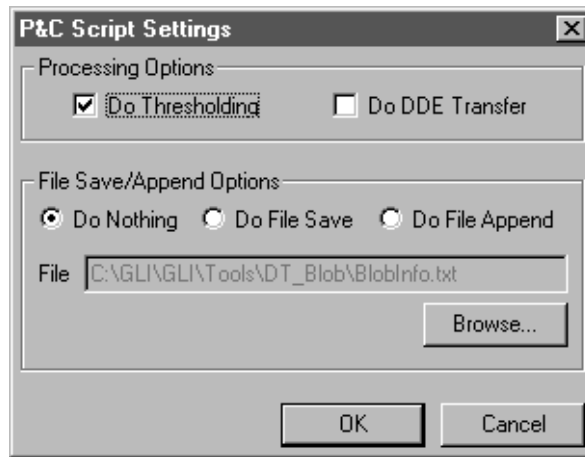


Figure 21: P&C Script Settings Dialog Box

5

Do Thresholding

Select this checkbox if you want to perform thresholding during point & click scripting. Clear this checkbox if you do not want to perform thresholding.

Note that if you can use the same mask image (the same threshold limits) for each **Find Blobs** operation that you perform, you can improve performance by clearing this checkbox after the first operation. All subsequent operations will use the mask image specified for the first operation.

Do DDE Transfer

Select this checkbox if you want to send the calculations performed by the Blob Analysis tool to the Excel file specified by **File**. The calculations are listed in the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

File Save/Append Options

Click one of the following radio buttons to specify how you want to save the calculations performed by the Blob Analysis tool:

- **Do Nothing** – Click this radio button if you do not want to save calculations.
- **Do File Save** – Click this radio button if you want to save the calculations in a file. By default, the calculations are saved in the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, either enter the file name in the text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file. The calculations are listed in the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).
- **Do File Append** – Click this radio button if you want to add the calculations to the end of a file. By default, the calculations are added to the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, either enter the file name in the text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file. The calculations are listed in the Statistic Settings dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 104](#).

Example of Using the Blob Analysis Tool

This example shows how to find all the blobs inside the active ROI in the image Mixpoll, shown in [Figure 22](#).

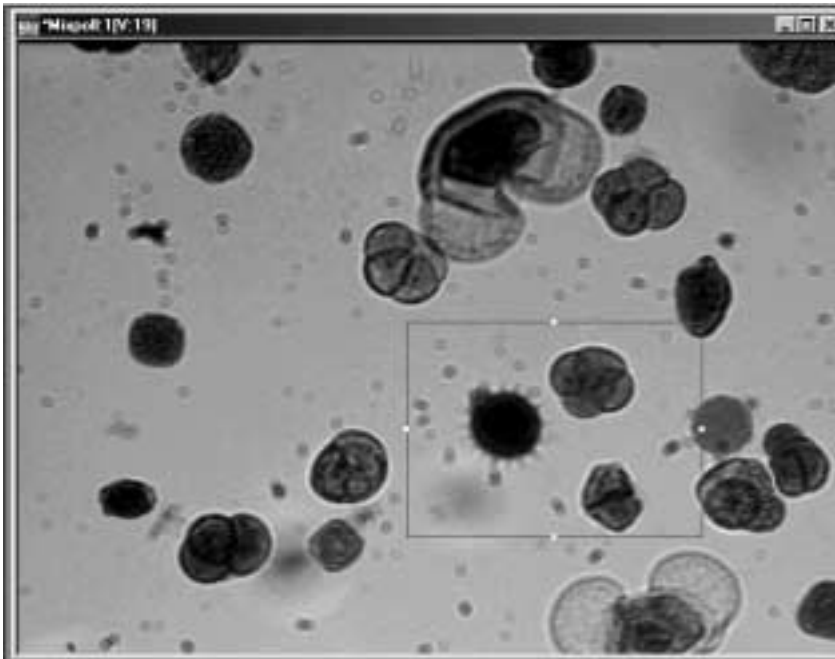


Figure 22: The Image Mixpoll

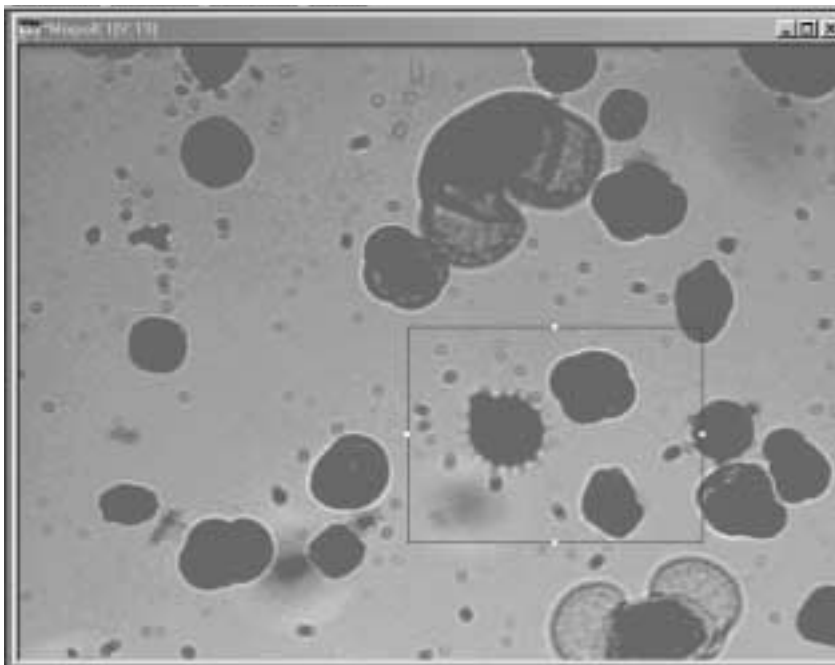
The operation is as follows:

1. Set the input image. Open a Blob Analysis tool (if one is not already open). Click on the image Mixpoll in the viewport in the main application; it becomes the active viewport and is denoted with an asterisk, as shown in [Figure 22](#). Now, click **Input Image** in the Blob Analysis tool main dialog box.

Note that when you open a Blob Analysis tool, the image in the active viewport is loaded as the input image by default.

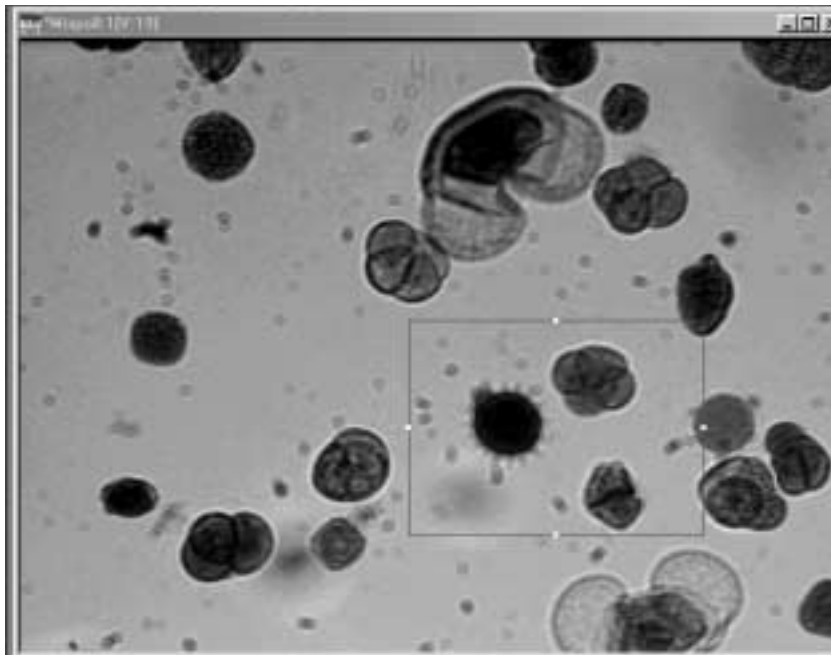
2. Threshold the input image. Click the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox. Set the **Minimum** limit to 0 and the **Maximum** limit to 104 by adjusting the slider controls or entering the values manually. Note that these settings differ for different images.

The image Mixpoll looks as follows:



3. If desired, you can change the way that the Blob Analysis tool finds and displays blobs. Open the Blob Settings dialog box by selecting **Options | Blob Settings**, then change the settings as appropriate.
4. When all options for the tool are set appropriately, click **Find Blobs** to start the blob analysis and list all the found blobs in the found blobs display list.
5. Look at blob statistics. Click on Blob 3 in the found blobs display list. Click on the parameter Parent Area in the blob parameters and values list. Note that for each blob you click, the corresponding blob is highlighted in the image itself and the corresponding statistics are shown in the blob parameters and values list.

The image Mixpoll look as follows:



6. You can inspect a blob (parent or child) in the following ways:
 - Select a blob from the found blobs display list or activate its associated ROI and view its associated statistics in the blob parameters and values list.
 - Delete a blob or child blob. Since a blob has an associated freehand ROI, you can remove the blob from the found blobs list by deleting its ROI. All blob information is updated to reflect this change.
 - Use other tools on the blob's freehand ROI. For example, you could take a histogram of the blob, run a filter on the blob, or use a custom tool on the blob.
 - Use **Sort Options** and **Child Level** to view the found blobs display list differently.
 - Use the Blob Settings dialog box to view blobs in different colors, to sort the found blobs display list in ascending or descending order, and to detach child blobs from their parents.
 - Change the **Clear Blobs** option in the Blob Settings dialog box to find additional blobs in either another viewport, the same viewport, or both. You can rethreshold or change mask images to find blobs at two (or more) different threshold values for the same or different images. Note that you can use more than one Blob Analysis tool at a time.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Blob Analysis tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information on scripting options, refer to [page 106](#). For more information about the Point & Script tool, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Blob Analysis tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Blob Analysis tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input and mask images, the sort options, and the active ROI (if you are using one). Click **Find Blobs** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Blob Analysis tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script. This includes the input and mask images, the sort options, and the active ROI (if an ROI was used). The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Calibration Tool

Introduction.....	116
Description of Calibration Tool Options.....	120
Example of Using the Calibration Tool.....	126
Point & Click Script	129

Introduction

The Calibration tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to calibrate your imaging system using real-world coordinates and subpixel accuracy. Once your system is calibrated, you can obtain real-world measurement data with subpixel accuracy.

To calibrate your system, you place four calibration points (reference points) in an image containing objects whose measurements are known. The Calibration tool uses these points to make its calculations. To obtain the most accurate measurements possible, it is recommended that you place the points in a rectangular fashion on the image.

Note: You must set all four calibration points.

Once you have set up the calibration points, you can edit the values, manually, if desired.

[Figure 23](#) shows a viewport containing an image with four calibration points. [Figure 24](#) shows the Calibration tool with the appropriate values set.

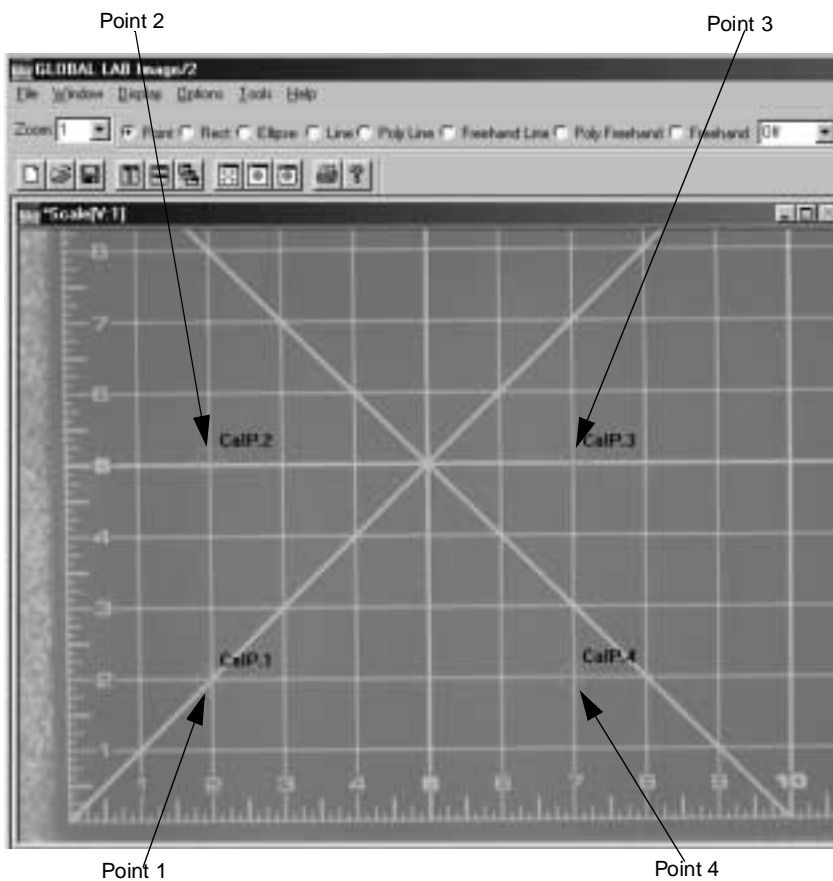


Figure 23: Calibration Image

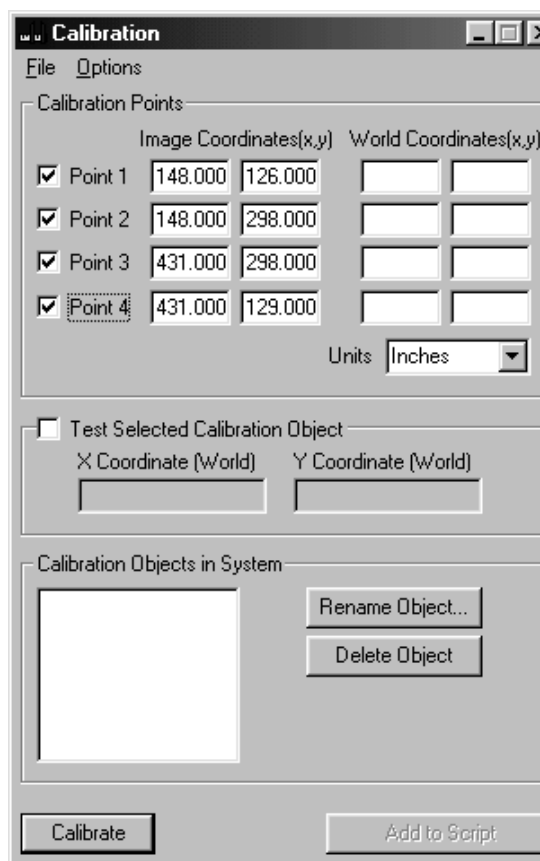



Figure 24: Calibration Tool

To open a Calibration tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Calibration** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Calibration tool is fully compatible with all other tools and image types and uses a subpixel point ROI.

You can have only one Calibration tool open at a time.

Description of Calibration Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Calibration tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

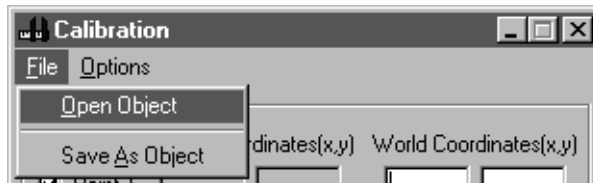


Figure 25: Calibration Tool - File Menu

Open Object

Select this option to open a calibration object that you have saved to disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a calibration object (the file name must be followed by the extension .cal), the object is loaded into the Calibration tool.

Save As Object

Select this option to save a calibration object to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter the file name with the extension .cal.

Options Menu Options

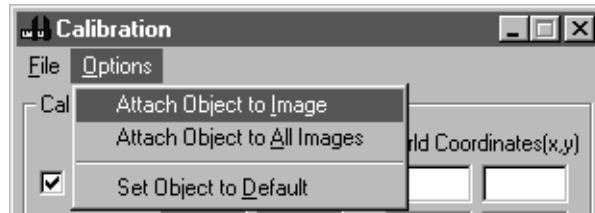


Figure 26: Calibration Tool - Options Menu

Attach Object To Image

Select this option if you want to attach the selected calibration object to a specific image. When you use a tool that displays measurements (such as the Blob Analysis tool), the attached calibration object is used to calculate the measurements for the specified image.

Attach Object to All Images

Select this option to attach the selected calibration object to all images in the system. When you use a tool that displays measurements (such as the Blob Analysis tool), the attached calibration object is used to calculate the measurements for the image.

Set Object to Default

Select this option to set the selected calibration object as the default calibration object. The calibration object is appended with an asterisk (*). All images opened from disk are automatically attached to the default calibration object. When you use a tool that displays measurements (such as the Blob Analysis tool), the attached calibration object is used to calculate the measurements for the image.

Main Dialog Box Options

Point 1

Select the **Point 1** checkbox to specify the first calibration point. Then, place the mouse cursor on the image at the location where you want to set the first calibration point (lower-left corner, if possible) and click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image and the **Image Coordinates** fields are automatically filled in. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates**, based on the image measurement scale and the location of your calibration point. You can move and delete calibration points on an image using the same methods that you would use for an ROI. You can also reselect the checkbox and start over.

It is recommended that you place the calibration points on the image in a location where you can easily determine the world coordinates. For example, place each calibration point in the corners of the image where two lines intercept. You can use the Zoom feature to increase your accuracy.

Point 2

Select the **Point 2** checkbox to specify the second calibration point. Then, place the mouse cursor on the image at the location where you want to set the second calibration point (upper-left corner, if possible) and click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image and the **Image Coordinates** fields are automatically filled in. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates**, based on the image measurement scale and the location of your calibration point. You can move and delete calibration points on an image using the same methods that you would use for an ROI. You can also reselect the checkbox and start over.

It is recommended that you place the calibration points on the image in a location where you can easily determine the world coordinates. For example, place each calibration point in the corners of the image where two lines intercept. You can use the Zoom feature to increase your accuracy.

Point 3

Select the **Point 3** checkbox to specify the third calibration point. Then, place the mouse cursor on the image at the location where you want to set the third calibration point (upper-right corner, if possible) and click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image and the **Image Coordinates** fields are automatically filled in. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates**, based on the image measurement scale and the location of your calibration point. You can move and delete calibration points on an image using the same methods that you would use for an ROI. You can also reselect the checkbox and start over.

It is recommended that you place the calibration points on the image in a location where you can easily determine the world coordinates. For example, place each calibration point in the corners of the image where two lines intercept. You can use the Zoom feature to increase your accuracy.

6

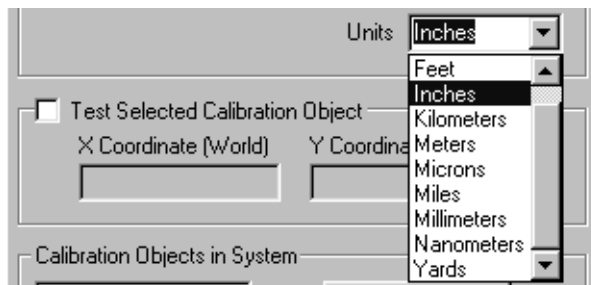
Point 4

Select the **Point 4** checkbox to specify the fourth calibration point. Then, place the mouse cursor on the image at the location where you want to set the fourth calibration point (lower-right corner, if possible) and click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image and the **Image Coordinates** fields are automatically filled in. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates**, based on the image measurement scale and the location of your calibration point. You can move and delete calibration points on an image using the same methods that you would use for an ROI. You can also reselect the checkbox and start over.

It is recommended that you place the calibration points on the image in a location where you can easily determine the world coordinates. For example, place each calibration point in the corners of the image where two lines intercept. You can use the Zoom feature to increase your accuracy.

Units

Select the unit of measure from the drop-down list. For example, if your image is scaled in inches, select **Inches**.



If the unit of measure you need is not in the list, you can add it by overwriting the unit in the text box. When you click **Calibrate** to create the new calibration object, the unit you entered is used.

Test Selected Calibration Object

Select this checkbox if you want to test the selected calibration object. When you move the mouse cursor around in the image, the x and y real-world coordinates of the position of the mouse cursor are shown in the **X Coordinate (World)** and **Y Coordinate (World)** display windows.

Calibration Objects in System

This display window contains all the calibration objects in the system. Click on a calibration object to select (highlight) it.

Rename Object

Click this button if you want to rename the selected calibration object. Enter the new name in the Rename Object dialog box, then click **OK**.

Delete Object

Click this button to delete the selected calibration object from the system.

Calibrate

When all calibration points are set appropriately, click this button to create a new calibration object. The calibration object is added to the **Calibration Objects in System** display window.

Add to Script

After you perform an **Open Object**, **Attach Object To Image**, **Attach Object to All Images**, or **Set Object to Default** operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

Example of Using the Calibration Tool

This example shows how to set up the Calibration tool using the image Scale, shown in [Figure 27](#).

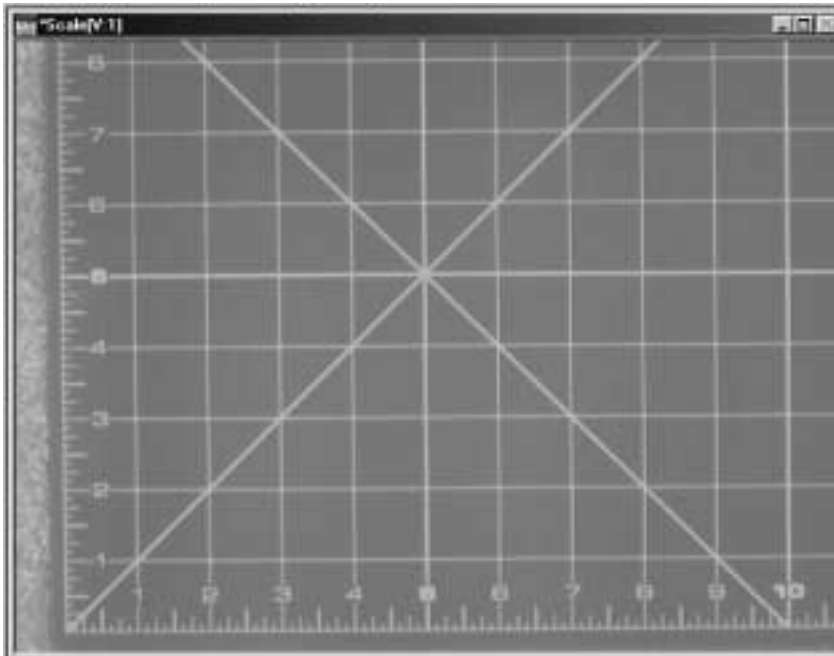
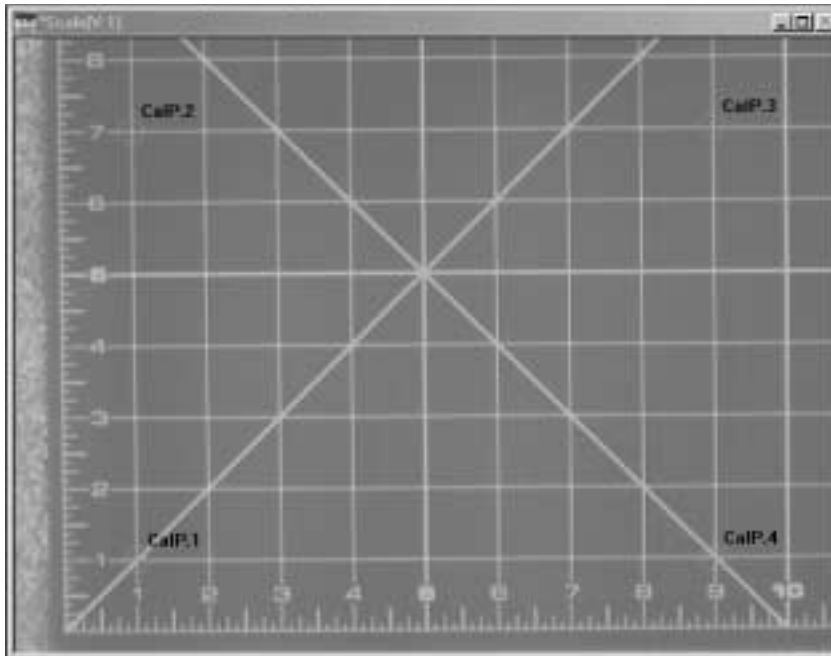


Figure 27: The Image Scale

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Calibration tool (if it is not already open).
2. Select the Point 1 checkbox in the Calibration tool. A check is displayed in the box. Place the mouse cursor on the image Scale at the location $x = 1$, $y = 1$. Click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image. The **Image Coordinates** (pixel locations) are automatically displayed. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates** (1,1).
3. Select the Point 2 checkbox in the Calibration tool. A check is displayed in the box. Place the mouse cursor on the image Scale at the location $x = 1$, $y = 7$. Click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image. The **Image Coordinates** (pixel locations) are automatically displayed. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates** (1,7).
4. Select the Point 3 checkbox in the Calibration tool. A check is displayed in the box. Place the mouse cursor on the image Scale at the location $x = 9$, $y = 7$. Click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image. The **Image Coordinates** (pixel locations) are automatically displayed. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates** (9,7).
5. Select the Point 4 checkbox in the Calibration tool. A check is displayed in the box. Place the mouse cursor on the image Scale at the location $x = 9$, $y = 1$. Click the left mouse button. The calibration point is set and displayed on the image. The **Image Coordinates** (pixel locations) are automatically displayed. Enter the corresponding **World Coordinates** (9,1).
6. When the calibration points are set appropriately, click **Calibrate** to create a new calibration object. The calibration object is added to the **Calibration Objects in System** display window with the name Calibration1.
7. Click **Test Selected Calibration Object**. A check is displayed in the box.

The image Scale looks as follows:



8. Move the mouse cursor around in the image. Notice that the x and y real-world coordinates of the position of the mouse cursor are shown in the **X Coordinate (World)** and **Y Coordinate (World)** display windows. For example, if you move the mouse cursor to position $x=5$, $y=5$, the reading in the **X Coordinate (World)** display window is 5 and the reading in the **Y Coordinate (World)** display window is 5. Your imaging system is now calibrated to the image Scale.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Calibration tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

The Calibration tool can record its **Open Object**, **Attach Object To Image**, **Attach Object to All Images**, and **Set Object to Default** functions.

The standard way to use calibration in a script is to first create the image that you want to process and then open a calibration object from disk and attach it to the image. Once a calibration object is opened from disk and in the system, it is not opened again. Likewise, once a calibration object is attached to an image, it is not attached again. You can save additional processing time by performing these functions once, placing them at the top of a script and placing the rest of the script in a while loop that is always true.

To add the Calibration tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must have the Point & Click Script tool open and you must have already created a calibration object and saved it to disk. Click **Open Object**, **Attach Object To Image**, **Attach Object to All Images**, or **Set Object to Default** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Calibration tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Perform the desired action again, then click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script.



Using the Color Plane Tool

Introduction.....	132
Description of Color Plane Tool Options	134
Example of Using the Color Plane Tool	135
Point & Click Script	138

Introduction

The Color Plane tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to specify how a 24-bit color image's data is accessed.

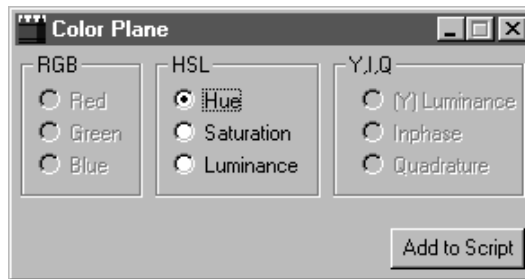


Figure 28: Color Plane Tool

The Color Plane tool allows you to access GLI/2 24-bit color image data in one of the following ways:

- **RGB color model** – For images opened as 24-bit RGB color images. Red, green, and blue image data reside on separate signals. You can select the particular signal you want to access.
- **HSL color model** – For images opened as 24-bit HSL color images. This color model consists of the following:
 - *Hue* – The color itself. It is represented as a value between 0 and 239, where Red is equal to 0, Green is approximately 70, and Blue is approximately 140.
 - *Saturation* – The depth of color. It is represented as a value between 0 and 240, where 0 is the least depth of color (grayscale) and 240 is the most depth of color.

- **Luminance** – The brightness. It is represented as a value between 0 and 240, where 0 is pure black and 240 is pure white.


Although the processing time is longer, the HSL color model is more accurate than the RGB color model because you can specify the particular hue you want to access. It is useful if objects of a certain color in your images may undergo a large change in bleaching and brightness due to changing lighting conditions.

- **YIQ color model** – For images opened as 24-bit RGB color images. Y is luminance, I (Inphase) is Red minus Y, and Q (Quadrature) is Blue minus Y.

Only luminance is supported at the present time. The luminance is calculated as follows:

$$Y = 0.299R + 0.587G + 0.114B$$

Note that the luminance in the YIQ color model is different from the luminance in the HSL color model.

To open a Color Plane tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Color Plane** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Color Plane tool works with GLI/2 24-bit RGB and GLI/2 24-bit HSL color images and with most GLI/2 tools.

You can have only one Color Plane tool open at a time.

Description of Color Plane Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Color Plane tool dialog box.

Note: The options allow you to specify the access method for color images. You specify the access method for the image in the active viewport only. Other color images in the system are not affected.

RGB

If you are using a 24-bit RGB color image, click the appropriate radio button (Red, Green, Blue) to specify the color plane to use when accessing image data.

HSL

If you are using a 24-bit HSL color image, click the appropriate radio button (Hue, Saturation, Luminance) to specify the color setting to use when accessing image data.

Y,I,Q

If you are using a 24-bit RGB color image, click **(Y) Luminance** to use the luminance (intensity) when accessing image data.

Note that you cannot select Inphase or Quadrature. These are only shown to indicate that the luminance is the luminance from a YIQ color image.

Add to Script

After you set the color, click this button to add the information to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Color Plane Tool

This example shows how to take a histogram of all four planes of the color image Pill1, shown in [Figure 29](#).

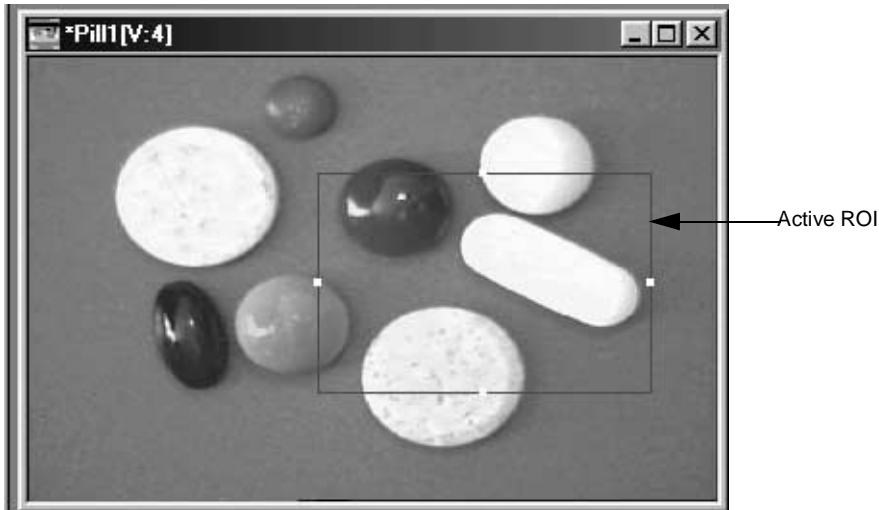


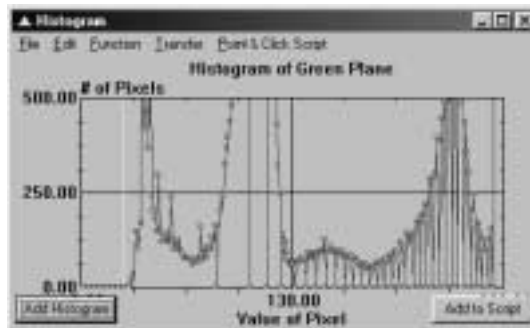
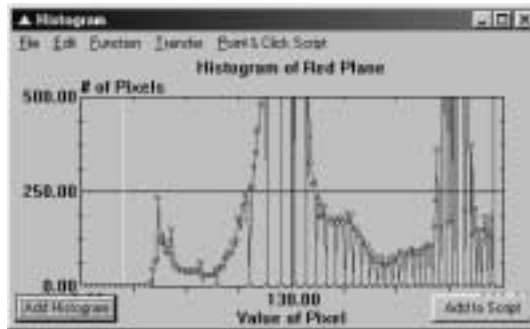
Figure 29: Color Plane Tool Example Image

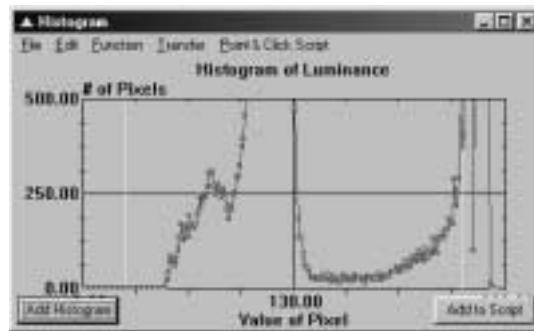
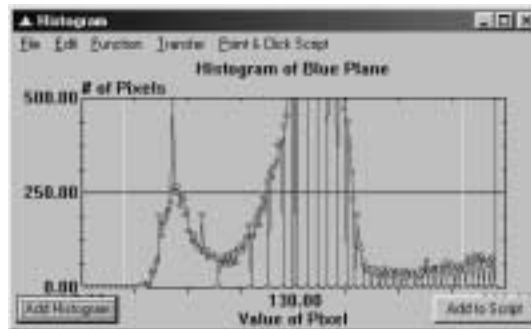
The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Color Plane tool (if it is not already open).
2. Activate the viewport with the image Pill1 by clicking in it with the left mouse button.
3. Make sure that the ROI is active (red) by clicking in it with the right mouse button.
4. Click **Red** in the Color Plane tool.

5. Take a histogram of the image. For more information on how to take a histogram, refer to [Chapter 14, “Using the Histogram Tool.”](#)
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for the green plane, blue plane, and luminance of the color image.

The histograms for each color plane and the luminance look as follows:





All histograms were created using the color image Pill1 and the same active ROI. They are shown as four separate histograms. You could also have created the four histogram curves on the same graph using one Histogram tool and then changed the color of each curve to represent the different planes.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Color Plane tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Color Plane tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Select the appropriate color plane for the color image, then click **Add to Script** to record the information in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Color Plane tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Custom Script Tool

Introduction.....	140
Description of Custom Script Tool Options	142
Example of Using the Custom Script Tool	144

Introduction

Note: The Custom Script tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.

The Custom Script tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to perform complicated mathematical functions on information derived from an image, using BASIC-like scripting within a point & click script. You can use all point & click script variables inside a custom script and create new point & click script variables from within the custom script.

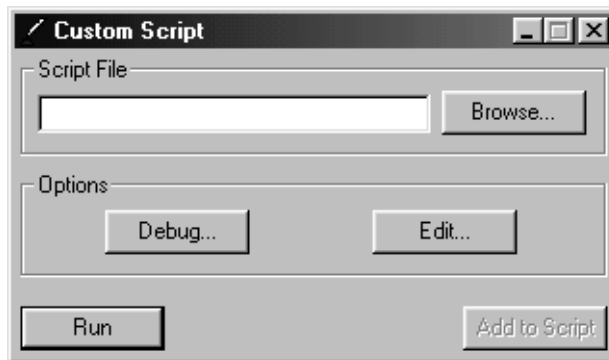



Figure 30: Custom Script Tool

To open a Custom Script tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Custom Script** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Custom Script tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have only one Custom Script tool open at a time.

Description of Custom Script Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Custom Script tool dialog box.

Script File

Enter the full path to the custom script file that you want to run, edit, or debug. You can also use the **Browse** button to locate the file.

Note that you cannot use spaces in the path name.

Debug

Click this button to start the Custom Script tool's debugger. The entire custom script is displayed and you can view and change any variable while single-stepping through the script.

Edit

Click this button to edit the custom script file specified in the **Script File** text box. If no script is specified in the **Script File** text box, clicking this button allows you to create a new custom script. When you click **Edit**, the tool automatically opens the Windows WordPad text editor. However, you can edit the custom script using any text editor you want.

Run

Click this button to run the custom script file.

Add to Script

Click this button if you want to add your custom script to the current point & click script. You can read, use, change, and create point & click script variables from inside a custom script.

If you want to construct complicated mathematical formulas using point & click script variables from within the Custom Script tool, you must get the values of these point & click script variables and place them in custom script variables that will then be used in the custom script. To do this, you use the BASIC function `GET_PNC_VAR(. . .)`.

You can use the result of the custom script by setting custom script values back to point & click script variables. To do this, you use the BASIC function `SET_PNC_VAR(. . .)`. When the custom script is run, this function creates the point & click script variable, if it does not already exist.

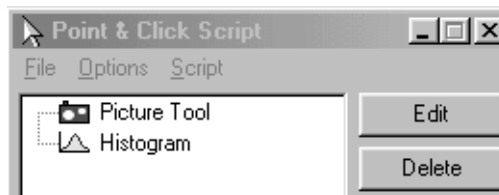
Example of Using the Custom Script Tool

This example shows how to take a picture of an object and then look at the grayscale difference of a region in the image by first calculating a histogram and then subtracting the maximum and minimum values of the histogram. If the difference is larger than 50, a region in the image's overlay is changed to red to indicate a problem.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Point & Click Script tool (if it is not already open) and open a Picture tool (if one is not already open). Then, set up the Picture tool as desired and record the Picture Tool script item in the point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool,"](#) and [Chapter 21, "Using the Picture Tool."](#)
2. Open a Histogram tool (if one is not already open). Set up the tool to calculate histogram statistics in the Histogram Script Options dialog box. Use the default names of the script variables (the name of the Maximum script variable is `H_Max` and the name of the Minimum script variable is `H_Min`). For more information, refer to [Chapter 14, "Using the Histogram Tool."](#)

The point & click script looks as follows:



3. Open the Custom Script tool (if it is not already open) and click **Edit**.

WordPad automatically opens.

4. To find the difference between the Maximum and Minimum values in the histogram, enter the following script in WordPad (the Maximum and Minimum values are contained in the point & click script variables `H_Max` and `H_Min` and were calculated by the Histogram tool):

```
Min = GET_PNC_VAR( "H_Min" )
Max = GET_PNC_VAR( "H_Max" )
```

```
X = Max - Min
```

```
SET_PNC_VAR( "Diff", X)
```

```
END
```

```
EXIT
```

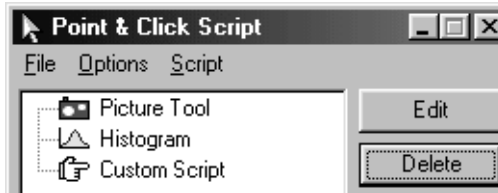
The first line of code gets the value of the point & click script variable `H_Min` and places it in the custom script variable `Min`. The second line gets the value of `H_Max` and places it in `Max`. The third line uses BASIC code to subtract the two values and place the result in the custom script variable `x`. The fourth line takes the value of `x` and creates a point & click variable called `Diff`, which will contain the difference value. You can now use the point & click variable `Diff` in the point & click script.

All basic scripts must end with the keywords `END` and `EXIT`.

5. Save the script with the name `test1.txt` to any directory. Make sure that you save the text as normal text.
6. Load the saved script into the Custom Script tool by clicking **Browse** in the Custom Script tool and selecting the file that you just saved. The custom script is now ready to run, edit, or debug.

7. Add the custom script to the point & click script by clicking **Add to Script** in the Custom Script tool.

The Point & Click Script tool looks as follows:



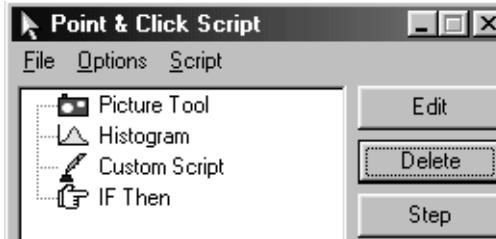
8. Generate the `Diff` variable by either stepping through the custom script item from the Point & Click Script tool or running the custom script from the Custom Script tool.
9. To make a decision based on the new point & click variable `Diff`, click the If-Then button in the Point & Click Script tool and add the statement “If `Diff` is greater than 50”.

The If-Then statement looks as follows:



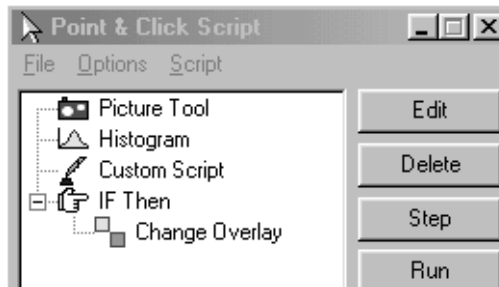
10. Click **OK** in the If-Then box.

The point & click script looks as follows:



11. Record a point & click script item to change a region to red using the Pixel Change tool and place the script item under the If-Then item. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool,”](#) and [Chapter 22, “Using the Pixel Change Tool.”](#)

The point & click script looks as follows:



For more information on the type of BASIC code that you can use in a custom script, refer to the *GLOBAL LAB Image/2 API Manual*.



Using the Display Tool

Introduction.....	150
Description of Display Tool Options.....	153
Example of Using the Display Tool.....	166
Point & Click Script.....	171

Introduction

The Display tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to specify how to view 8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, and floating-point grayscale images.

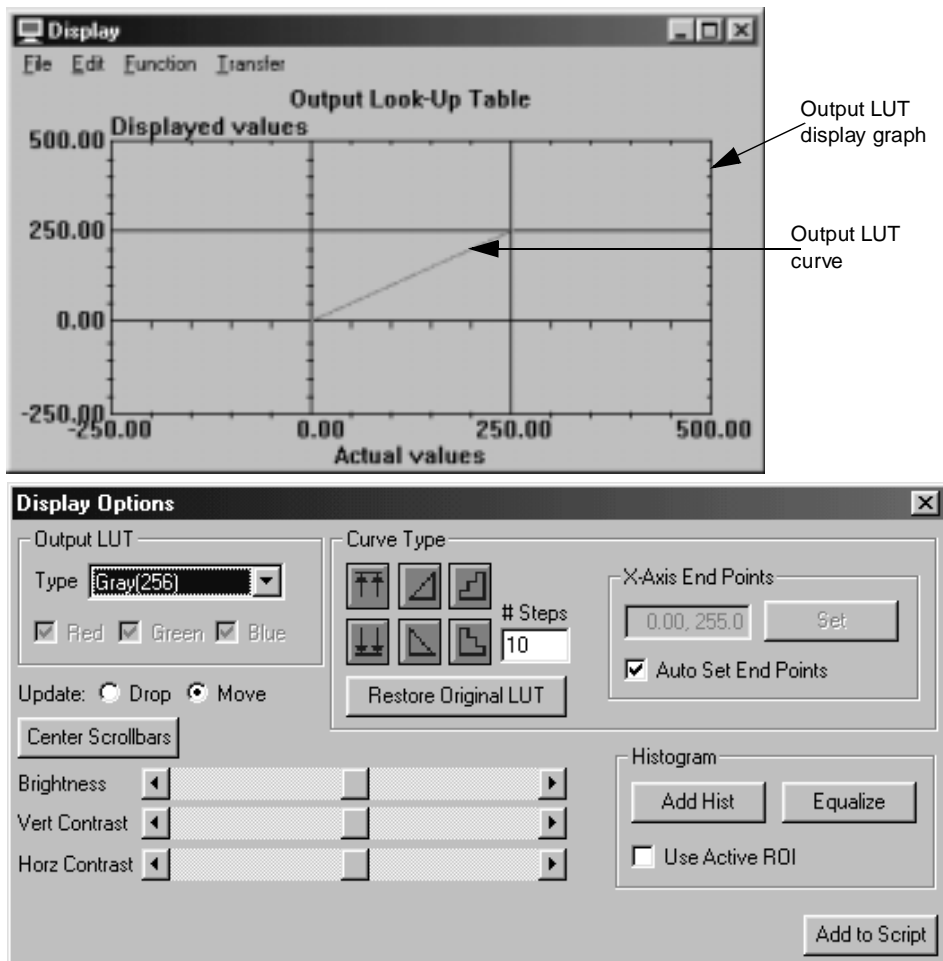


Figure 31: Display Tool


When a grayscale image is displayed, the image is passed through an output look-up table (LUT). The output LUT (also called a color table) specifies how the pixel values are displayed. You view grayscale images using one of five different output LUTs. Select the output LUT in the main application using the **Display | Grayscale Color Mode** menu option.

The Display tool allows you to modify four of the five output LUTs. For more information, refer to [page 159](#). Note that modifying an output LUT does not change the image's data, only how the image is displayed.

The Output Look-Up Table graph, shown on [page 150](#), shows **Actual values** and **Displayed values**. These pixel values are represented on the graph using an output LUT curve. You can select points on the output LUT curve in the following ways:

- **Select a single point** – Click on the point with the left mouse button.
- **Select a continuous group of points** – First, select one of the end points of the group. Then, click on the other end point of the group with the left mouse button while holding down <Shift>.
- **Select or deselect another point with other points already selected** – Click on the point with the left mouse button while holding down <Ctrl>.

Once selected, you can vertically move the selected points by dragging them with the mouse. You can deselect all points by clicking in any unused area of the graph.

To open a Display tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Display** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Display tool works with GLI/2 8-bit grayscale, 16-bit grayscale, 32-bit grayscale, and floating-point grayscale images and with all types of ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Display tools open at the same time.

Description of DisplayTool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Display tool dialog boxes.

File Menu Options

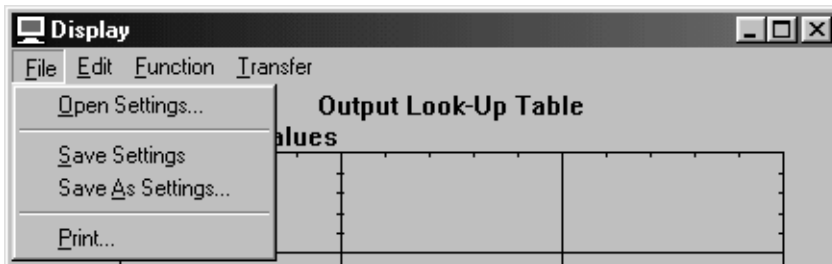


Figure 32: DisplayTool - File Menu

Open Settings

Select this option to open a graph configuration from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a file (the name must be followed by the extension .dpl), the settings are loaded into the Display tool.

Note that a graph configuration includes x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save Settings

Select this option to save a graph configuration back to disk. The Display tool saves x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save a graph configuration to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter the file name with the extension .dpl.

Note that if you save a graph configuration with the name default.dpl, the file will automatically open each time you open a Display tool. You must save default.dpl in the DT_Displ directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Print

Select this option to print the graph.

Edit Menu Options

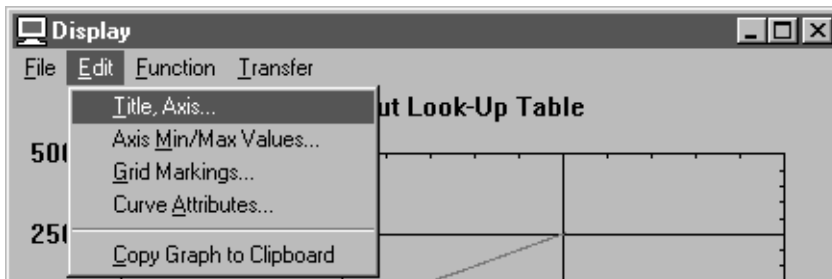


Figure 33: Display Tool - Edit Menu

Title, Axis...

Select this option to change the graph text for the title, x-axis, and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Set Title, X & Y Labels dialog box, then click **OK**.

Axis Min/Max Values...

Select this option to change the minimum and maximum limits for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Axis Min/Max Values dialog box, then click **OK**.

You can also set the minimum and maximum values for the graph by performing the following steps:

1. Move the mouse cursor to the point in the graph at which you want to start drawing the rectangular region.
2. While holding down <**Shift**> and <**Ctrl**> at the same time, click and hold down the left mouse button.
3. Drag the mouse until you complete the rectangular region. While dragging the mouse, the proposed zooming region is shown on the graph.
4. When you have completed the rectangular region, release the left mouse button. The graph now zooms to the desired minimum and maximum axis points.

You can switch back and forth between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking in the graph with the right mouse button.

Grid Markings...

Select this option to change the grid markings for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Grid Markings dialog box, then click **OK**.

Curve Attributes...

Select this option to change the style and color of the curve selected in the display graph. Click the appropriate radio buttons in the Curve Attributes dialog box, then click **OK**.

Copy Graph to Clipboard

Select this option to copy the display graph of the output LUT to the clipboard.

Function Menu Options

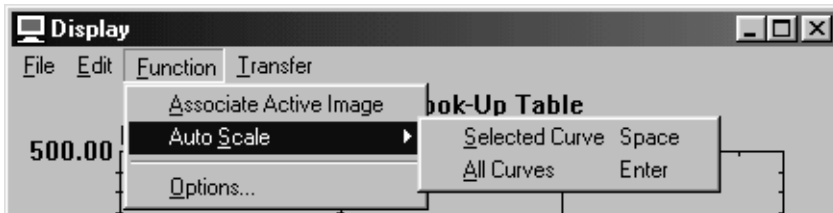


Figure 34: DisplayTool - Function Menu

Associate Active Image

Select this option to associate an image with the Display tool. This is required if you want to change the image's output LUT. Note that the active image is automatically associated with the Display tool when you select an output LUT using the **Output LUT Type** option in the Display Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 159](#).

Auto Scale

The Auto Scale option allows you to select one of the following options to determine how to scale the x-axis and y-axis:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit the selected curve on the graph.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit all curves on the graph.

Options

Select this option to open the Display Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 159](#).

Transfer Menu Options

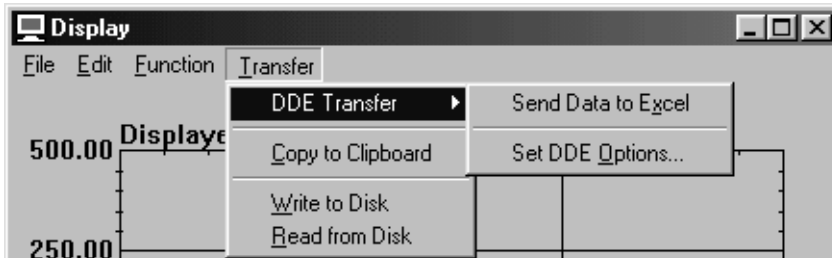
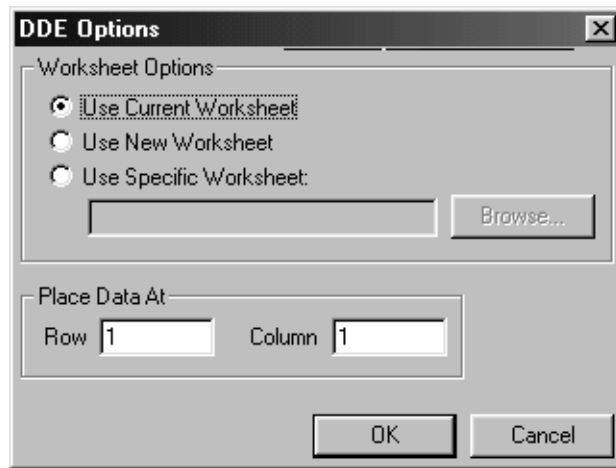


Figure 35: DisplayTool - Transfer Menu

DDE Transfer

The DDE Transfer option allows you to select the following options for sending output LUT settings to the spreadsheet program Excel:

- **Send Data to Excel** – Select this option to send all the current output LUT settings to Excel. Excel automatically opens and loads the data. When the data is loaded into Excel, you can display the data in any supported format, such as charts, graphs, and spreadsheets.
- **Set DDE Options...** – Select this option to open the DDE Options dialog box.



Click the appropriate radio button to specify the Excel worksheet you want to use. You can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. You can place your data at a specific row and/or column in the specified worksheet. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the DDE Options dialog box without saving your changes.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Note that you cannot use the Export tool to send output LUT settings from GLI/2 to Excel.

Copy to Clipboard

Select this option to copy all output LUT settings to the clipboard. You can then paste from the clipboard to any supported program, such as Word or Notepad.

Write to Disk

Select this option to write (save) the selected output LUT settings to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate directory and enter the file name, then click **Save**.

Read from Disk

Select this option to read (open) the previously saved output LUT settings from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you select the appropriate file, the output LUT settings are restored to the associated image.

Display Options Dialog Box Options

Output LUT Type

Select the output LUT that you want to modify. You can modify the following output LUTs:

- **RGB (256)** – This output LUT is used to produce false coloring of a grayscale image. The grayscale is divided into red, green, and blue planes. Select the box(es) to indicate which color planes you want to update. The Display tool places up to three output LUT curves on the graph, one to represent each color plane.

Note that if any points are selected on any of the curves, the selected points are modified, overriding this selection.

This selection corresponds to the **Display | Grayscale Color Mode | Use False Coloring** option in the main application.

- **Gray (256)** – This output LUT provides 256 grayscale values to map to your image's data. For an 8-bit grayscale image, this corresponds to a 1 to 1 ratio. This means that for each pixel value, you have one grayscale display color.

- **Gray (128)** – This output LUT provides 128 grayscale values to map to your image's data. For an 8-bit grayscale image, this corresponds to a 2 to 1 ratio. This means that for every two pixel values, you have one grayscale display color.
- **Gray (064)** – This output LUT provides 64 grayscale values to map to your image's data. For an 8-bit grayscale image, this corresponds to a 4 to 1 ratio. This means that for every four pixel values, you have one grayscale display color.

For 32-bit grayscale and floating-point grayscale images, the image's data is linearly mapped into the output LUT. For example, assume that you have a 32-bit grayscale image with a minimum pixel value of -237 and a maximum pixel value of 1000. With the highest resolution LUT (Gray (256)), you still have only 256 colors to display all the pixel values. In this case, GLI/2 displays the pixel with the closest color in the selected output LUT corresponding to the pixel's value. It does so based on a linear interpolation of output LUT points.

After you select the output LUT that you want to modify, the Display tool associates the image in the active viewport and displays the image with the output LUT you selected. It then displays the output LUT curve on the graph for you to modify. Note that this also resets the scrollbars for the brightness, vertical contrast, and horizontal contrast controls. You can select the same or a different type of output LUT as many times as you want.

Update

Select **Move** if you want the image redrawn while you are dragging selected points with the mouse. Select **Drop** if you want the image redrawn when you stop dragging the mouse.

When modifying the curve using the controls in the Display Options dialog box, you update the image only if this option is set to **Move**. You can, however, set the option to **Drop**, update the curve, and then reset the option to **Move**. You may want to use this technique if you have a very slow video board.

Center Scrollbars

Click this button to center the scrollbars, allowing you to continue increasing or decreasing the **Brightness**, **Vertical Contrast**, and **Horizontal Contrast** adjustment limits. Note that this does not restore your image's original output LUT.

Brightness

Use this slider control to adjust the brightness of the image. This control moves points on the curve in a vertical direction. If you have selected points on the curve, only the selected points are affected. If no points on the curve are selected, the entire curve is affected. If the curve represents an RGB (256) output LUT, you must select the curves to modify by checking the **Red**, **Green**, and/or **Blue** boxes in the **Output LUT Type** option. Note that if the scrollbar is at either of its limits and you want to increase or decrease the brightness, you can click **Center Scrollbars** and continue to make your adjustments. You can also use the buttons on each end of the scrollbar.

Vertical Contrast



Use this slider control to adjust the vertical contrast of the image. If you have selected points on the curve, only the selected points are affected. If no points on the curve are selected, the entire curve is affected. If the curve represents an RGB (256) output LUT, you must select the curves to modify by checking the **Red**, **Green**, and/or **Blue** boxes in the **Output LUT Type** option. Note that if the scrollbar is at either of its limits and you want to increase or decrease the vertical contrast, you can click **Center Scrollbars** and continue to make your adjustments. You can also use the buttons on each end of the scrollbar.





Horizontal Contrast

Use this slider control to adjust the horizontal contrast of the image. This control moves the points on the curve in a horizontal direction. The entire curve is always used for this control. Make sure that you do not have any points selected when using this control. If the curve represents a RGB (256) output LUT, you must select the curves to modify by checking the **Red**, **Green**, and/or **Blue** boxes in the **Output LUT Type** option. If the scrollbar is at either of its limits and you want to increase or decrease the horizontal contrast, you can click **Center Scrollbars** and continue to make your adjustments. You can also use the buttons on each end of the scrollbar.

Curve Type

This option allows you to select one of the curve types shown in the following table. If the curve represents an RGB (256) output LUT, you must select the curves to modify by checking the **Red**, **Green**, and/or **Blue** boxes in the **Output LUT Type** option.

Curve Type	Description
	Sets points to the highest point. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are set to the value of the highest selected point. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are set to the value of the highest point in the curve.
	Sets points to the lowest point. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are set to the value of the lowest selected point. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are set to the value of the lowest point in the curve.

Curve Type	Description
	Linearly redistributes points from lowest point to highest point. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are redistributed based on the selected points. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are redistributed based on all points in the curve.
	Linearly redistributes points from highest point to lowest point. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are redistributed based on the selected points. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are redistributed based on all points in the curve.
	Linearly redistributes points from lowest point to highest point in step fashion. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are redistributed based on the selected points. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are redistributed based on all points in the curve. Specify the number of steps in the # Steps text box.
	Linearly redistributes points from highest point to lowest point in step fashion. If a curve has selected points, all selected points are redistributed based on the selected points. If a curve has no selected points, all points in the curve are redistributed based on all points in the curve. Specify the number of steps in the # Steps text box.

Restore Original LUT

Click this button to restore the image's original output LUT. This is useful when your image becomes lost or distorted due to over-adjusting.

X-Axis End Points

This option is valid for 32-bit and floating-point grayscale images only.

Select the **Auto Set End Points** checkbox if you want to automatically map all pixel values contained in an image to a value between 0 and 255 for display. For example, if you open an image with pixel values between 0 and 255, the image is displayed as a normal image. If you then change some of the pixels to a value of 1003 and other pixels to a value of -49, the image automatically linearly adjusts all its output LUTs to best show the entire range of pixel values.

Clear the **Auto Set End Points** checkbox if you want to manually specify the maximum and minimum pixel values. For example, assume that you only want to see pixels with a value between 100 and 380. Enter the minimum and maximum values in the text box (in the format *LowLimit, HighLimit*), then click the **Set** button. The image will best display pixels between 100 and 380. Any pixels having a value of 100 or less will show up as black; any pixels having a value of 380 or more will show up as white.

Histogram Options

Click the **Add Hist** button to add a histogram of the attached image to the graph. This is useful in giving you an idea of how to best modify the selected output LUT. Select the **Use Active ROI** checkbox to create the histogram from the active ROI in the attached image. Clear the **Use Active ROI** checkbox to create the histogram from the entire image.

After you have added a histogram, click the **Equalize** button to perform a histogram equalization on the image (show the image in the best possible manner).

For example, to best see a specific portion of an image (defined by a ROI), you could do the following:

1. Create and activate an ROI describing the region.
2. Add a histogram to the graph by clicking **Add Hist** (make sure that the **Use Active ROI** checkbox is selected).
3. Equalize the image by clicking **Equalize**.

You can repeat this procedure as many times as desired with other active ROIs.

Add to Script

Click this button to add the current output LUT settings to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Display Tool

This example shows how to use the Display tool to increase the vertical contrast of the image Mixpoll, shown in [Figure 36](#). A histogram equalization is also performed on the image with respect to the active ROI A.

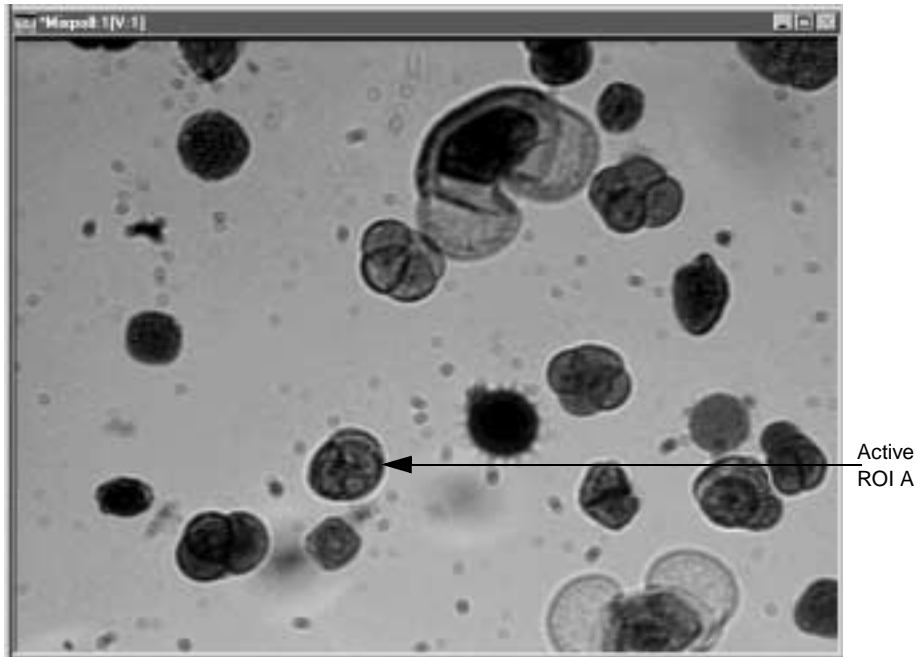
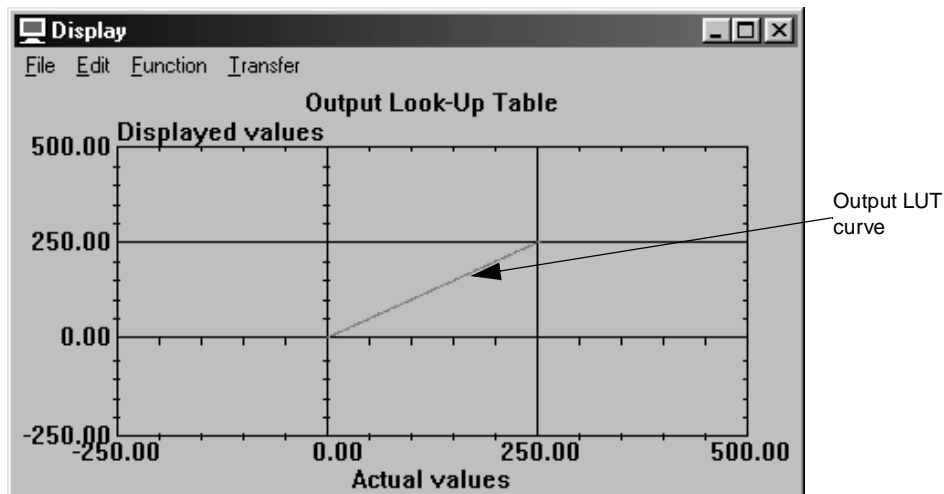


Figure 36: Display Tool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

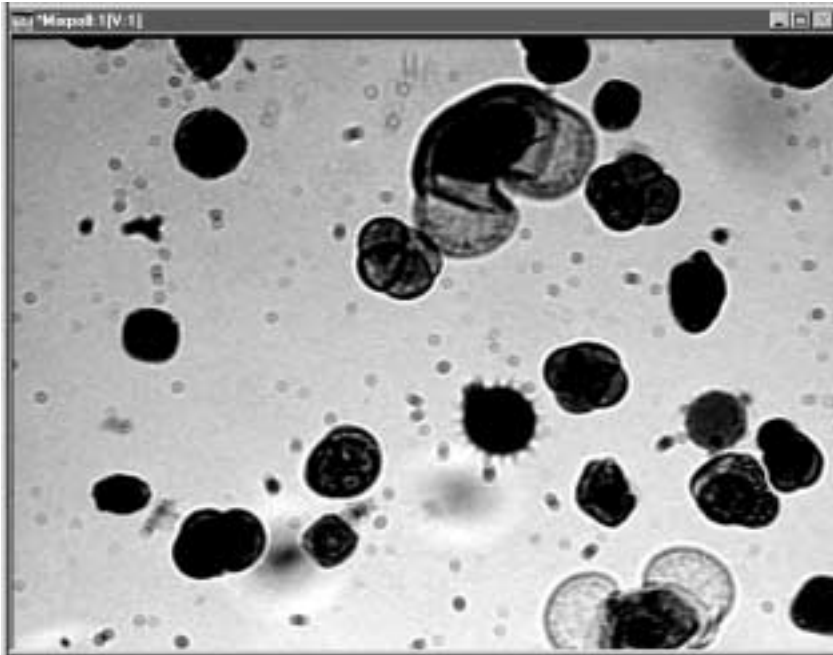
1. Activate the image Mixpoll by clicking in it with the left mouse button.
2. Activate ROI A (red) by clicking in it with the right mouse button. You can create ROI A by using the Blob Analysis tool or by drawing a freehand ROI around the particle.
3. Open a Display tool (if one is not already open). Note that both the output LUT display graph and the Display Options dialog box open.
4. Associate the image Mixpoll (now the active image) by either selecting **Gray (256)** from the **Output LUT Type** drop-down list or selecting the **Function | Associate Active Image** menu option.
5. Click the **Update: Move** radio button to see all changes to the output LUT and the image.

The output LUT display graph looks as follows:

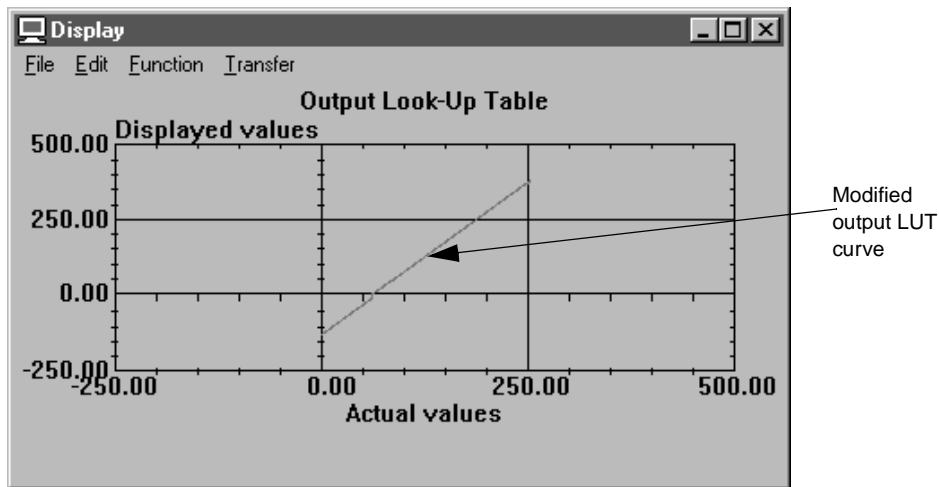


6. Click the **Vert Contrast** scrollbar and drag it to its right-most limit. While doing this, notice that the output LUT curve and the image are updated. You can also use the arrow buttons on each end of the scrollbar to make your adjustments.

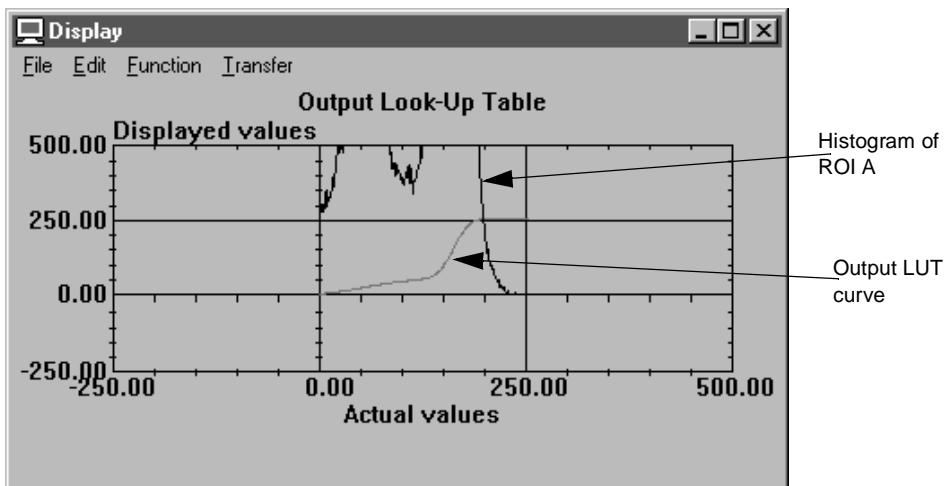
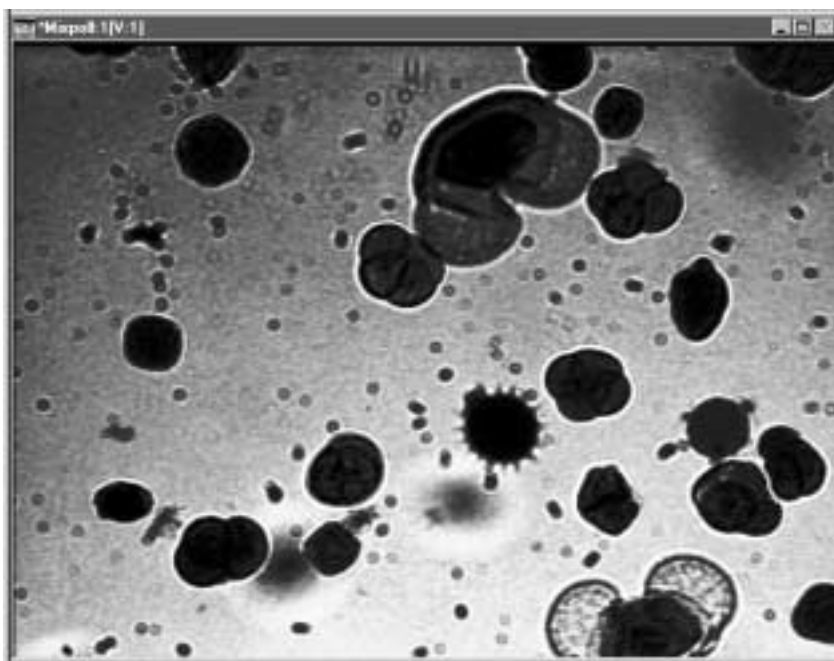
The image has been sharpened by increasing its contrast, as follows.



In addition, the output LUT display graph shows that you have modified the actual pixel values and the displayed pixel values, as follows.



7. Click **Restore Original LUT** to restore the original image's output LUT.
8. Select the **Use Active ROI** checkbox, then click **Add Hist** to add a histogram of ROI A to the Display tool's graph.
9. Click **Equalize** to show the image in the best possible manner.
The image Mixpoll and the output LUT display graph look as follows. Note that you can see inside the area outlined by the ROI with much more detail than before.



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Display tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Display tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, use all the options in the Display tool to set up the desired output LUT. When the image is displayed as desired, click **Add to Script**. The desired settings are recorded in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Display tool's output LUT is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. The **Add to Script** button changes to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Use all the options in the Display tool to set up the new output LUT, then click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new settings.



Using the Edge Finder Tool

Introduction.....	174
Description of Edge Finder Tool Options.....	178
Example of Using the Edge Finder Tool.....	186
Point & Click Script.....	190

Introduction

The Edge Finder tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to extract points, edges, or contours from a binary image.

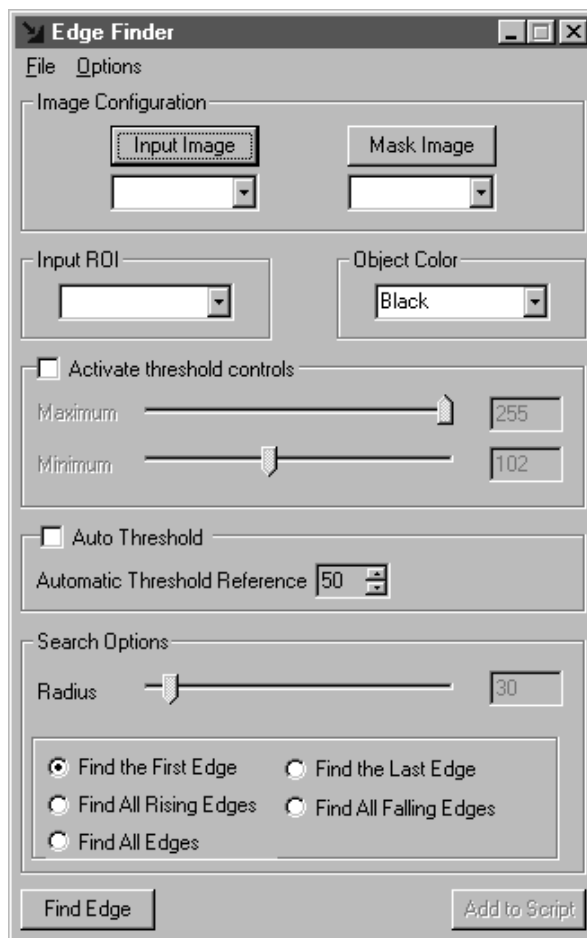


Figure 37: Edge FinderTool

You start by drawing one of the following:

- A line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI that goes through the desired point or edge.
- A rectangle ROI that encloses the desired contour.

From a user-drawn line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, the Edge Finder tool generates one or more point ROIs, freehand line ROIs, or freehand ROIs. From a user-drawn rectangle ROI, the Edge Finder tool generates a single freehand ROI.

Note: The Edge Finder tool can generate a freehand ROI faster from a line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI than from a rectangle ROI.

The tool finds edges that are within the object (black or white), at the transition from black to white or from white to black. [Figure 38](#) illustrates the differences between edges found for black objects and edges found for white objects. Note that for a rectangle ROI, the found edge is not directly on/under the ROI.

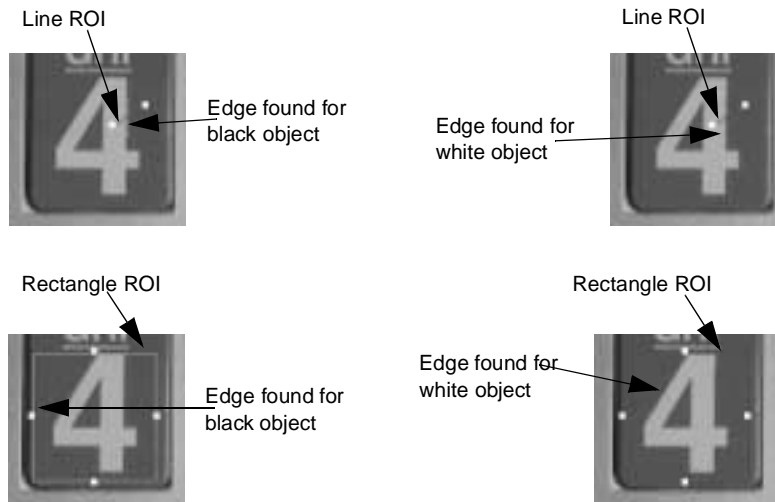



Figure 38: Found Edges

After you find an edge, you can use the generated ROI to perform measurement operations using the Measurement tool. For example, you can measure the area or perimeter of a generated freehand ROI or the x and y coordinates of a point ROI. For more information, refer to [Chapter 19, “Using the Measurement Tool.”](#)

To open an Edge Finder tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Edge Finder** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Edge Finder tool is fully compatible with all tools. The input image can be any image type. The mask image must be a binary image. The Edge Finder tool can create a binary mask image either by using built-in thresholding (see [page 182](#)) or by using automatic thresholding (see [page 183](#)). You can also create a binary image using the Threshold tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#) The input ROI can be a rectangle, line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI. Point ROIs are not supported.

You can have up to 100 Edge Finder tools open at the same time.

Description of Edge Finder Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Edge Finder tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

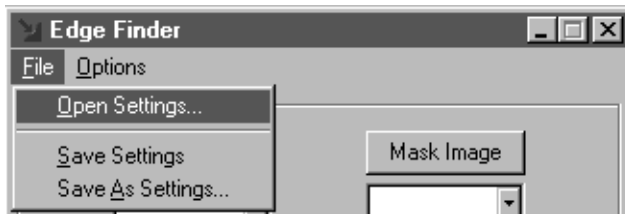


Figure 39: Edge Finder Tool - File Menu

Open Settings...

Select this option to restore Edge Finder tool settings that you previously saved to disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a file (the name must be followed by the extension .efs), the settings are loaded into the Edge Finder tool.

Save Settings

Select this option to save Edge Finder tool settings back to disk.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save Edge Finder tool settings to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter the file name with the extension .efs.

Note that if you save a settings file with the name default.efs, the file will automatically open each time you open an Edge Finder tool. You must save default.efs in the DT_EdgeFind directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Options Menu Options

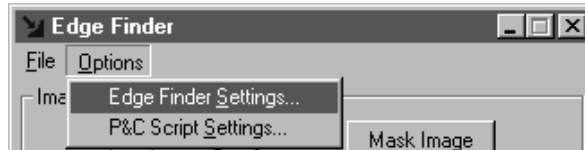
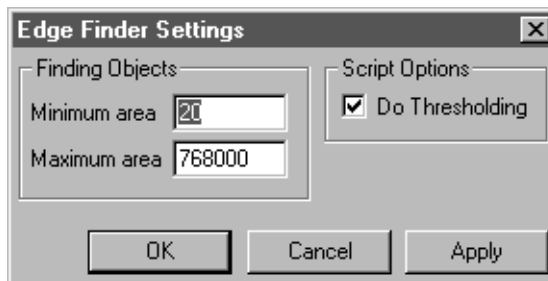


Figure 40: Edge Finder Tool - Options Menu

Edge Finder Settings...

Select this option to open the Edge Finder Settings dialog box. Note that the settings in this dialog box are applicable to rectangle user-drawn ROIs only.



In the **Finding Objects** frame, specify the size of objects for which you want to generate ROIs, in pixels. This is useful if you are forced to enclose more than one object in the user-drawn rectangle ROI.

If the total number of pixels in an object is fewer than the value specified in the **Minimum area** text box, the tool does not generate an ROI for the object. If the total number of pixels in an object is greater than the value specified in the **Maximum area** text box, the tool does not generate an ROI for the object. The values of **Minimum area** and **Maximum area** must be greater than or equal to 4 pixels.

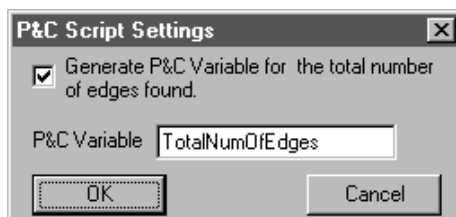
Select the **Do Thresholding** checkbox if you want to perform thresholding during point & click scripting. Clear this checkbox if you do not want to perform thresholding during point & click scripting. For more information about point & click scripting, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Note that if you can use the same mask image (the same threshold limits) for each **Find** operation you perform, you can improve performance by clearing this checkbox after the first operation. All subsequent operations use the mask image specified for the first operation.

When you are finished, click **Apply** to save the settings without closing the dialog box. Click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

P&C Script Settings...

Select this option to open the P&C Script Settings dialog box.



Select the checkbox if you want the Edge Finder tool to put the total number of edges found into the specified point & click scripting variable. By default, the name of the scripting variable is TotalNumOfEdges. You can change the name by entering a new name in the text box.

Main Dialog Box Options

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The input image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the Input Image display window drop-down list.

Mask Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the binary mask image. Use this button only if you created a binary mask image using the Threshold tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#) The mask image name is shown in the Mask Image display window. You can also select the mask image from the Mask Image display window drop-down list.

If you do not require the advanced features of the Threshold tool, you can let the Edge Finder tool threshold the input image and create a binary mask image using either built-in thresholding (see [page 182](#)) or automatic thresholding ([page 183](#)). After you perform the **Find Edge** operation, the mask image name (in the format *ImageName.msk:x*) is shown in the Mask Image display window and you can select the mask image from the Mask Image display window drop-down list.

To view a mask image that is created by the Edge Finder tool, use the Image Manager tool. If you double-click the name of the mask image in the list of images in memory, the tool places the mask image in the active viewport. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15, “Using the Image Manager Tool.”](#)

Input ROI

Select the ROI that you want to use to generate edges/points/contours. The drop-down list contains all line, rectangle, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, and freehand ROIs in your image.

Note that point ROIs are not supported.

Object Color

Select **Black** if you want to generate ROIs within the black pixels in the point/edge/contour of the user-drawn ROI in the binary mask image. Select **White** if you want to generate ROIs within the white pixels in the point/edge/contour of the user-drawn ROI in the binary mask image.

Note that if you adjusted the threshold limits, black pixels in the input image are displayed as magenta.

Activate Threshold Controls

By default, the Edge Finder tool uses built-in thresholding to threshold the input image and create a binary mask image using the threshold limits shown in the **Maximum** and **Minimum** text boxes. If you want to change the threshold limits, select the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox. Then, use the **Maximum** and **Minimum** slider controls to adjust the upper and lower limits. You can also enter the limits manually and use the arrow keys to fine-tune the values.

Note that when you adjust the threshold limits, the black pixels in the input image are displayed as magenta.

Note that you can perform either built-in thresholding or automatic thresholding. If you select the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox, the **Auto Threshold** checkbox is grayed out.

Auto Threshold

Select the **Auto Threshold** checkbox if you want to perform automatic thresholding. Clear the checkbox if you do not want to perform automatic thresholding.

If automatic thresholding is enabled, select a reference value from the **Automatic Threshold Reference** spin box. Assuming that the lower threshold value is 0, the reference value is the position (percentage) between the left-most peak in the associated histogram and the right-most peak in the associated histogram at which the upper threshold value occurs. By default, the reference value is 50%.

If automatic thresholding is enabled, you can select the **Invert Output** checkbox to invert the output binary image. The foreground pixels are output as background pixels and the background pixels are output as foreground pixels.

Note that automatic thresholding is not appropriate for all images. It is intended for images whose histogram has a bimodal distribution. If automatic thresholding does not produce the results you expect, try built-in thresholding (see [page 182](#)), or use the Threshold tool to create a binary image. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29](#), “Using the Threshold Tool.”

Note that you can perform either automatic thresholding or built-in thresholding. If you select the **Auto Threshold** checkbox, the **Activate Thresholding Controls** checkbox is grayed out.

Search Options

The **Search Options** are available for user-drawn line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, and freehand ROIs only.

Use the **Radius** slider control to specify the number of pixels on either side of the user-drawn ROI to include in the generated ROIs. You can also enter the number of pixels manually or use the arrow keys on your keyboard to fine-tune the value.

The pixels are added to each side of the user-drawn ROI along the edge of the object. For example, if you enter a value of 5, each generated ROI is a freehand line along the edge of the object that is 11 pixels long $((2 \times \text{Search Radius}) + 1)$.

If **Radius** is equal to 0, the tool generates point ROIs. If **Radius** is not equal to 0, but is less than the total number of pixels in the edge of the object, the tool generates freehand line ROIs. If **Radius** is greater than the total number of pixels in the edge of the object, the tool generates freehand ROIs.

Click one of the following radio buttons to specify how many edges to find:

- **Find the First Edge** – The tool finds the leftmost edge only.
- **Find the Last Edge** – The tool finds the rightmost edge only.
- **Find All Rising Edges** – The tool finds rising edges only (transitions from white to black).
- **Find All Falling Edges** – The tool finds falling edges only (transitions from black to white).
- **Find All Edges** – The tool finds all edges.

Find Edge

When all the settings are correct, click this button to generate ROIs for the active user-drawn ROI. For a user-drawn line, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, the tool generates one or more point, freehand line, or freehand ROIs. For a user-drawn rectangle ROI, the tool generates a single freehand ROI. A generated ROI has the same name as the user-drawn ROI with the prefix EF. added. If the tool generated multiple edges, the suffix *n_nn* is also added, where *n* represents the number of the user-drawn ROI and *nn* represents the number of the generated ROI. For example, if you generate four ROIs from the line ROI named Line.1, the generated ROIs are named EF.Line.1_0, EF.Line.1_1, EF.Line.1_2, and EF.Line.1_3.

Note that the Edge Finder tool finds edges that are within the object (black or white), at the transition from black to white or from white to black. For a rectangle ROI, the found edge is not directly on/under the ROI. For more information, refer to [Figure 38](#) on [page 176](#).

If the tool does not return the results that you expect, adjust the options, then click **Find Edge** again.

Add to Script

After you generate the ROI, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

Example of Using the Edge Finder Tool

This example shows how to generate freehand line ROIs along the outside edges of two objects in the image Lines, shown in [Figure 41](#).

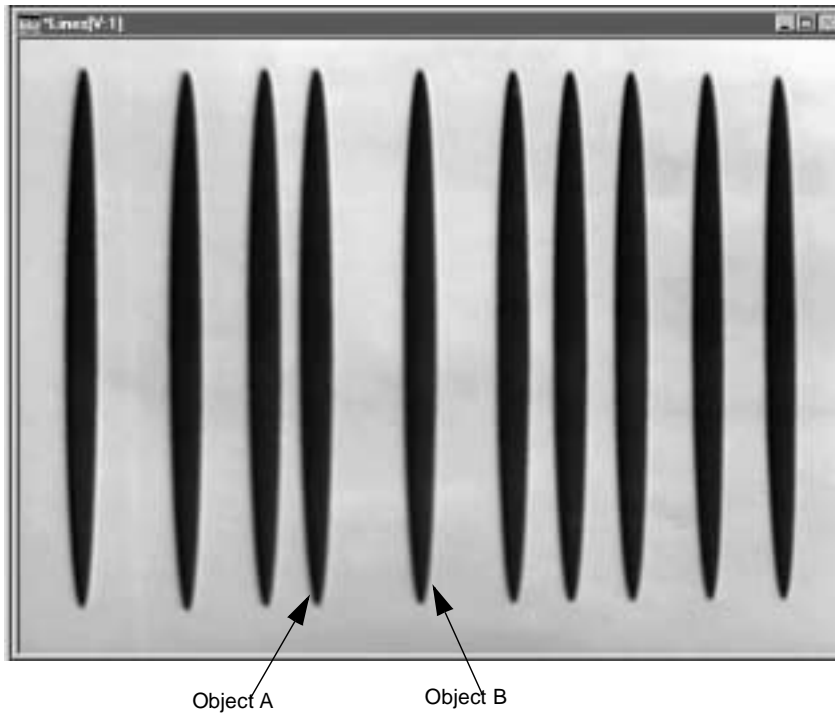
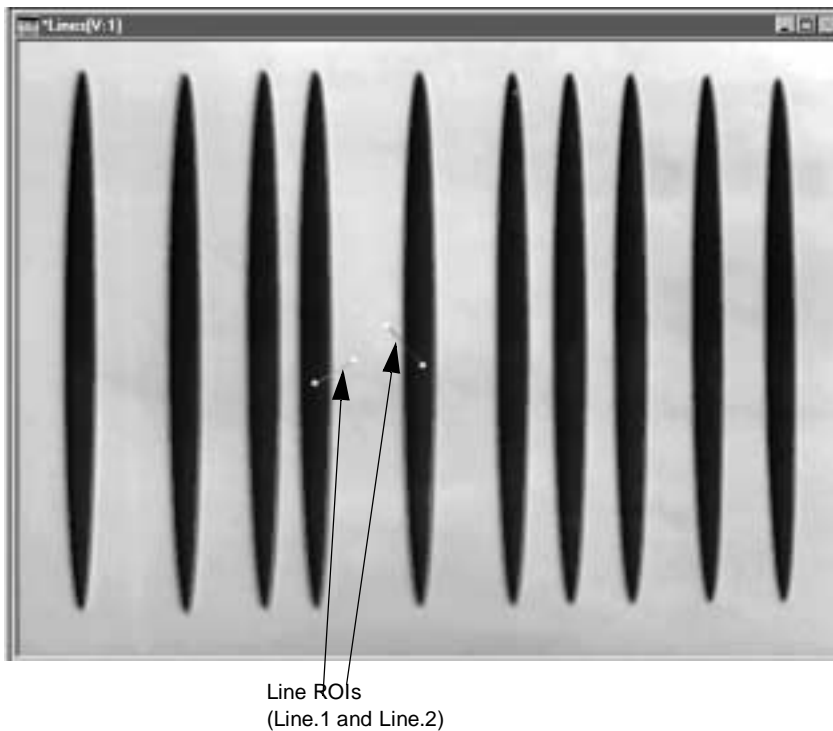


Figure 41: Edge FinderTool Example Image

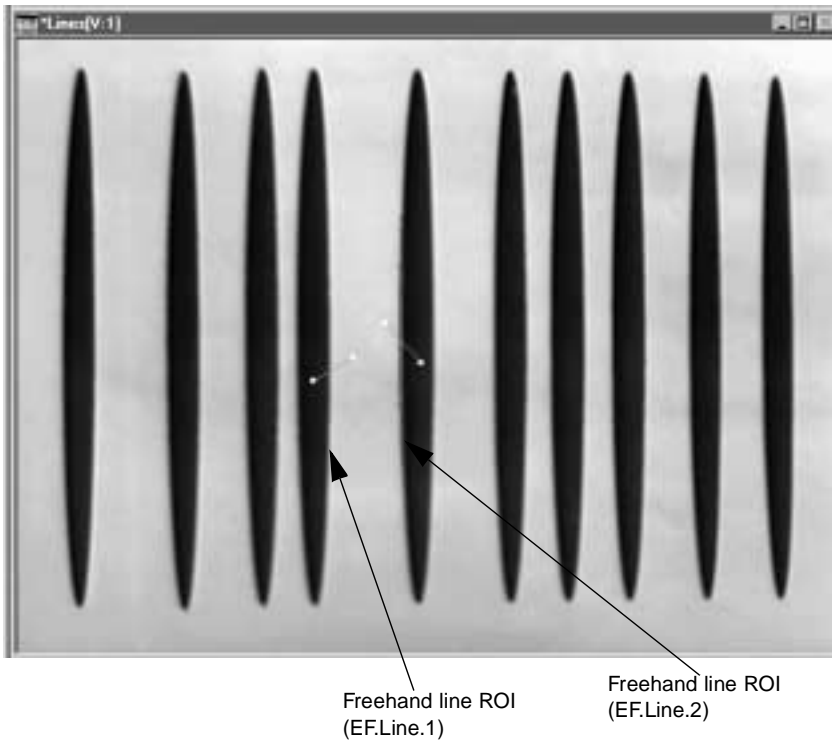
The operation is as follows:

1. Open the image Lines.
2. Open an Edge Finder tool (if one is not already open).
3. Click in the viewport on the image Lines with the left mouse button. Lines is now the active viewport and is denoted with an asterisk, as show in [Figure 41](#). Click **Input Image** to load Lines as the input image.
4. Select the **Activate threshold controls** checkbox and set the **Maximum** value to 120 and the **Minimum** value to 50. This causes the transition from black (magenta) to white to occur on the outside edges of the objects. Note that you can also highlight the transition by using automatic thresholding or by creating a binary image with the Threshold tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 29, “Using the Threshold Tool.”](#)
5. Draw one line ROI through the edge of Object A and another line ROI through the edge of Object B.
*The image looks as follows. The names of the ROIs are listed in the **Input ROI** drop-down list (Line.1 and Line.2).*



6. Select **White** from the **Object Color** drop-down list to generate the edges within the white pixels.
7. Enter **100** in the **Radius** text box to generate a freehand line ROI that is 201 pixels long.
8. Select the **Find the Last Edge** radio button.
9. Activate (red) Line.1 by clicking it with the right mouse button, then click **Find Edge** to extract the outside edge and generate a freehand line ROI named EF.Line.1. Note that you can also activate the line ROI by selecting it from the **Input ROI** drop-down list or by using the <Tab> key.

10. Select the **Find the First Edge** radio button.
11. Activate (red) Line.2 by clicking it with the right mouse button, then click **Find Edge** to extract the outside edge and generate a freehand line ROI named EF.Line.2. Note that you can also activate the line ROI by selecting it from the **Input ROI** drop-down list or by using the <Tab> key.
The image looks as follows.



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Edge Finder tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add an Edge Finder tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Edge Finder tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input image and search radius. If you want your thresholding operations to be included in the point & click script, select the **Do Thresholding** checkbox in the Edge Finder Settings dialog box. Click **Find Edge** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Note that any input ROIs created for use by the Edge Finder tool are also stored in the point & click script.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Edge Finder tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input image and search radius. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.

Note that any ROIs required by the Edge Finder tool are recreated, if necessary.




Using the Export Tool

Introduction.....	192
Description of Export Tool Options.....	193
Example of Using the Export Tool.....	201
Point & Click Script	204

Introduction

Note: The Export tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.

The Export tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to transfer variables and images from GLI/2 to either the DTiX variable server, the DTiX image server, a text file, or a Microsoft Excel worksheet. The DTiX servers hold data (variables and images) and provide access to that data to a client application, such as a Visual Basic program or another instance of GLI/2. The client application accesses the data by using the DTImages or DTVariables ActiveX control. For more information, refer to the online help included with the DTImages/DTVariables ActiveX control.

To open an Export tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Export** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Export tool is compatible with all tools and image types. Only line and rectangle ROIs are supported.

You can have up to 100 Export tools open at the same time.

Description of Export Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Export tool dialog box.

11

Variables Tab Options

The Variables tab allows you to transfer variables from GLI/2 to either the DTiX variable server, a text file, or a Microsoft Excel worksheet.

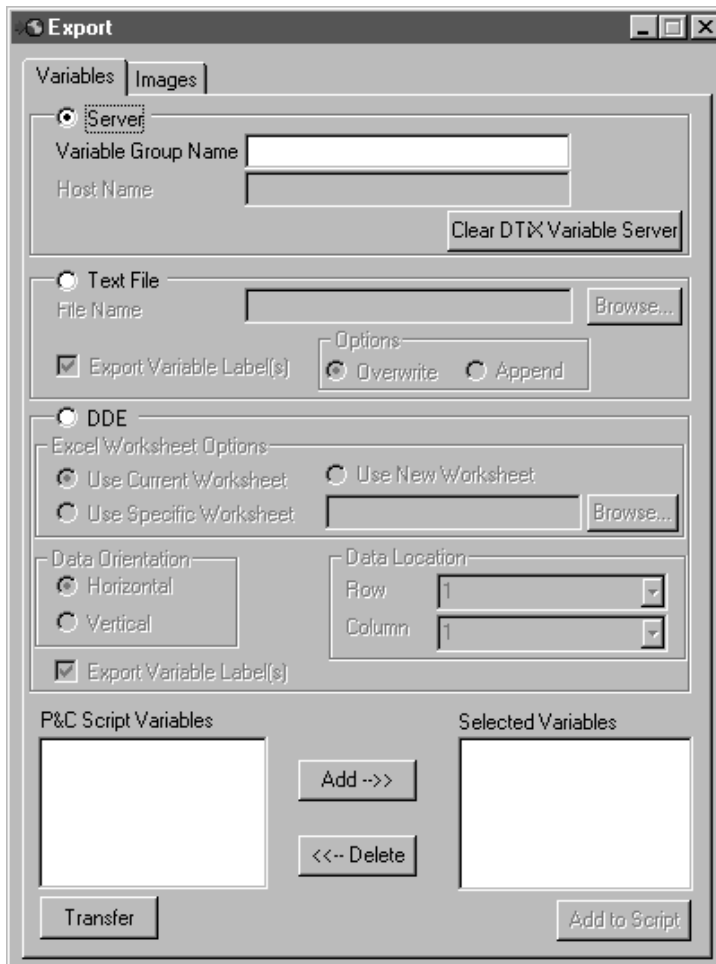


Figure 42: Export Tool - Variable Tab

Server

Click the **Server** radio button if you want to transfer the variables in the **Selected Variables** window to the DTiX variable server.

Enter a name in the **Variable Group Name** text box that will identify the variables to the client application. Note that you must enter a variable group name even if you are exporting a single variable.

If the DTiX variable server is located on a different computer system, enter the system name in the **Host Name** text box. Note that this option is not supported at the present time. You can only export data to the DTiX variable server on your local system.

To remove all the variables on the DTiX variable server, click **Clear DTiX Variable Server**.

Text File

Click the **Text File** radio button if you want to transfer the variables in the **Selected Variables** window to a text file (*.txt). Enter the complete path to the file in the **File Name** text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file. If you enter the name of a file that does not exist, the Export tool automatically creates the file for you either in the specified directory or, if no directory is specified, in the current directory.

Click either the **Overwrite** or the **Append** radio button to specify what you want to do if a file with the specified name already exists.

Select the **Export Variable Label(s)** checkbox if you want to transfer the variable names along with the variable values. Clear the **Export Variable Label(s)** checkbox if you want to transfer only the variable values.

DDE

Click the **DDE** radio button if you want to transfer the variables in the **Selected Variables** window to an Excel worksheet.

Click the appropriate **Excel Worksheet Options** radio button to specify the Excel worksheet that you want to use; you can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. If you select **Use Current Worksheet**, the Export tool uses the open .xls file; if no .xls file is open, the tool automatically creates a new .xls file. If you select **Use New Worksheet**, the tool automatically creates a new .xls file. If you select **Use Specific Worksheet**, the specified .xls file must already exist; the tool does not create a file for you.

Click the appropriate **Data Orientation** radio button to specify whether you want to store the data horizontally or vertically.

For the **Data Location** option, select the **Row** and **Column** in the specified worksheet at which to place the data. You can enter the number of a specific row/column in the text box or select one of the number variables from the drop-down list. Selecting a number variable is useful if you want to append data to the end of the worksheet, but you are not sure of the exact location. For example, if you want to export variable data from the Blob Analysis tool for each of the found blobs, you can select the #BlobsFoundTotal variable to store new data in the appropriate location.

Select the **Export Variable Label(s)** checkbox if you want to transfer the variable names along with the variable values. Clear the **Export Variable Label(s)** checkbox if you want to transfer only the variable values.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

P&C Script Variables

The **P&C Script Variables** window contains a list of all the variables in your point & click script. For each variable that you want to transfer, click on the variable to select (highlight) it, then click **Add** to add the selected variable to the **Selected Variables** list.

To remove a variable from the **Selected Variables** list, select (highlight) the variable, then click **Delete**.

Transfer

When all the settings are correct, click this button to export the variables in the **Selected Variables** list to the specified location.

Add to Script

After you transfer the variables, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Images Tab Options

The Images tab allows you to transfer the values of the pixels in an image from GLI/2 to either the DTiX image server or a Microsoft Excel worksheet.

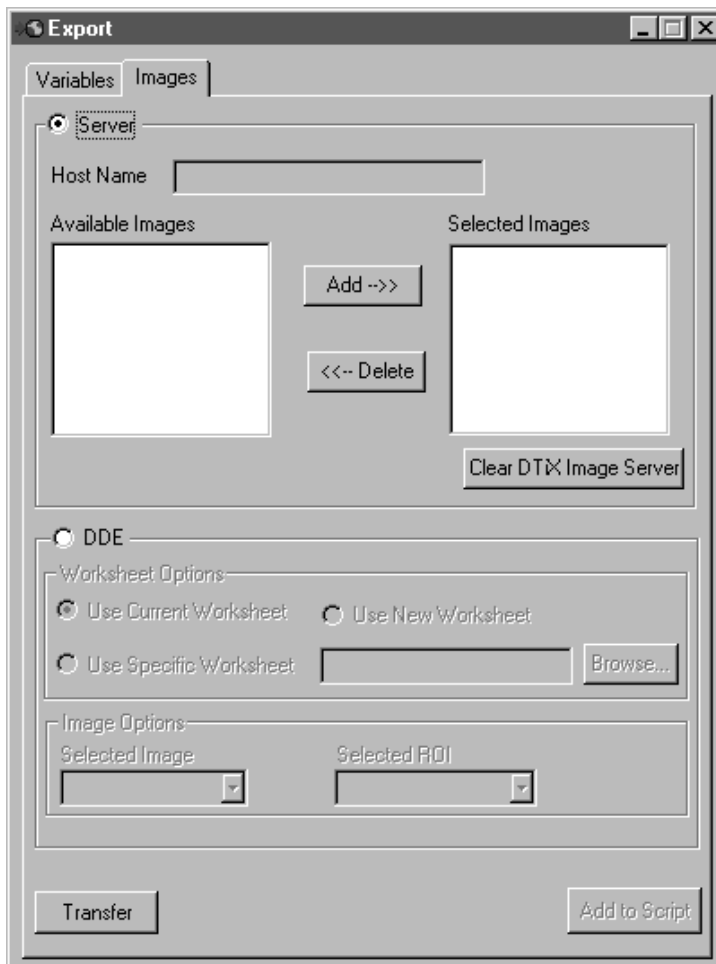


Figure 43: Export Tool - Images Tab

Server

Click the **Server** radio button if you want to transfer the pixel values of the images in the **Selected Images** window to the DTiX image server.

If the DTiX image server is located on a different computer system, enter the system name in the **Host Name** text box. Note that this option is not supported at the present time. You can only export images to the DTiX image server on your local system.

The **Available Images** window contains a list of all the images that you opened or loaded into GLI/2. For each image whose pixel values you want to transfer, click on the image to select (highlight) it, then click **Add** to add the selected image to the **Selected Images** list.

To remove an image from the **Selected Images** list, select (highlight) the image, then click **Delete**.

To remove all the images on the DTiX image server, click **Clear DTiX Image Server**.

DDE

Click the **DDE** radio button if you want to transfer the pixel values of the **Selected Image** to an Excel worksheet.

Click the appropriate **Worksheet Options** radio button to specify the Excel worksheet that you want to use; you can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. If you select **Use Current Worksheet**, the Export tool uses the open .xls file; if no .xls file is open, the tool automatically creates a new .xls file. If you select **Use New Worksheet**, the tool automatically creates a new .xls file. If you select **Use Specific Worksheet**, the specified .xls file must already exist; the tool does not create a file for you. Note that the Export tool always overwrites any data in an existing worksheet; excess entries are not deleted.

From the **Selected Image** drop-down list, select the image whose pixel values you want to transfer. If you want to transfer the pixel values of only a portion of the specified image, select the line or rectangle ROI whose pixel values you want to transfer from the **Selected ROI** drop-down list. (Note that only line and rectangle ROIs are supported at the present time.) If you do not select an ROI, the pixel values of the entire image are transferred.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Transfer

When all the settings are correct, click this button to transfer the pixel values of the **Selected Image(s)/Selected ROI** to the specified location.

For the DTiX image server, the Export tool transfers information about the ROIs associated with the images in addition to the values of all the pixels in the image.

For an Excel worksheet, the Export tool transfers pixel values only. If you specified a line ROI, only the pixel values of locations along the line ROI are transferred; if you specified a rectangle ROI, only pixel values within the rectangle ROI are transferred. Data is always stored vertically, starting at Row 1, Column 1. If the width of your image is greater than the number of columns in your Excel worksheet, the tool transfers the first 225 columns, followed by the next 225 columns, and so on.

Add to Script

After you transfer the images, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

Example of Using the Export Tool

This example shows how to transfer the pixel values of a line ROI in the image Lines, shown in [Figure 44](#), to an Excel worksheet for further analysis.

11

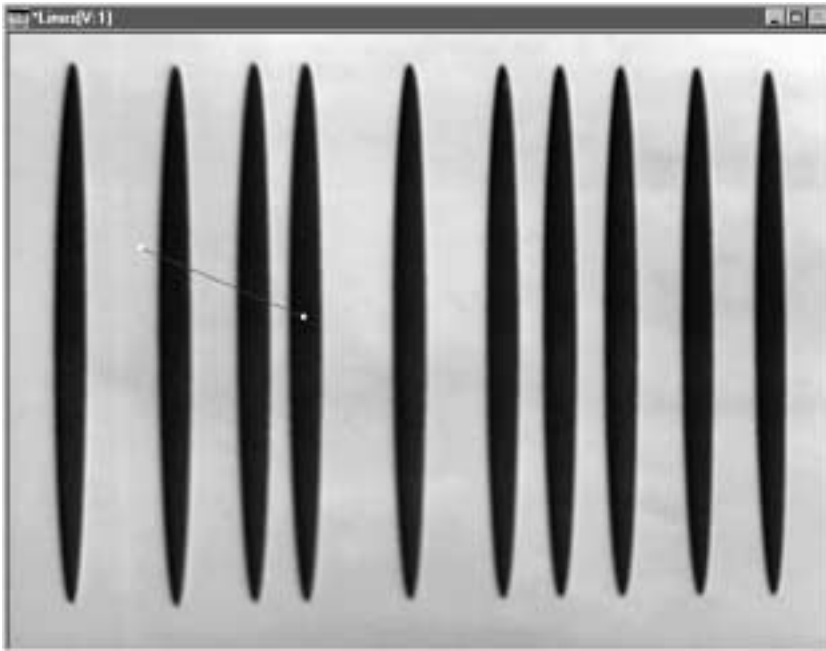
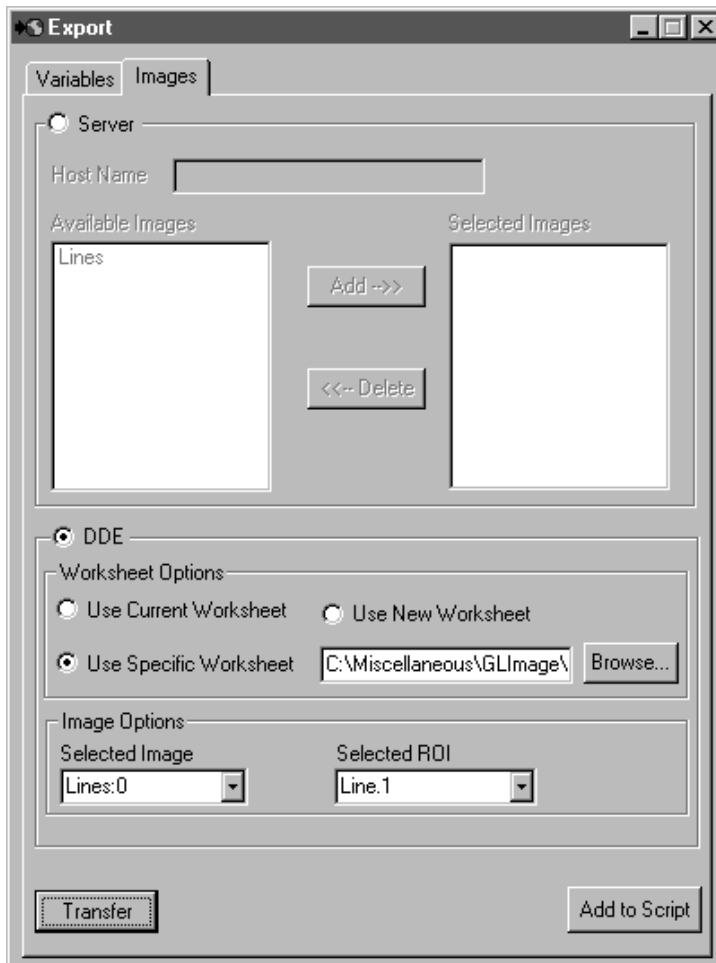


Figure 44: Export Tool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

1. Open Microsoft Excel, then open and save an empty Excel worksheet. For this example, the worksheet (Test1.xls) is located in C:\Miscellaneous\GLImage.
2. In GLI/2, open the image Lines into a viewport, then draw a line ROI, as shown in [Figure 44](#).
3. Open an Export tool (if one is not already open).
4. On the Images tab, click **DDE**.
5. Click **Use Specific Worksheet**, then browse to the empty Excel worksheet that you saved.
6. Select the image Lines from the **Selected Image** drop-down list.
7. Select the line ROI from the **Selected ROI** drop-down list.
The Export tool appears as follows.



8. Click **Transfer**.
9. Open the Excel worksheet.
The pixel values for the line ROI are stored vertically, starting at Row 1, Column 1.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Export tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Export tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Export tool to perform the desired function. This includes the location that you want to transfer the variables/images to and the variables/images that you want to transfer. Click **Transfer** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Export tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the location that you want to transfer the variables/images to and the variables/images that you want to transfer. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the File Manager Tool

Introduction.....	206
Description of File Manager Tool Options	208
Example of Using the File Manager Tool	212
Point & Click Script	214

Introduction

The File Manager tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to open many popular file formats. It also lets you open a mixture of color and grayscale images of different image types without being concerned with file conversion.

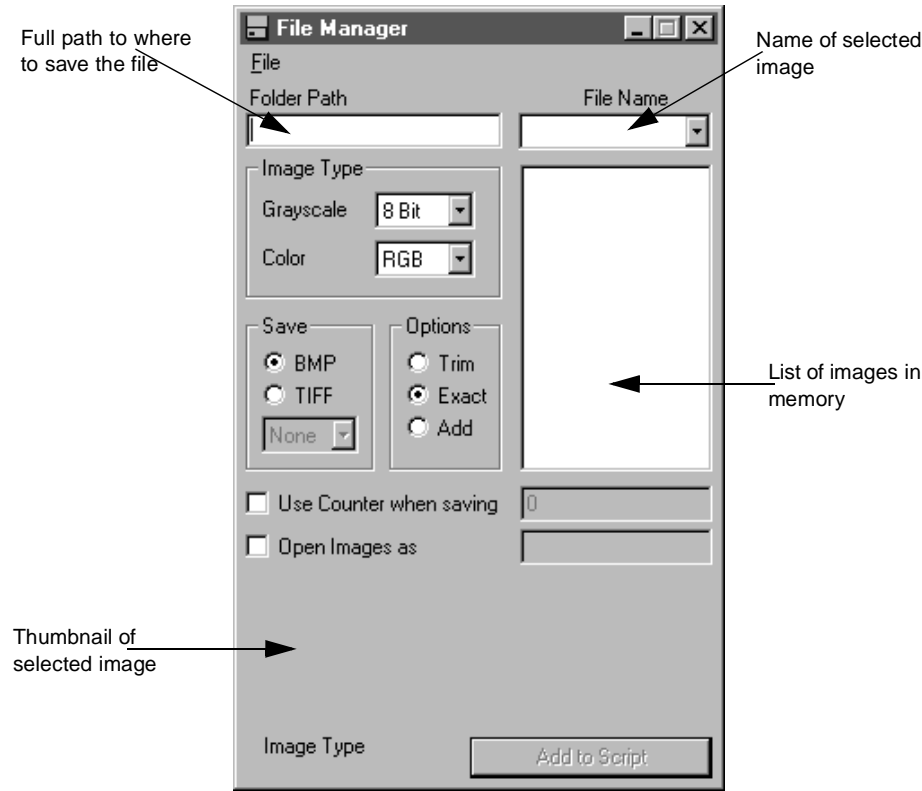


Figure 45: File Manager Tool


Table 4 lists the file formats supported by the File Manager tool.

Table 4: Supported File Types

CMU WM Raster	Faces Project	FBM
G3 FAX	GEM Bit	JPEG
MacPaint	McIDAS areafile	PC Paintbrush (PCX)
Photo CD	Portable Bit Map (PBM, PGM, PPM)	Sun Raster
Targa	TIFF	Utah RLE
Windows and OS/2 BMP	X Bitmap	X Pixmap
X Window Dump		

12

The File Manager tool can save an image in either a Windows BMP or a TIFF file format.

To open a File Manager tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **File Manager** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The File Manager tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 File Manager tools open at the same time.

Description of File Manager Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the File Manager tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

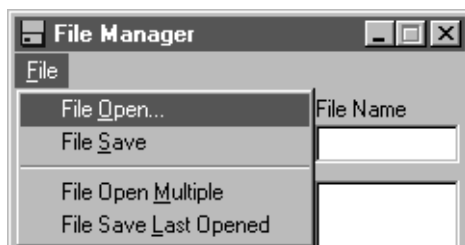


Figure 46: File Manager Tool - File Menu

File Open...

Select this option to open one image at a time. Once an image is opened successfully, the image is included in the list of images in memory and in the Image Manager tool. If an image cannot be loaded, the system beeps. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15](#), “Using the Image Manager Tool.”

File Save

Select this option to save all images highlighted in the list of images in memory to the directory path shown in **Folder Path**. The files are saved according to the selected **Save** radio button.

File Open Multiple

This option is valid only for point & click scripting. For more information, refer to [page 215](#).

File Save Last Opened

This option is valid only for point & click scripting. For more information, refer to [page 215](#).

Dialog Box Options

12

Folder Path

Enter the full directory path name of the location where you want your files to be saved. The full directory path name must end in a backslash (\). An example of a correct full directory path name would be `C:\GLI\IMAGES\COLOR\`.

File Name

If you want to save a single image to disk, highlight the image name in the list of images in memory. The name of the image is displayed in the **File Name** text box. If you want to save an image to disk with a different name, you can enter the new name in the text box.

Image Type

If you are using a grayscale image, select the type of image you want to open from the **Grayscale** drop-down list (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, floating-point).

If you are using a color image, select the type of image you want to open from the **Color** drop-down list (RGB, HSL).

The default image type is 8-bit grayscale images.

Save

Click the appropriate radio button to specify how you want to save the images highlighted in the list of images in memory. If you click **BMP**, all selected files are saved as standard Windows bitmap files. If you click **TIFF**, all selected files are saved as standard TIFF files. If you click **TIFF**, you can also select the TIFF compression method (**None**, **Auto**, **Encoded**).

These options apply to all images regardless of image type. You cannot save binary, 16-bit, 32-bit, or floating-point grayscale images as TIFF. If you try to save these types of images as a TIFF file, the system beeps.

Options

Due to the way that GLI/2 accesses images in memory, the width of GLI/2 images must be divisible by 4 pixels. Click one of the following radio buttons to specify what the tool should do if the image you are opening is not divisible by 4:

- **Trim** – Trim the width of the image so that the width is divisible by 4. For example, if the image is 457 pixels wide, the new width of the image is 456. The extra pixels are discarded. The height of the image is not affected.
- **Exact** – Do not open the image if the width of the image is not divisible by 4.
- **Add** – Add to the width of the image so that the width is divisible by 4. For example, if the image is 457 pixels wide, the new width of the image is 460. The extra pixels added to the width have a value of 0. The height of the image is not affected.

List of Images in Memory

This field lists all images in memory. Select (highlight) all images in the list that you want to save to disk. You can select multiple images and they can be of different types (grayscale and color). The images are saved according to the selected **Save** radio button and the path specified in **Folder Path**.

Use Counter When Saving

Select this checkbox if you want the tool to append a counter number when saving a selected file. This is used primarily for point & click scripting to track different images saved with the same name. The counter is sequential.

Open Images As

Select this checkbox if you want to specify a name for an image that you are opening from disk. Specify the image name in the text box. This is used primarily for point & click scripting.

Thumbnail of Selected Image

This field displays a thumbnail of the image highlighted in the list of images in memory. If you left-click on the thumbnail image, the image is displayed in the active viewport.

Add to Script

After you open or save a file (or files), click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the File Manager Tool

This example shows how to use the File Manager tool.

Quick Example

1. Open a group of unrelated images using a single drag-and-drop operation from Windows Explorer. The files can be a mixture of color and grayscale and can be in any file format supported by the File Manager tool. For a list of supported formats, refer to [page 207](#). The open files are displayed in a viewport.
2. Save the group of unrelated images using a single save operation to the directory `c:\temp\images\`.

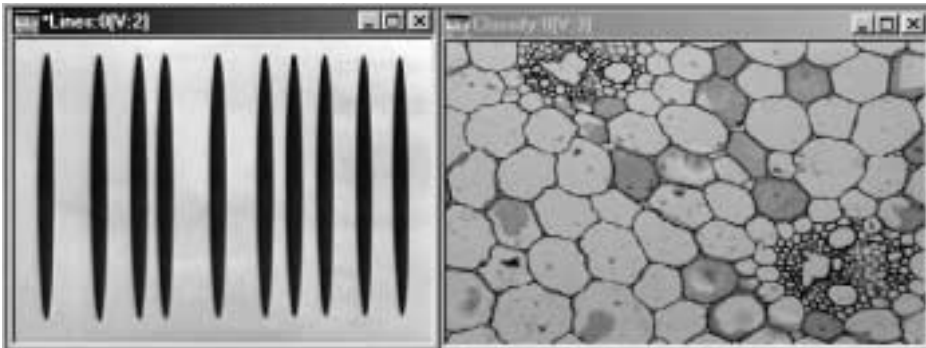
Step-by-Step Example

1. Open a File Manager tool (if one is not already open).
2. Select a group of images in Windows Explorer.
3. Drag the selected files to the File Manager tool and drop them anywhere. Assuming that the **8 Bit Grayscale** radio button is selected, all grayscale images are opened as 8-bit grayscale images.

Notice that the File Manager tool opens all the files regardless of file type or file format and places the path of the images in **Folder Path**. In addition, if you click on an image in the list, the image is displayed in the thumbnail.

4. To place one of the opened images in a viewport, you must open a Image Manager tool. The Image Manager tool contains the same images in its list of memory images as the images shown in the File Manager tool. Double-click an image to place it in the active viewport. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15](#), “Using the Image Manager Tool.”

Assuming that you opened the Lines image and the Classify image, the viewports look as follows:



5. In the File Manager tool, save all the images as compressed TIFF files in the directory `C:\TEMP\IMAGES` by placing the path name in **Folder Path** and selecting all the images in the list.
6. Save the selected files by selecting the **File | File Save** menu option. The images are saved in the directory `C:\TEMP\IMAGES\` as compressed TIFF files.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the File Manager tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

The File Manager tool can perform point & click scripting in one of the following modes of operation:

- **Mode 1: Open and/or Save a Single File** – In this mode, each File Manager tool point & click script item either opens a single file from disk or saves a single image to disk. In this mode, you can have multiple point & click script items in the script at the same time.
- **Mode 2: Open and/or Save Multiple Files** – In this mode, a single File Manager tool point & click script item opens multiple files and another single File Manager tool point & click script item saves each of these opened files back to disk. Each time through the script, the first File Manager tool script item opens one of the files and gives the file a specific image name. Then, other script items (such as a Filter tool script item) can process this image using its specific image name. Later in the script, the second File Manager tool script item saves this processed image back to disk. The data can be saved in any directory (folder). When all the files have been opened, the multiple file save script item fails and this ends the script.

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the File Manager tool's functionality (Mode 1 or Mode 2) to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open.

Adding a Mode 1 File Manager Tool Script Item

To add a file open or file save script item to the script, perform the desired operation. When performing a file open, it is recommended that you select the **Open Images As** checkbox and specify an image name in the text box. This ensures that you know the name of the image once it is opened. You can specify this name in the script items for other tools to process this specific image. Using this mode, you can change the file that is opened without having to change all the other script items that process this image. After you perform the desired action, click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

You can have any number of file open and file save script items in a script and they can be in any order you want.

Adding a Mode 2 File Manager Tool Script Item

To add a multiple file open script item to the script, you must select the **Open Images As** checkbox and specify an image name in the text box. You must also specify a valid path in **Folder Path** and a valid file name in **File Name**. You can use any legal wildcard in the file name (such as *.BMP to open all the BMP files in a given directory). When all the options are set, select **File | File Multiple Open**, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool. Note that the script item is recorded, but it is not performed until the script is run.

After you finish processing the opened images using other tools in the script, you can add the File Manager tool script item that saves the processed file back to disk (if you want to save the processed image). To do so, select **File | File Save Last Opened**, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool. The script item saves the processed image back to disk in the specified directory with the same name it had when it was opened.

You can save the image to a different directory by entering a different directory path in **Folder Path** before selecting **File | File Save Last Opened**. Make sure that you specify the file type so that the correct file extension is used in the file name. You can have only one multiple file open/save combination in a script at one time, and the open script item should be placed before the save script item in the script.

Note: When recording the script, you do not have to perform the script items for the other tools before recording the multiple save script item. You can first record the multiple open and multiple save script items and then record the other tools. Later, you can use drag-and-drop to rearrange the script items as required.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the File Manager tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Filter Tool

Introduction.....	218
Description of Filter Tool Options	220
Example of Using the Filter Tool	227
Point & Click Script	230

Introduction

The Filter tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to apply a filter (perform a convolution) on a given image.

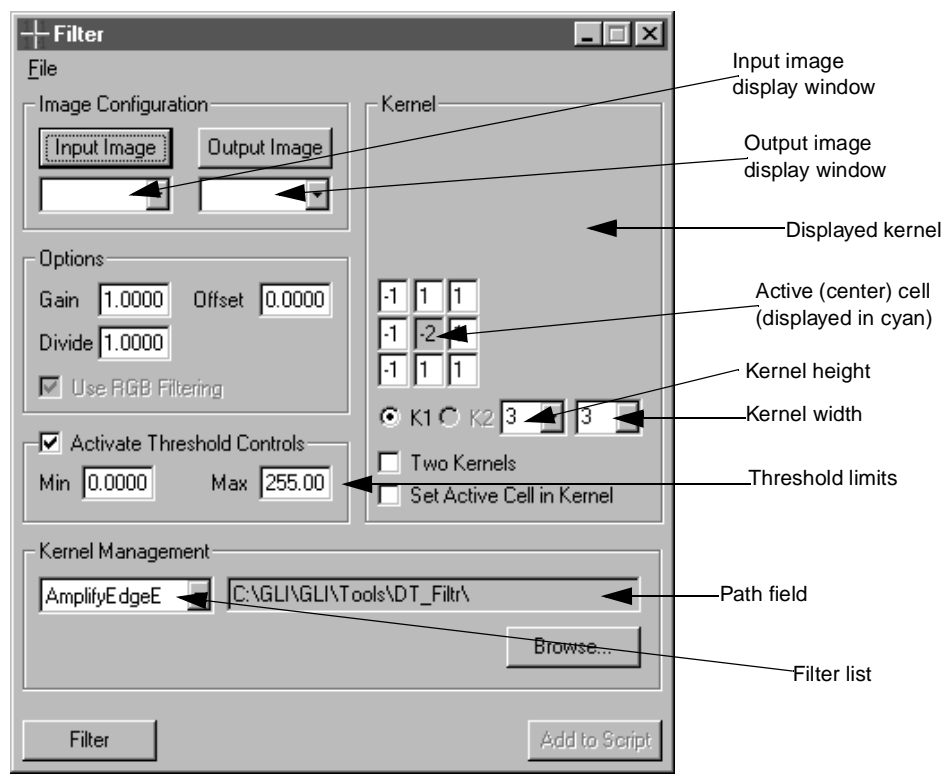



Figure 47: Filter Tool

The Filter tool performs filtering on a specified input image and places the result in an output image. It performs filtering by running a single-kernel or dual-kernel convolution. A set of default filters is provided with the Filter tool. You can also create your own custom filter, if desired. The tool allows you to select the active cell (usually the center cell).

To open a Filter tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Filter** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Filter tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Filter tools open at the same time.

Description of Filter Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Filter tool dialog box.

File Menu Options



Figure 48: FilterTool - File Menu

Save Kernel

Select this option to save the filter currently selected in the filter list back to disk. The kernel information is saved in a .ker file; the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding information is saved in a .flt file with the same name.

This option is useful if you want to modify an existing filter.

It is recommended that you do not modify the default filters included in the GLI/2 package since these filters represent industry standards. If you want to customize one of the default filters, use the **Save Kernel As** option to save the filter with a different name.

Save Kernel As...

Select this option to save the filter currently selected in the filter list to disk with a different name. A Save Kernel As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension .ker. The kernel information is saved in the .ker file; the gain, offset, divide, and thresholding information is saved in a .flt file with the same name.

If you save a filter to a new directory, the new directory is displayed in the path field and the filters located in the new directory are displayed in the filter list.

Dialog Box Options

13

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the **Input Image** display window. You can also select the input image from the input image display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Filter tool automatically creates an output image for you (with the name **Output**). Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Gain and Offset Options

Enter the **Gain** and **Offset** values that you want to use in the calculation. The gain and offset are calculated immediately after performing the convolution operation.

If desired, you can enter the value that you want to **Divide** the convolution by. For example, with the mean filter, you must divide the output by the number of pixels in the kernel. Instead of entering 1/9 (0.1111) for the gain, you can enter the value to divide the convolution by in the **Divide** text box.

The entire calculation is as follows:

$$\text{Output pixel} = \text{Gain} * (\text{convolution of input area}) / \text{Divide} + \text{Offset}$$

Use RGB Filtering/Use HSL Filtering

Select this checkbox if you want the Filter tool to filter all three color planes (red, green and blue) of a 24-bit RGB color image or all three color settings of a 24-bit HSL color image.

Clear this checkbox if you want the Filter tool to filter only the color plane/setting that is enabled in the Color Plane tool. This allows you to filter each color plane/setting independently. For example, to filter only the red color plane of an image, open a Color Plane tool, select the red plane, and then perform the filtering. For more information, refer to [Chapter 7](#), “Using the Color Plane Tool.”

Active Threshold Controls

Select this checkbox if you want to threshold the value of the output pixel to specific threshold limits. Enter the appropriate threshold limits in the **Min** and **Max** text boxes. This calculation is performed after the **Gain**, **Offset**, and **Divide** are applied.

Displayed Kernel Area

A kernel for the current filter is displayed in this area. By default, only one kernel (**K1**) is displayed. If your filter uses two kernels, select the **Two Kernels** checkbox, then click the appropriate radio button to specify whether you want to display the first kernel (**K1**) or the second kernel (**K2**). Note that all filters contain two kernels; however, the second kernel is used only if **Two Kernels** is selected.

The active cell is the cell displayed in cyan (light blue). It is usually the center cell, and it is the cell in which the convolution output is placed. Note that the convolution is performed with respect to the active cell; it is not always performed with respect to the center cell.

If desired, you can create a custom filter in the displayed kernel area. If you want to use two kernels in the convolution, select the **Two Kernels** checkbox. For each kernel, select the height (the number of rows in the kernel) from the kernel height drop-down list and the width (the number of columns in the kernel) from the kernel width drop-down list. Note that if you are creating a two-kernel filter, the two kernels can have different heights and different widths.

In the cells, enter the coefficients that you want to use in the convolution. If you want to select a new active (center) cell, select the **Set Active Cell in Kernel** checkbox, then click the cell in the displayed kernel that you want to be the new active cell. If you are creating a two-kernel filter, the two kernels do not have to have the same active cell.

Filter List

Select the filter that you want to apply to the input image. A filter selection initializes the kernel information for the convolution, the gain, offset, and divide information, and the thresholding information. Note that filtering is performed with respect to the active ROI in the input image. If no active ROI is present, the whole image is used.

By default, the filters provided with the Filter tool are displayed in the drop-down list and the location of the filters is shown in the path field. If you want to use a filter that is stored in a different location, use the **Browse** button to locate the appropriate directory, then click **OK**.

The default filters are described as follows:

- **Mean / Mean1 / Mean2 / Mean3** – These are low-pass filters that smooth the image. They are meant to attenuate the high-frequency (noise) details of the image while leaving the low-frequency content intact.

Note that Mean and Mean1 are exactly the same. Mean is provided for compatibility with previous versions of GLI/2.

- **Sharpen1 / Sharpen2 / Sharpen3** – These are high-pass filters that sharpen the image. They meant to accentuate the high-frequency details of the image while leaving the low-frequency content intact.
- **Horizontal** – This filter detects horizontal edges.
- **Vertical** – This filter detects vertical edges.
- **Right Diagonal / Left Diagonal / Diamond** – These filters detect edges in a diagonal direction.
- **Sobel / Prewitt** – These filters detects edges in all directions. All pixels not on the detected edges are changed to black. (Note that the usage is the same for both filters, but the algorithms are different.)
- **Laplacian1 / Laplacian2 / Laplacian3** – These filters detect edges in all directions. There are three omnidirectional filters and three bidirectional filters. All pixels not on the detected lines are changed to black.
- **Unsharpen1 / Unsharpen2 / Unsharpen3** – These filters sharpen the edges of an image by subtracting a smoothed version of the image from the original image.

- **Gaussian1 / Gaussian2** – These filters blur the image and remove details and noise.
- **Shift and Difference** – These filters extract the vertical (V), horizontal (H), and diagonal (D) edges in an image. Constant brightness areas become black, while changing brightness areas become highlighted.
- **Amplify Edge** – These are Prewitt gradient-edge enhancement filters. One filter is provided for each of the eight compass directions (E, NE, N, NW, W, SW, S, and SE). The resulting image appears as a directional outline of the objects in the original image. Note that these filters are different from the Prewitt filter.
- **Amplify Line** – These filters enhance and amplify the vertical (V), horizontal (H), left-to-right (LR), or right-to-left (RL) diagonal straight line segments by producing directional outlines of line segments in the original image.
- **Robert Cross** – This is a simple, quick to compute, filter that highlights regions of high spatial frequency that often correspond to edges.

Note: If the default filters do not suit your needs, you can add your own filter by specifying a user-defined kernel in the displayed kernel area or by using one of the many kernels that perform specialized types of filtering.

To delete either one of the default filters or one of your own filters, go to the appropriate directory and make sure that you delete both the .ker file and the .flt file associated with the filter.

Filter

Click this button to apply the current filter to the input image. The result is shown in the output image.

Add to Script

After you apply a filter, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

Example of Using the Filter Tool

This example shows how to perform a Sobel filter on the color image Pill1, shown in [Figure 49](#), with respect to its active ellipse ROI.

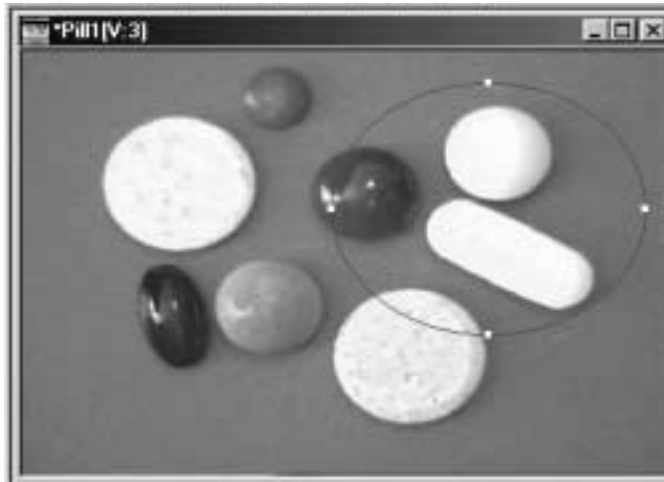


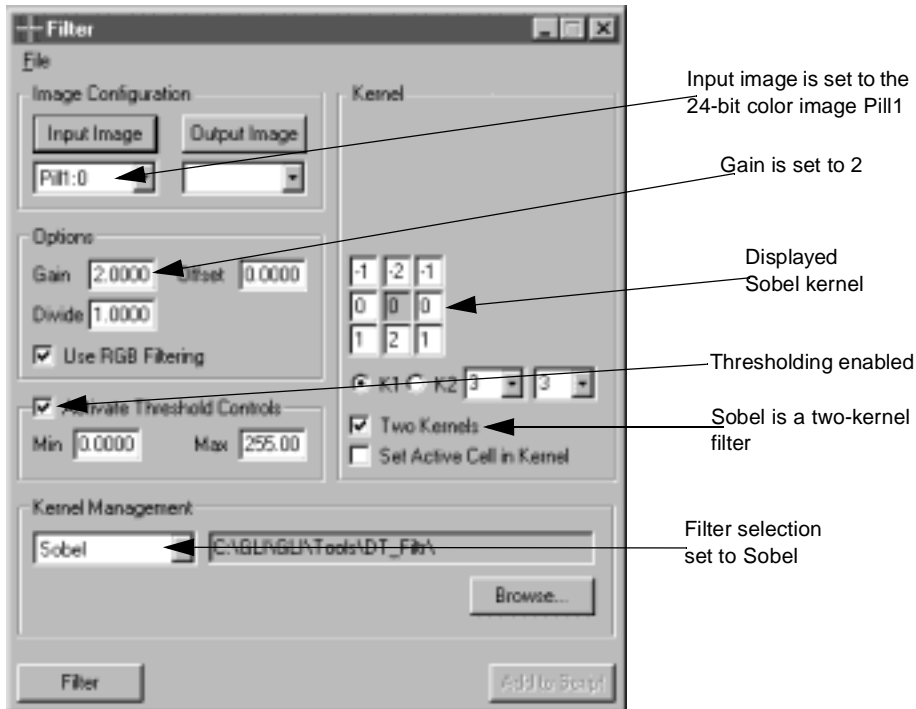
Figure 49: FilterTool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

1. Open a Filter tool (if one is not already open).
2. Click in the viewport on the image Pill1 with the left mouse button. Pill1 is now the active viewport and is denoted with an asterisk, as show in [Figure 49](#). Click **Input Image** to load Pill1 as the input image.
3. Activate (red) the desired ROI within the input image by clicking in it with the right mouse button.
4. Select the Sobel filter from the filter selection list.

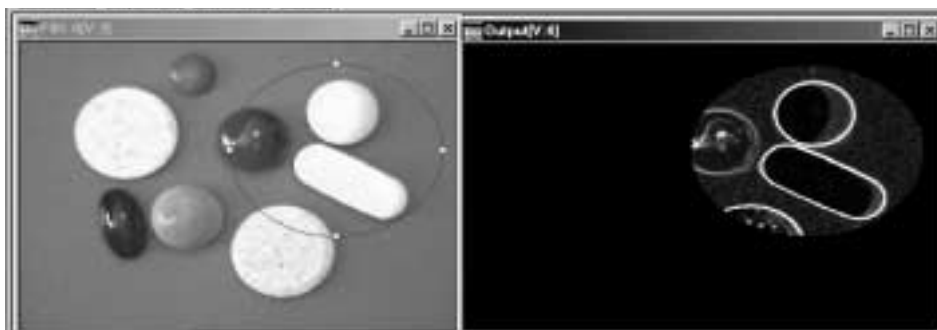
- Set the **Gain** to 2 and select the **Activate Threshold Controls** checkbox.

The Filter tool looks as follows:



- Click **Filter** to apply the filter.

The result of the Sobel filter is enhanced edges of the image in the output image, as follows.



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Filter tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Filter tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Filter tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input and output images, the desired filter, and the active ROI (if you are using one). Click **Filter** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Filter tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input and output images, the desired filter, and the active ROI (if an ROI was used). The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Histogram Tool

Introduction.....	232
Description of Histogram Tool Options	234
Example of Using the Histogram Tool	246
Point & Click Script	248

Introduction

The Histogram tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to create histograms of images. You can add up to 100 histograms to the same graph. The histograms can be added from multiple images and from multiple viewports. You can also transfer histogram data directly to the Microsoft Excel worksheet program.

As with all GLI/2 tools that use a graph to display image data, the Histogram tool allows you to do the following:

- Change the minimum and maximum x-axis and y-axis values.
- Change the grid markings for both the x-axis and the y-axis.
- Change the text displayed on the graph (title, x-axis label, and y-axis label).
- Change the color and style of each curve on the graph.
- Zoom to a specified area using the mouse.
- Switch between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking the right mouse button.
- Resize the graph.
- Print the graph.

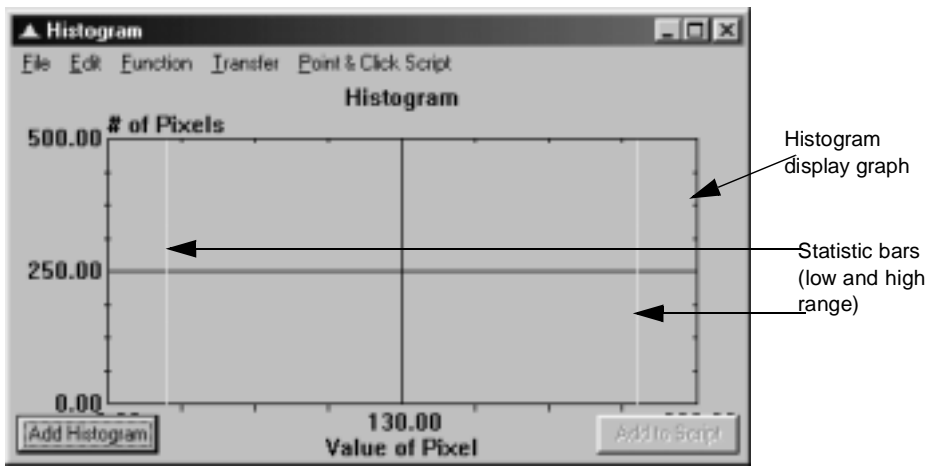



Figure 50: Histogram Tool

To open a Histogram tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Histogram** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Histogram tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

The histogram is created from the image displayed in the active viewport with respect to its active ROI. If no active ROI is present, the whole image is used.

You can have up to 100 Histogram tools open at the same time.

Description of Histogram Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Histogram tool dialog box.

Dialog Box Options

Histogram Display Graph

The histogram display graph displays all the created histograms. You can resize the graph as needed by dragging the edges.

The statistic bars in the graph allow you to select a range of pixel values in the histogram. You can adjust the low and high range by dragging the vertical bars with the left mouse button. If you cannot locate and/or grab one of the bars, double-click the right mouse button to restore the bars to their original positions.

Add Histogram

Click this button to add a histogram to the graph. The histogram is created from the image displayed in the active viewport with respect to its active ROI. If no active ROI is present, the whole image is used. You can add up to 100 histograms to the graph.

Add to Script

After you add the histogram, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

File Menu Options

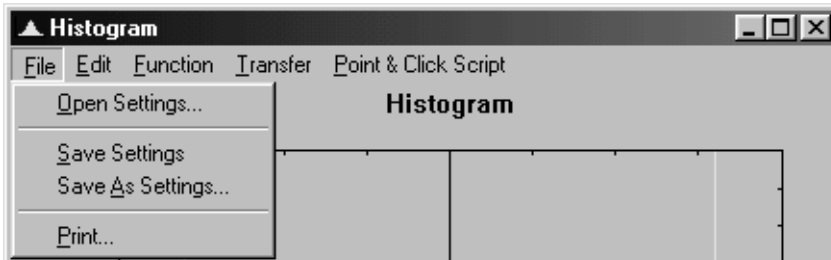


Figure 51: Histogram Tool - File Menu

Open Settings...

Select this option to open a graph configuration from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a graph configuration (the file name must be followed by the extension .hst), the object is loaded into the Histogram tool.

Note that a graph configuration includes x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, grid markings, and location of statistic bars.

Save Settings

Select this option to save a graph configuration back to disk. The Histogram tool saves x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, grid markings, and location of statistic bars.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save a graph configuration to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension .hst.

Note that if you save a graph configuration with the name default.hst, the file will automatically open each time you open a Histogram tool. You must save default.hst in the DT_Hist directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Print

Select this option to print the graph.

Edit Menu Options

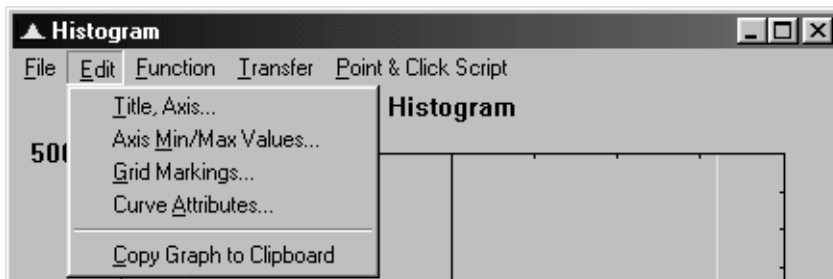


Figure 52: Histogram Tool - Edit Menu

Title, Axis...

Select this option to change the graph text for the title, x-axis, and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Set Title, X & Y Labels dialog box, then click **OK**.

Axis Min/Max Values...

Select this option to change the minimum and maximum limits for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Axis Min/Max Values dialog box, then click **OK**.

You can also set the minimum and maximum values for the graph by performing the following steps:

1. Move the mouse cursor to the point in the graph at which you want to start drawing the rectangular region.
2. While holding down the <Shift> and <Ctrl> keys at the same time, click and hold down the left mouse button.
3. Drag the mouse until you complete the rectangular region. While dragging the mouse, the proposed zooming region is shown on the graph.
4. When you have completed the rectangular region, release the left mouse button. The graph now zooms to the desired minimum and maximum axis points.

You can switch back and forth between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking in the graph with the right mouse button.

Grid Markings...

Select this option to change the grid markings for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Grid Markings dialog box, then click **OK**.

Curve Attributes...

Select this option to change the style and color of the curve selected in the histogram display graph. Click the appropriate radio buttons in the Curve Attributes dialog box, then click **OK**.

Copy Graph to Clipboard

Select this option to copy the histogram display graph to the clipboard.

Function Menu Options

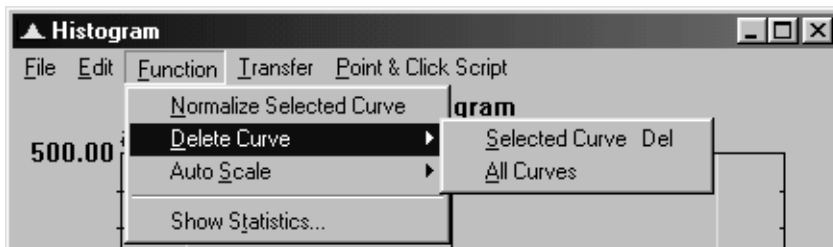


Figure 53: Histogram Tool - Function Menu

Normalize Selected Curve

Select this option to normalize the selected curve.

Delete Curve

The **Delete Curve** option allows you to specify which curves to delete:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to delete the selected curve from the graph. You can also delete the selected curve by holding down the <Ctrl> key and clicking on the selected curve with the right mouse button.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to delete all curves from the graph.

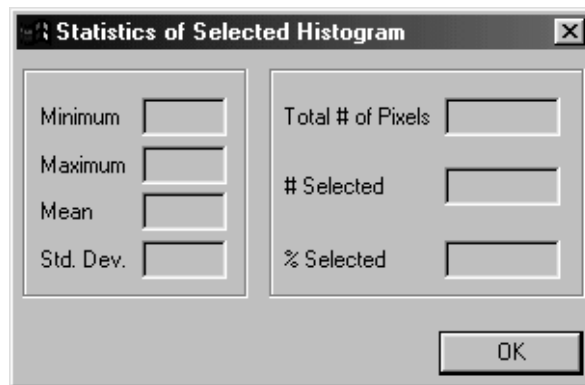
Auto Scale

The **Auto Scale** option allows you to specify how to scale the x-axis and y-axis of the graph:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit the selected curve on the graph.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit all curves on the graph.

Show Statistics

Select this option to display statistics for the selected curve in the histogram display graph. The Histogram tool opens the Statistics of Selected Histogram dialog box.



The statistics shown are described as follows:

- **Minimum** – The lowest pixel value in the selected range.
- **Maximum** – The highest pixel value in the selected range.
- **Mean** – The average pixel value in the selected range.
- **Standard Deviation** – The standard deviation of the pixel values in the selected range.

- **Total # of Pixels** – The total number of pixels in the full (0 to 255) histogram range.
- **# Selected** – The number of pixels in the selected histogram range.
- **% Selected** – The percent of pixels that fall within the selected range (selected # / total #).

The statistics shown are calculated with regard to the range of pixel values that you set using the statistic bars. You can adjust the low and high range of pixel values by dragging the statistic bars with the left mouse button. To obtain values for the entire range, set the statistic bars to the full range.

Note that you must select a curve and click on the statistic bars in order to display the data.

Transfer Menu Options

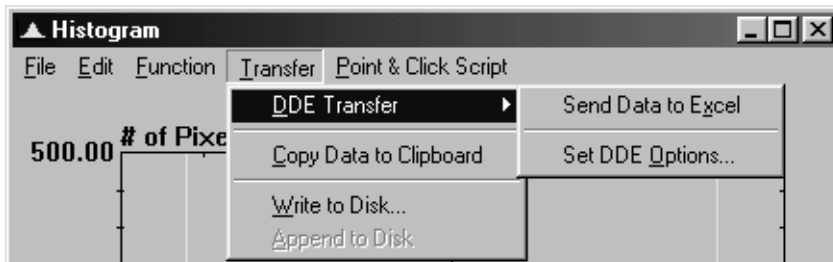


Figure 54: Histogram Tool - Transfer Menu

DDE Transfer

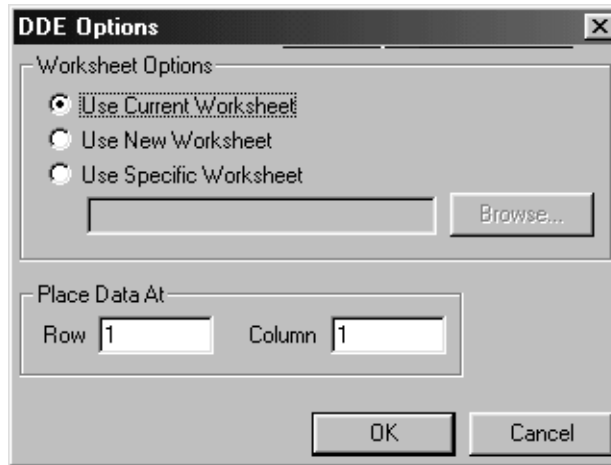
Note: It is recommended that you use the Export tool to send variables and/or images from GLI/2 to Excel. For more information, refer to [Chapter 11, “Using the Export Tool.”](#) The DDE options in the Histogram tool have been retained for backward compatibility.

The **DDE Transfer** option allows you to select the following options for sending histogram data to the spreadsheet program Excel:

- **Send Data to Excel** – Select this option to send all selected histogram data (curve data and statistics data) to Excel. Excel automatically opens and loads the data. When the histogram data is loaded into Excel, you can display the data in any supported format, such as charts, graphs, and spreadsheets.

If multiple histogram curves are on the same graph and no curves are selected, the data for all the curves is loaded into the same worksheet. If a histogram curve is selected, only the data for the selected curve is loaded. Only the current statistics (within the range set by the statistic bars) is transferred.

- **Set DDE Options...** – Select this option to open the DDE Options dialog box.



Click the appropriate radio button to specify the Excel worksheet you want to use. You can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. You can place your data at a specific row and/or column in the specified worksheet. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Copy Data to Clipboard

Select this option to copy all selected histogram data to the clipboard. You can then paste from the clipboard to any supported program, such as Word or Notepad.

Write to Disk...

Select this option to write all selected histogram data to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate directory and enter the file name, then click **Save**.

Append to Disk

Select this option to add the selected histogram data to the end of the file you saved using **Write to Disk**.

Point & Click Script Menu Options

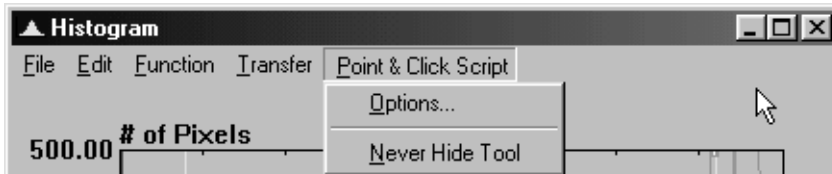


Figure 55: Point & Click Script Menu Options

Select the **Options** option to open the Histogram Script Options dialog box, shown in [Figure 56](#). When all the settings are correct, click OK to accept the settings in the Histogram Script Options dialog box. Click Cancel to close the Histogram Script Options dialog box without saving any changes.

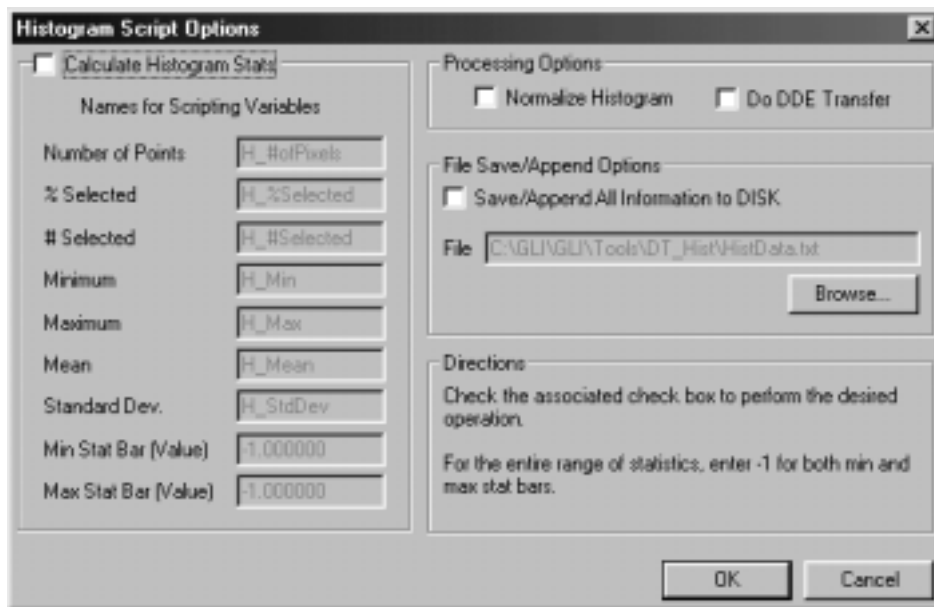


Figure 56: Histogram Script Options Dialog Box

Select the **Calculate Histogram Stats** checkbox if you want the Histogram tool to calculate the histogram statistics and put them into the specified point & click scripting variables. You can change the names for the scripting variables by entering a new name in the appropriate text box. If the **Min Stat Bar** and **Max Stat Bar** values are set to -1, the statistics are calculated for the entire histogram. If any other values are entered, the statistics are calculated for the area between the given values. For more information about histogram statistics, refer to [page 239](#).

Select the **Normalize Histogram** checkbox if you want to normalize the histogram after you create it.

Select the **Do DDE Transfer** checkbox if you want to send all the calculated information to the spreadsheet program Excel using the options in the DDE Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 241](#).

Select the **Save/Append All Information to DISK** checkbox if you want to save all the calculated information to disk. By default, the information is saved in the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, use the **Browse** button to locate the file.

Never Hide Tool

Select this option if you want the Histogram tool to remain visible while you are running a point & click script.

Example of Using the Histogram Tool

This example shows how to compare a histogram of the image Mixpoll and a histogram of the image Pill1 on the same graph. Using these two images, shown in [Figure 57](#), demonstrates that you can take a histogram of any type of image with respect to any type of ROI in different viewports.

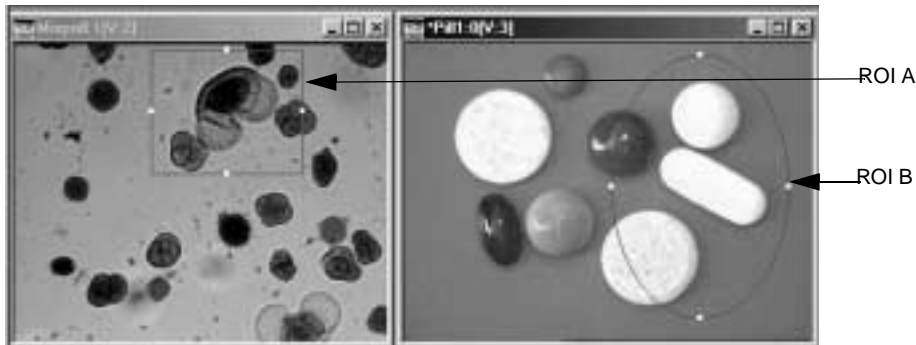
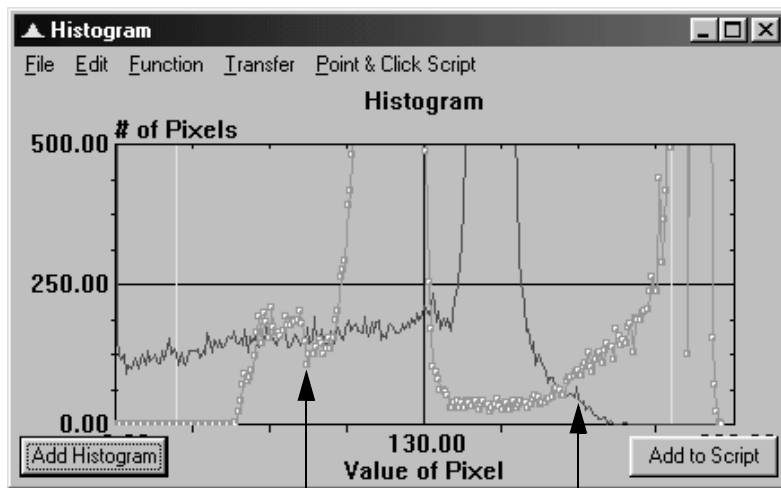


Figure 57: Histogram Tool Example Images

The operation is as follows:

1. Open a Histogram tool (if one is not already open).
2. Activate the image Mixpoll by clicking in it with the left mouse button.
3. Activate ROI A by clicking in it with the right mouse button.
4. Click **Add Histogram**.
5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for the image Pill1.

The result is as follows.



Histogram of image Mixpoll
with respect to ROI A

Histogram of image Pill1
with respect to ROI B

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Histogram tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing scripting and selecting scripting options. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Histogram tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Histogram tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input image, the script options, and the active ROI (if you are using one). Click **Add Histogram** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool. To keep the Histogram tool visible while running a point & click script, select **Point & Click Script | Never Hide Tool**.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Histogram tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes all histogram options, all script options, and the active ROI (if an ROI was used). The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Image Manager Tool

Introduction.....	250
Description of Image Manager Tool Options.....	252
Example of Using the Image Manager Tool.....	255

Introduction

The Image Manager tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to manage images in memory. All open images are displayed in a list.

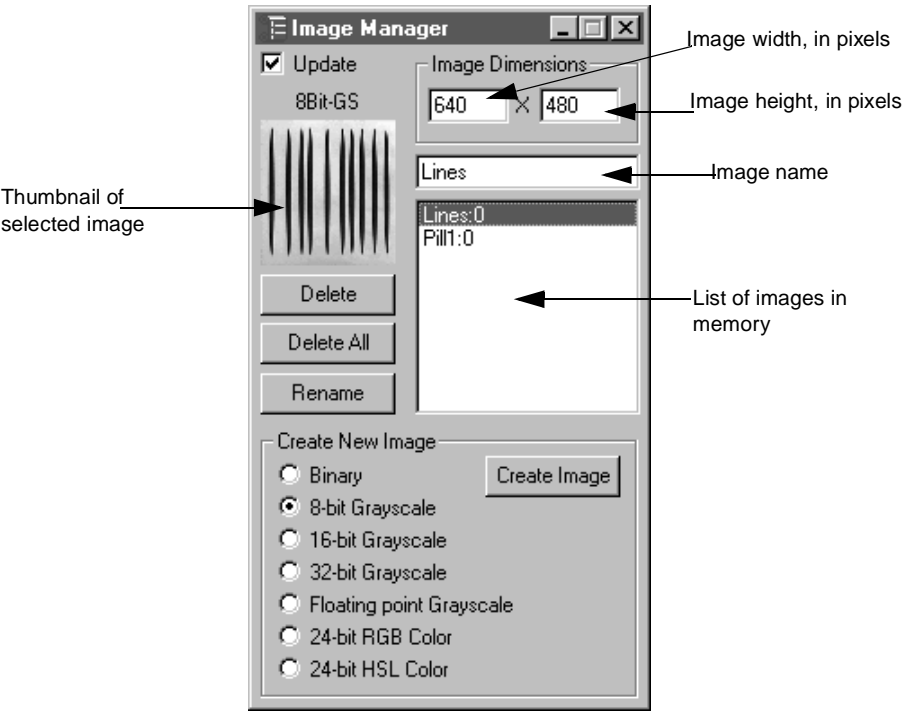



Figure 58: Image Manager Tool

The Image Manager tool allows you to do the following:

- View a list of all images in memory.
- Determine the name, height, width, and type of a specific image.
- View a thumbnail of a specific image.
- Delete a specific image.
- Delete all images in memory.
- Select a specific image into the active viewport.
- Create a new image.
- Rename a specific image.

To open an Image Manager tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Image Manager** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Image Manager tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Image Manager tools open at the same time.

Description of Image Manager Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Image Manager tool dialog box.

Update

Select this checkbox if you want the tool to highlight the image in the active viewport in the list of images in memory and show a thumbnail of the image in the active viewport. As you jump from one active image to another in the main application, the tool updates the list and thumbnail to show you which image in the list is the active image in the main application.

Image Type

This field displays the type of image selected in the list of images in memory.

Thumbnail of Selected Image

This area displays a thumbnail of the image selected in the list of images in memory. To place the thumbnail image in the active viewport, double-click the selection in the list box or click in this area (click on the thumbnail).

Image Dimensions

When you select an image, these fields display the width and height of the selected image. When you are creating a new image, enter the width and height in these text boxes.

Image Name

When you select an image, this field displays the name of the selected image. When you are renaming an image or creating a new image, enter the new name in this text box.

List of Images in Memory

This area displays a list of all images in memory. To place an image in the list into the active viewport, double-click the image name in the list. To view the thumbnail, width, height, and type of an image, single-click the image name in the list.

Delete

Click this button to delete the selected image. Tools that are using this image are notified that the image has been deleted and unassociate themselves from the deleted image.

Delete All

Click this button to delete all images in memory. Tools that are using a deleted image are notified that the image has been deleted and unassociate themselves from the deleted image.

Rename

Click this button to rename the image selected in the list of images in memory to the name specified in the image name text box. Tools that are using this image are notified and their displays are updated to show the change.

Create New Image

If you want to create a new blank image in memory, click the radio button that specifies the image type, then click the **Create Image** button. A new image is created with the width specified in the image width text box, with the height specified in the image height text box, and with the name specified in the image name text box.

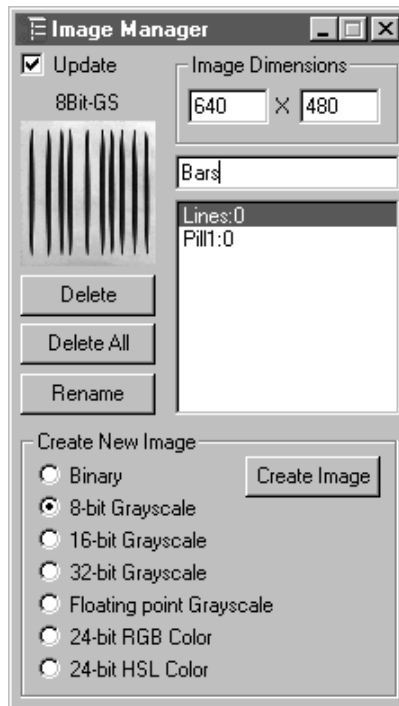
Example of Using the Image Manager Tool

This example shows how to load and rename an image.

The operation is as follows:

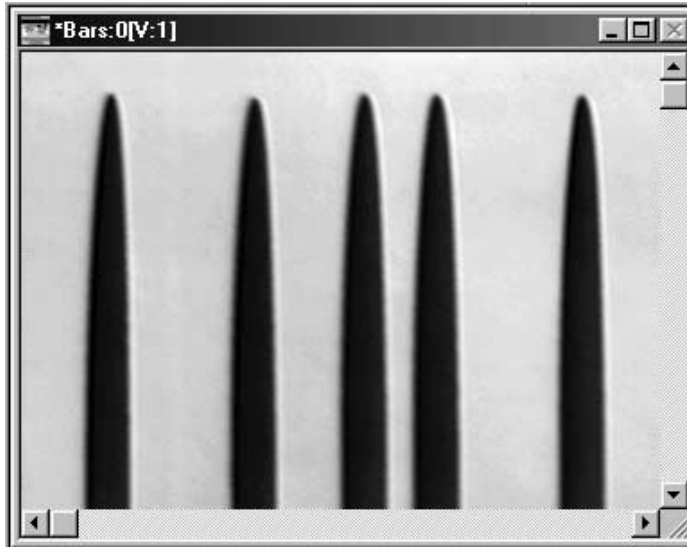
1. Open the image Lines into a viewport.
2. Open an Image Manager tool (if one is not already open).
3. Click on Lines in the list of images in memory.
4. Enter the new name Bars into the image name text box. Leave the width at 640 pixels and the height at 480 pixels.

The Image Manager tool looks as follows:



5. Rename the image by clicking **Rename**.

The viewport and all tools using this image are updated with the new name. The main application looks as follows:






Using the Image Modifier Tool

Introduction.....	258
Description of Image Modifier Tool Options.....	259
Example of Using the Image Modifier Tool.....	266
Point & Click Script	270

Introduction

The Image Modifier tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to crop, rotate, flip, or scale an image.

To open an Image Modifier tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select Image Modifier from the Tools menu.

Note: You can have only one Image Modifier tool open at a time.

Description of Image Modifier Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Image Modifier tool dialog box.

Crop Tab Options

The Crop tab allows you to crop the area inside the specified ROI.

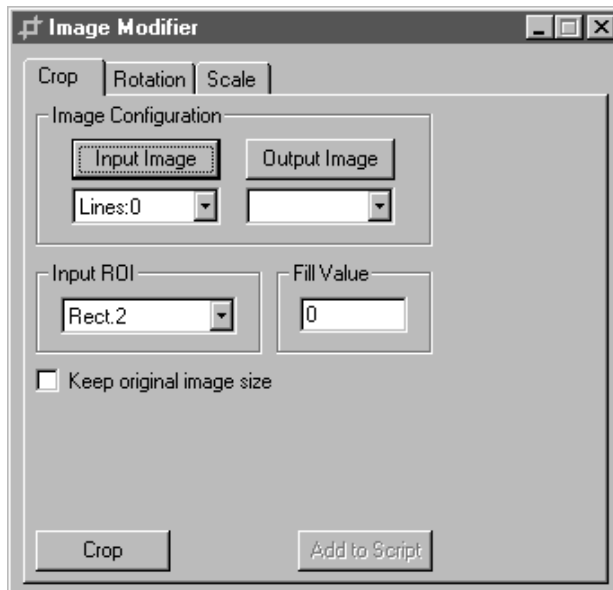


Figure 59: Image Modifier Tool - Crop Tab

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the Input Image display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Image Modifier tool automatically creates an output image for you (with the name **Output**). Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Input ROI

Select the input ROI that represents the area that you want to crop. You can use a rectangle, ellipse, poly freehand, or freehand ROI. Note that rectangle and ellipse ROIs are saved and/or recreated automatically in a script; however, poly freehand and freehand ROIs are not saved or recreated automatically in a script.

Fill Value

Specify the background color of the output image. The value can range from 0 (black) to 255 (white).

Keep Original Image Size

Select this checkbox if you want the output image to be the same size as the input image. The area inside the ROI is cropped and the rest of the image is the color specified by the **Fill Value**.

Clear this checkbox if you want the output image to be the size of the smallest rectangle that surrounds the entire ROI. Any area in the output image that is not inside the ROI is set to the color specified by the **Fill Value**.

Crop

Click this button to perform the Crop operation.

Add to Script

After you set up the parameters, click this button to add the information to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Rotation Tab Options

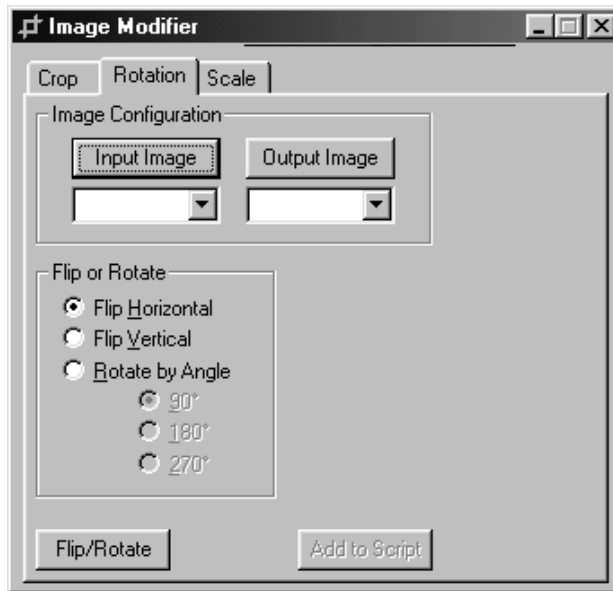


Figure 60: Image Modifier Tool - Rotation Tab

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the Input Image display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Image Modifier tool automatically creates an output image for you (with the name **Output**). Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Flip or Rotate

Select one of the following actions:

- **Flip Horizontal** – Flips the image horizontally.
- **Flip Vertical** – Flips the image vertically.
- **Rotate by Angle** – Rotates the image either by 90° (the default), 180°, or 270°.

Flip/Rotate

Click this button to flip or rotate the image.

Add to Script

After you set up the parameters, click this button to add the information to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Scale Tab Options

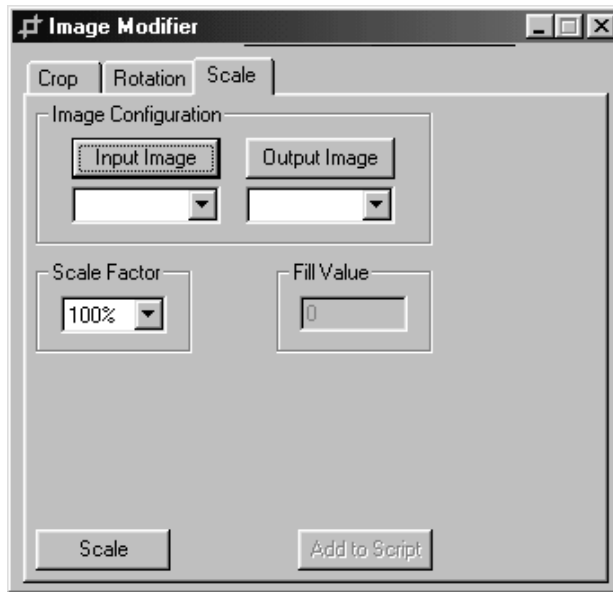


Figure 61: Image Modifier Tool - Scale Tab

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the Input Image display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Image Modifier tool automatically creates an output image for you (with the name **Output**). Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Scale Factor

Select the amount by which to scale the image (25%, 50%, 100%, 200%, or 400%).

Fill Value

Specify the background color of the output image. The value can range from 0 (black) to 255 (white). This option is available only if the **Scale Factor** is 25% or 50%.

Scale

Click this button to perform the scale operation.

Add to Script

After you set up the parameters, click this button to add the information to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Image Modifier Tool

This example shows how to crop, rotate, and scale the image Lines, shown in [Figure 62](#).

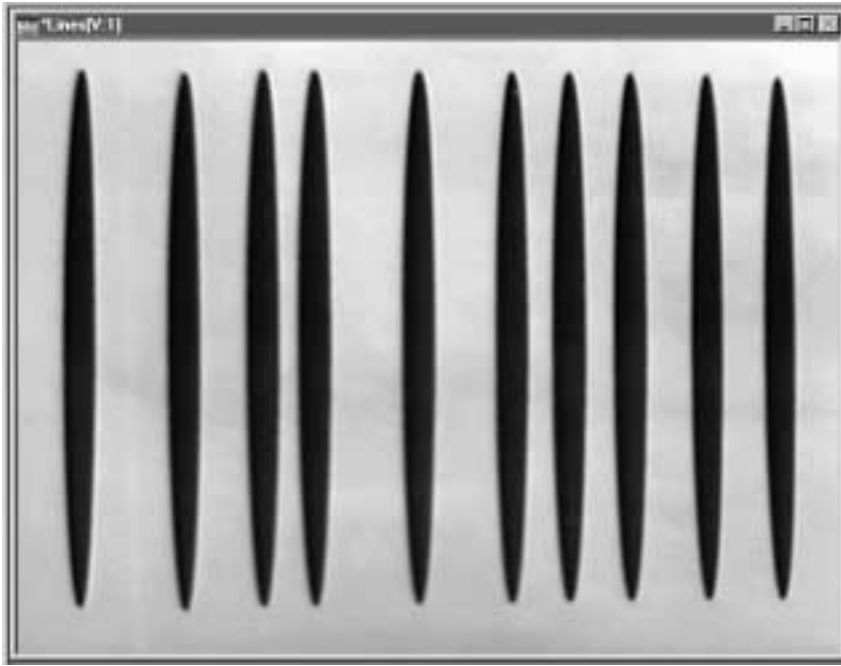
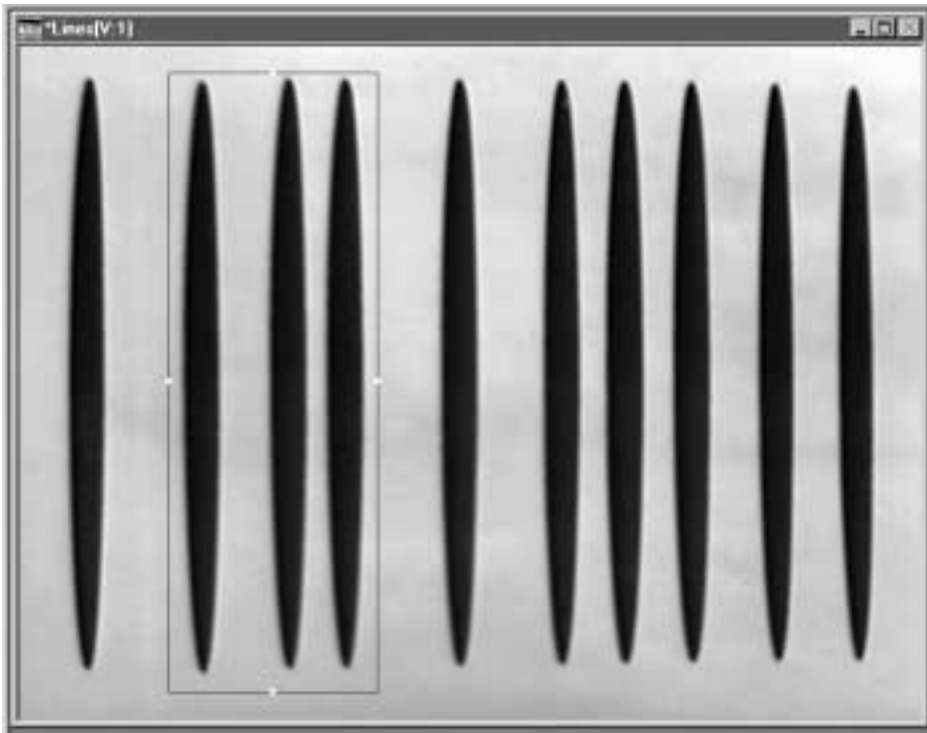


Figure 62: Image Modifier Tool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Image Modifier tool (if it is not already open).
2. On the Crop tab, select the input image Lines:0, then draw a rectangle ROI around the following lines on the input image:



3. Click the **Crop** button.

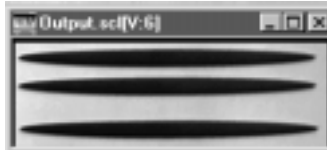
The resulting image appears as follows:



4. Click the Rotation tab.
5. Select **Output.crop.0** as the input image name.
6. Click **Rotate By Angle**, click **270 degrees**, then click **Flip/Rotate**.
The resulting image appears as follows:



7. Click the Scale tab.
8. Select **Output.rot.0** as the input image name.
9. Enter a scale factor of 50 and a fill value of 0, then click **Scale**.
The resulting image appears as follows:



Notice the black pixels around the scale image. This is because the image was reduced by 50% and the fill value is 0 (black).

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Image Modifier tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Image Modifier tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Select the appropriate tab and the image to modify, set up the parameters, then click **Add to Script** to record the information in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Image Modifier tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.




Using the Import Tool

Introduction.	272
Description of Import Tool Options.	273
Example of Using the Import Tool.	277
Point & Click Script	278

Introduction

Note: The Import tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.

The Import tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to transfer variables and images to the GLI/2 application from either the DTiX variable server, the DTiX image server, or a text file. The DTiX servers hold data (variables and images) and make that data available to the GLI/2 application. Variables imported into the GLI/2 application are automatically available to all tools that use variables. Images imported into the GLI/2 application are automatically available to all tools that use images.

To open an Import tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Import** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Import tool is fully compatible with all tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Import tools open at the same time.

Description of Import Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Import tool dialog box.

Variables Tab Options

The Variables tab allows you to transfer variables to GLI/2 from either the DTiX variable server or a text file.

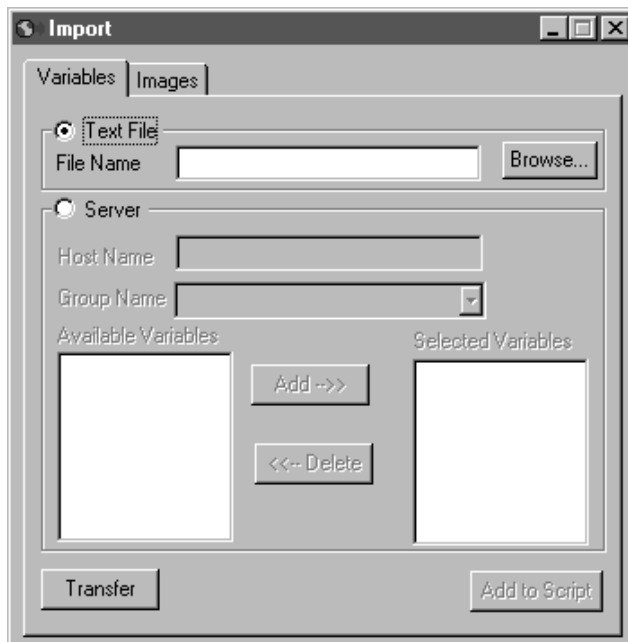


Figure 63: Import Tool - Variables Tab

Text File

Click the **Text File** radio button if you want to transfer all the variables in a text file (*.txt) to GLI/2. Enter the complete path to the file in the **File Name** text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file. If you enter the name of a file that does not exist, the Import tool returns an error.

Server

Click the **Server** radio button if you want to transfer the variables in the **Selected Variables** window to GLI/2.

If the DTiX variable server is located on a different computer system, enter the system name in the **Host Name** text box. Note that this option is not supported at the present time. You can only import data from the DTiX variable server on your local system.

Select the variable group that contains the variables you want to transfer from the **Group Name** drop-down list.

The **Available Variables** window contains a list of all the variables in the specified variable group. For each variable that you want to transfer, click on the variable to select (highlight) it, then click **Add** to add the selected variable to the **Selected Variables** list.

To remove a variable from the **Selected Variables** list, select (highlight) the variable, then click **Delete**.

Transfer

When all the settings are correct, click this button to import the specified variables to GLI/2.

If you are importing variables from a text file, note that variables that contain only numbers are imported as number variables and variables that contain one or more letters are imported as string variables.

Add to Script

After you transfer the variables, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

Images Tab Options

The Images tab allows you to transfer images, along with information about the ROIs associated with the images, to GLI/2 from the DTiX image server.

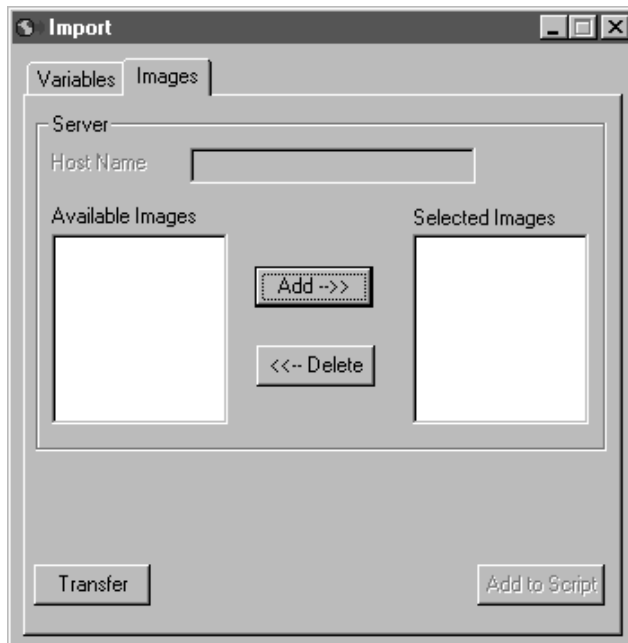


Figure 64: Import Tool - Images Tab

Server

If the DTiX image server is located on a different computer system, enter the system name in the **Host Name** text box. Note that this option is not supported at the present time. You can only import images from the DTiX image server on your local system.

The **Available Images** window contains a list of all the images on the DTiX image server. For each image that you want to transfer, click on the image to select (highlight) it, then click **Add** to add the selected image to the **Selected Images** list.

To remove an image from the **Selected Images** list, select (highlight) the image, then click **Delete**.

Transfer

When all the settings are correct, click this button to transfer the **Selected Images** to GLI/2.

Add to Script

After you transfer the images, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

Example of Using the Import Tool

This example shows how to transfer an image (TestImage) that is stored on the DTiX image server to the GLI/2 application and then save the image file to disk.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open an Import tool (if one is not already open).
*A list of all the images on the DTiX image server are displayed in the **Available Images** window.*
2. Click **TestImage** to highlight it, then click **Add**.
*The image TestImage is displayed in the **Selected Images** window.*
3. Click **Transfer** to import TestImage to the GLI/2 application.
4. Open a File Manager tool (if one is not already open).
The image TestImage is displayed in the list of images in memory.
5. Click **TestImage** to highlight it.
*The image name is displayed in the **File Name** text box.*
6. Enter the complete path to the directory in which you want to save the image in the **Folder Path** text box.
7. Select **File Save** from the File menu.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Import tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Import tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Import tool to perform the desired function. This includes the location from which you want to transfer the variables/images and the variables/images that you want to transfer. Click **Transfer** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Import tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the location from which you want to transfer the variables/images and the variables/images that you want to transfer. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.

18

Using the Line Profile Tool

Introduction.....	280
Description of Line Profile Tool Options	282
Example of Using the Line Profile Tool.....	301
Point & Click Script	307

Introduction

The Line Profile tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to create and view line profiles of images, find edges, and measure distances along lines. You can add an unlimited number of line profiles to the same graph. This is useful if you want to distinguish some characteristic of one image from another image. You can add line profiles from multiple images and from multiple viewports.

As with all GLI/2 tools that use a graph to display image data, the Line Profile tool allows you to do the following:

- Change the minimum and maximum x-axis and y-axis values.
- Change the grid markings for both the x-axis and y-axis.
- Change the text displayed on the graph (Title, x-axis label, and y-axis label).
- Change the color and style of each curve on the graph.
- Zoom to a specified area using the mouse.
- Switch between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking the right mouse button.
- Resize the graph.
- Print the graph.

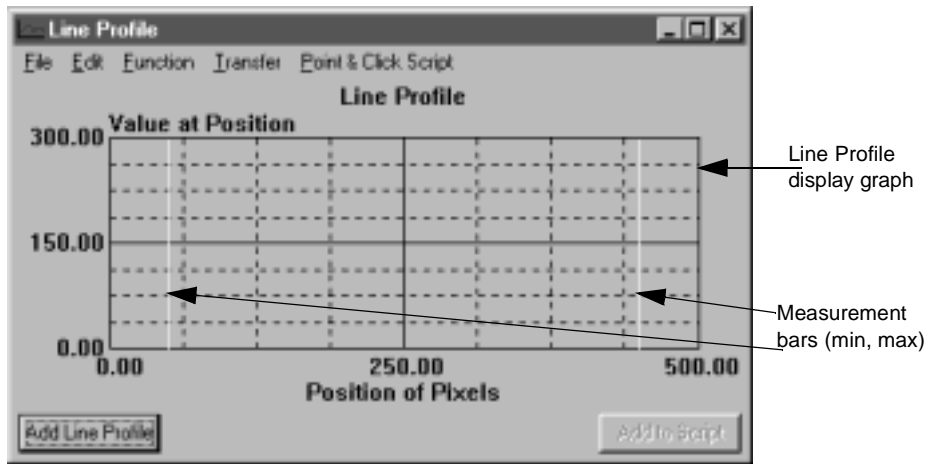



Figure 65: Line Profile Tool

To open a Line Profile tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Line Profile** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Line Profile tool is fully compatible with all other tools and image types. It works only with line, poly line, and freehand line ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Line Profile tools open at the same time.

Description of Line Profile Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Line Profile tool dialog boxes.

Dialog Box Options

Line Profile Display Graph

The Line Profile display graph shows all the created line profiles and any derivatives taken. A set of vertical measurement bars represent the minimum and maximum measurement values. Displayed measurements are always taken between the minimum and maximum measurement values.

When you are defining and displaying measurement data in the Distances dialog box (see [page 288](#)), you can adjust the minimum and maximum measurement values by grabbing the measurement bars with the left mouse button. When you are finding edges in your images using the Find Edges dialog box (see [page 298](#)), the measurement bars are automatically placed.

Add Line Profile

Click this button to add a line profile to the graph. The line profile is created from the image displayed in the active viewport with respect to its active line ROI (line, poly line, or freehand line). You can add as many line profiles to the graph as you want.

Add to Script

After you add the line profile, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

File Menu Options

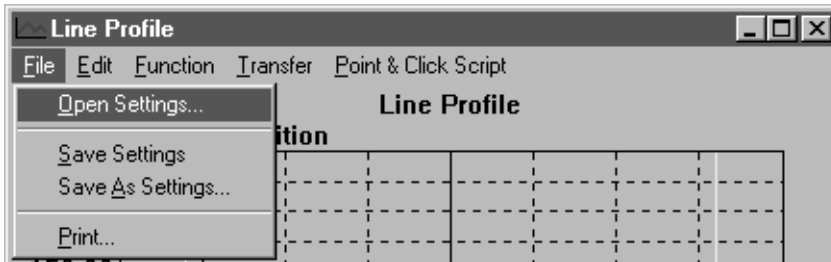


Figure 66: File Menu Options

Open Settings...

Select this option to open a graph configuration from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a graph configuration (the file name must be followed by the extension `.pro`), the object is loaded into the Line Profile tool.

Note that a graph configuration includes x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save Settings

Select this option to save a graph configuration back to disk. The Line Profile tool saves x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save a graph configuration to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension `.pro`.

Note that if you save a graph configuration with the name default.pro, the file will automatically open each time you open a Line Profile tool. You must save default.pro in the DT_LProf directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Print

Select this option to print the graph.

Edit Menu Options

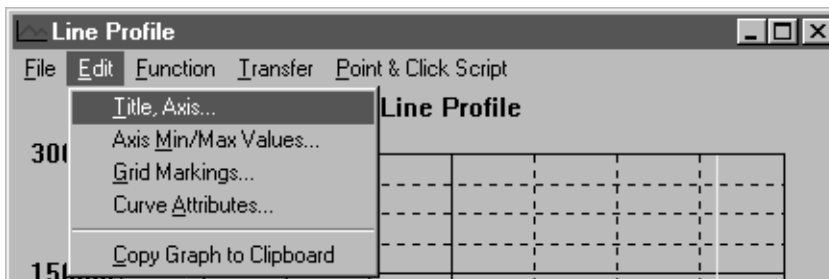


Figure 67: Edit Menu Options

Title, Axis...

Select this option to change the graph text for the title, x-axis, and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Set Title, X & Y Labels dialog box, then click **OK**.

Axis Min/Max Values...

Select this option to change the minimum and maximum limits for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Axis Min/Max Values dialog box, then click **OK**.

You can also set the minimum and maximum values for the graph by performing the following steps:

1. Move the mouse cursor to the point in the graph at which you want to start drawing the rectangular region.
2. While holding down the <Shift> and <Ctrl> keys at the same time, click and hold down the left mouse button.
3. Drag the mouse until you complete the rectangular region. While dragging the mouse, the proposed zooming region is shown on the graph.
4. When you have completed the rectangular region, release the left mouse button. The graph now zooms to the desired minimum and maximum axis points.

You can switch back and forth between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking in the graph with the right mouse button.

Grid Markings...

Select this option to change the grid markings for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Grid Markings dialog box, then click **OK**.

Curve Attributes...

Select this option to change the style and color of the curve selected in the histogram display graph. Click the appropriate radio buttons in the Curve Attributes dialog box, then click **OK**.

Copy Graph to Clipboard

Select this option to copy the histogram display graph to the clipboard.

Function Menu Options

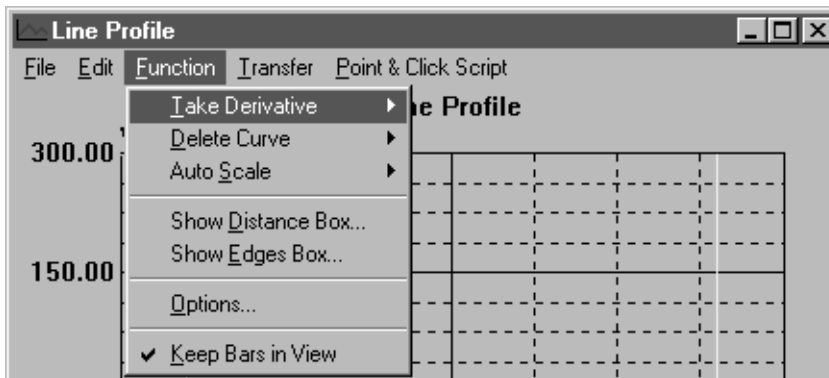


Figure 68: Function Menu Options

Take Derivative

The Take Derivative option allows you to specify whether you want to take a first or second derivative of the selected curve:

- **First** – Select this option to take the first derivative of the selected curve. The Line Profile tool uses the first derivative options specified in the Line Profile Options dialog box; for more information, refer to [page 295](#). The newly created first derivative curve replaces the selected curve.
- **Second** – Select this option to take the second derivative of the selected curve. The Line Profile tool uses the first and second derivative options specified in the Line Profile Options dialog box; for more information, refer to [page 295](#). The newly created second derivative curve replaces the selected curve. Note that the second derivative is typically used to find edges.

Delete Curve

This option allows you to specify which curves to delete:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to delete the selected curve from the graph. You can also delete the selected curve by holding down the <Ctrl> key and clicking on the selected curve with the right mouse button.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to delete all curves from the graph.

Auto Scale

The **Auto Scale** option allows you to specify how to scale the x-axis and y-axis of the graph:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit the selected curve on the graph.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit all curves on the graph.

Show Distance Box...

Select this option to open the Distances dialog box, shown in [Figure 69](#).

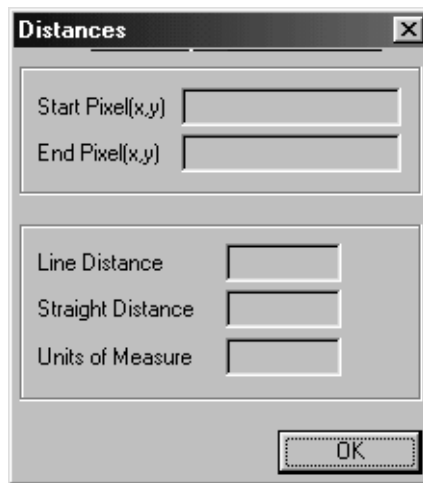


Figure 69: Distance Dialog Box

The Distances dialog box displays measurement data for the selected line profile. The measurements are taken between the measurement bars in the Line Profile display graph.

The measurements displayed are as follows:

- **Start Pixel (x,y)** – Location of the start pixel that correlates with the position of the minimum measurement bar on the display graph. The location values are displayed in x and y coordinates with subpixel accuracy. By default, the displayed values are in pixels. If you have a calibration object attached to your image, the displayed values are in the calibrated units of measure, such as inches or millimeters.

- **End Pixel (x,y)** – Location of the end pixel that correlates with the position of the maximum measurement bar on the display graph. The location values are displayed in x and y coordinates with subpixel accuracy. By default, the displayed values are in pixels. If you have a calibration object attached to your image, the displayed values are in the calibrated units of measure, such as inches or millimeters.
- **Line Distance** – The distance of the line ROI between the minimum and maximum measurement bars on the display graph. The line distance is the summation of the pixel-to-pixel distances along the line, between the measurement bars.
- **Straight Distance** – The shortest distance from end point to end point (Euclidian distance) between the minimum and maximum measurement bars on the display. This distance is the same as the **Line Distance** for a straight line ROI, but is different if you are using a freehand line or poly line ROI.
- **Units of Measure** – The units of measure. By default, the units of measure are pixels. If you have a calibration object attached to your image, the displayed values are in the calibrated units of measure, such as inches or millimeters. For more information about calibration objects, refer to [Chapter 6, “Using the Calibration Tool.”](#)

Note that you must select a line profile curve and click on the measurement bars to display the data.

Click **OK** to close the Distances dialog box.

Show Edges Box...

Select this option to open a Find Edges dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 298](#).

Options...

Select this option to open the Line Profile Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 295](#).

Keep Bars in View

Select this option if you always want to keep the measurement bars in view. If you zoom the graph and then double-click the right mouse button to unzoom the graph, the measurement bars are reset or moved. Clear this option if you want the measurement bars to stay set (even though they may go out of view).

Transfer Menu Options

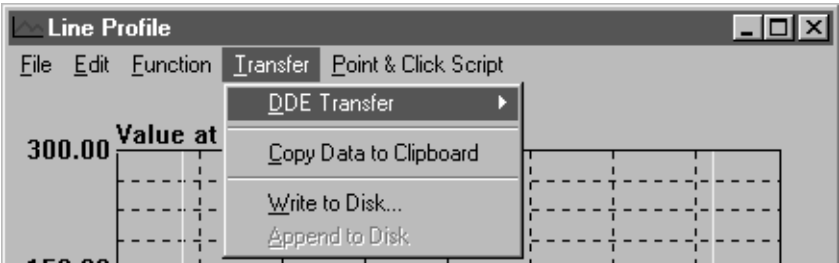


Figure 70: Transfer Menu Options

DDE Transfer

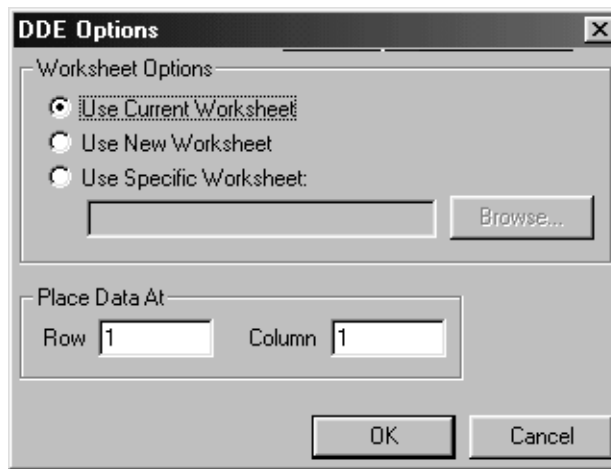
Note: It is recommended that you use the Export tool to send variables and/or images from GLI/2 to Excel. For more information, refer to [Chapter 11, “Using the Export Tool.”](#) The DDE options in the Line Profile tool have been retained for backward compatibility.

The DDE Transfer option allows you to select the following options for sending line profile data to the spreadsheet program Excel:

- **Send Data to Excel** – Select this option to send all selected line profile data to Excel. Excel automatically opens and loads the data. When the line profile data is loaded into Excel, you can display the data in any supported format, such as charts, graphs, and spreadsheets.

If multiple line profile curves are on the same graph and no curves are selected, the data for all the curves is loaded into the same worksheet. If a line profile curve is selected, only the data for the selected curve is loaded.

- **Set DDE Options...** – Select this option to open the DDE Options dialog box.



Click the appropriate radio button to specify the Excel worksheet you want to use. You can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. You can place your data at a specific row and/or column in the specified worksheet. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Copy Data to Clipboard

Select this option to copy all selected line profile data to the clipboard. You can then paste from the clipboard to any supported program, such as Word or Notepad.

Write to Disk...

Select this option to write all selected line profile data to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate directory and enter the file name, then click **Save**.

Append to Disk

Select this option to add the selected line profile data to the end of the file you saved using **Write to Disk**.

Point & Click Script Menu Options

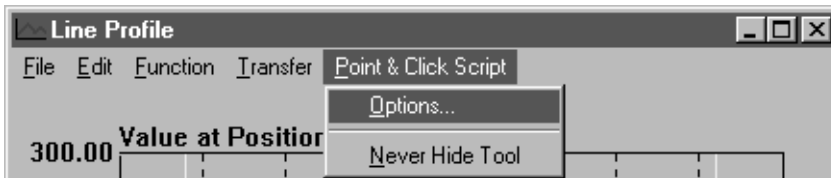


Figure 71: Point & Click Script Menu Options

Options

Select this option to open the Line Profile Script Options dialog box, shown in [Figure 72](#). When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

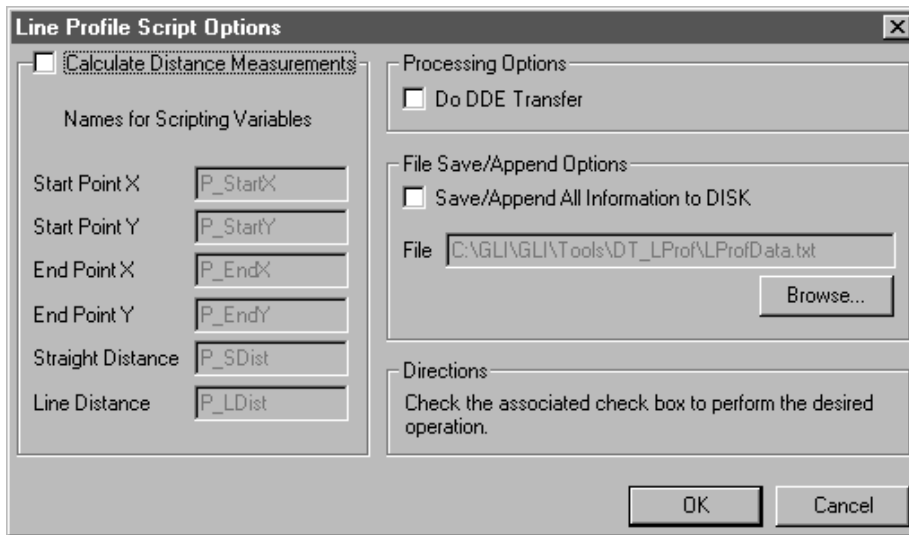


Figure 72: Line Profile Script Options Dialog Box

Select the **Calculate Distance Measurements** checkbox if you want the Line Profile tool to take a second derivative of the line profile, calculate the distance measurements, and put the measurements into the specified point & click scripting variables. You can change the names for the scripting variables by entering a new name in the appropriate text box. For more information about distance measurements, refer to [page 288](#).

Select the **Do DDE Transfer** checkbox if you want to send all the calculated information to the spreadsheet program Excel using the options in the DDE Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 291](#).

Select the **Save/Append All Information to DISK** checkbox if you want to save all the calculated information to disk. By default, the information is saved in the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, use the **Browse** button to locate the file.

Never Hide Tool

Select this option if you want the Line Profile tool to remain visible while you are running a point & click script.

Line Profile Options Dialog Box Options

The Line Profile Options dialog box is opened when you select **Function | Options**. When you have specified all appropriate values, click **Apply** to save the settings without closing the dialog box. Click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving changes.

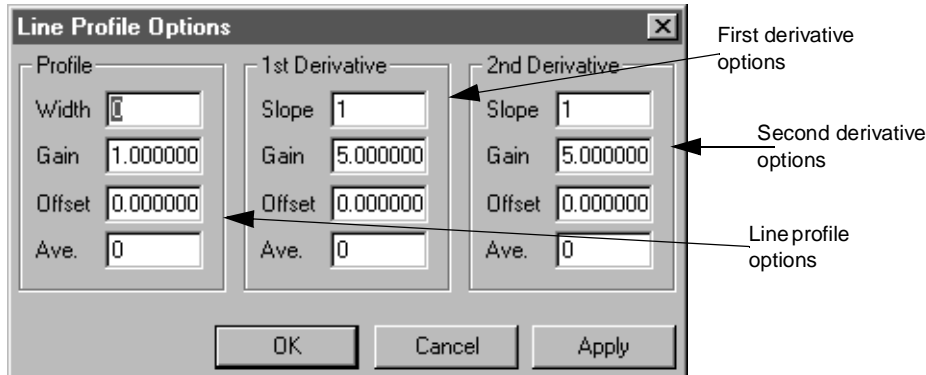


Figure 73: Line Profile Options Dialog Box

Line Profile Options

Width

Enter the number of pixels that you want the Line Profile tool to add to each side of the line when creating the line profile. The pixels are added to each side of the line ROI in a perpendicular fashion. For example, if you enter a value of 1 and the line ROI is a horizontal line, then for each point on the horizontal line ROI, three pixels are averaged: a point on the line ROI, a point just below the line ROI, and a point just above the line ROI. The pixels that are used in the average are always perpendicular to the line ROI.

Gain

Enter the gain value. The gain value, along with the offset value, is applied after the line profile has been created and smoothed using the **Ave.** value.

Offset

Enter the offset value. The offset value, along with the gain value, is applied after the profile has been created and smoothed using the **Ave.** value.

Ave.

Enter the smoothing value (the number of points, on each side of the center point, that you want the Line Profile tool to average in with the center point). The smoothing value is applied just after the line profile has been created. For every point in the line profile curve, the smoothing value is averaged in with its neighbors. For example, if you want no smoothing, enter a value of 0. If you want to average 1 point on each side of the center point with the center point, enter a value of 1.

First Derivative Options / Second Derivative Options

Note: The options for the first derivative and the second derivative are the same. The second derivative is typically used to find edges.

Slope

Enter the slope value (the span of points, on each side of the center point, that you want the Line Profile tool to take into consideration when calculating the slope of the center point). A value of one (the default) means that the center point and each of its neighbors are included in the calculation. Note that you cannot use a value of 0 for the slope.

Gain

Enter the gain value. The gain value, along with the offset value, is applied to the derivative after the derivative has been created and smoothed using the **Ave.** value.

Offset

Enter the offset value. The offset value, along with the gain value, is applied to the derivative after the derivative has been created and smoothed using the **Ave.** value.

Ave.

Enter the smoothing value (the number of points, on each side of the center point, that you want the Line Profile tool to average in with the center point). The smoothing value is applied just after the derivative has been created. For every point in the derivative curve, the smoothing value is averaged with its neighbors. For example, if you want no smoothing, enter a value of 0. If you want to average 1 point on each side of the center point with the center point, enter a value of 1.

Find Edges Dialog Box Options

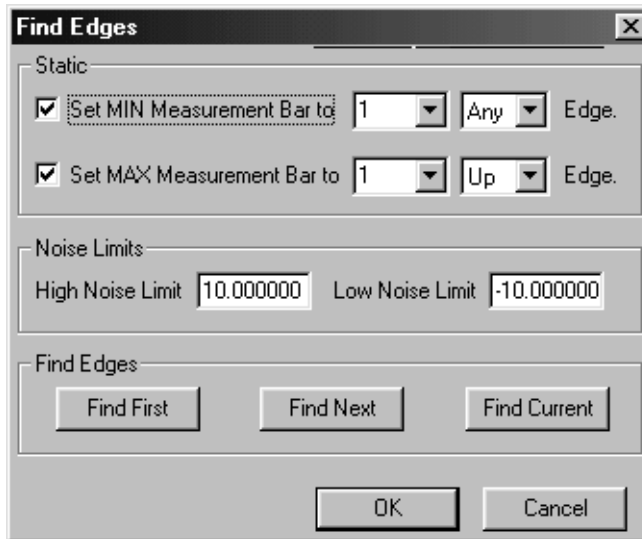


Figure 74: Find Edges Dialog Box

The Find Edges dialog box allows you to find edges in your image, using the second derivative of a line profile. The second derivative crosses the y-axis at zero, where the slope of the original line profile changes rapidly (up or down); this is an edge. You can take the second derivative of a line profile by selecting the line profile, then selecting **Function | Take Derivative | Second**.

The minimum and maximum measurement bars are automatically set to the exact (subpixel) location for the desired edges.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Set MIN Measurement Bar to

Select this checkbox to set the minimum measurement bar to the edge you are seeking. Specify which edge (first edge, second edge, and so on, or best edge) and the type of edge (up, down, or any). For example, [Figure 74](#) indicates that you want to set the minimum measurement bar to the FIRST edge of ANY kind.

An UP edge is where the second derivative line profile crosses the zero y-axis with a positive slope. The curve must start below the low noise limit, cross the zero y-axis, and continue on a constant positive slope until it reaches the high noise limit. A DOWN edge is where the second derivative line profile crosses the zero y-axis with a negative slope. The curve must start above the high noise limit, cross the zero y-axis, and continue on a constant negative slope until it reaches the low noise limit.

Set MAX Measurement Bar to

Select this checkbox to set the maximum measurement bar to the edge you are seeking. Specify which edge (first edge, second edge, and so on, best edge, or last edge) and the type of edge (up, down, or any). For example, [Figure 74](#) indicates that you want to set the maximum measurement bar to the FIRST UP edge.

An UP edge is where the second derivative line profile crosses the zero y-axis with a positive slope. The curve must start below the low noise limit, cross the zero y-axis, and continue on a constant positive slope until it reaches the high noise limit. A DOWN edge is where the second derivative line profile crosses the zero y-axis with a negative slope. The curve must start above the high noise limit, cross the zero y-axis, and continue on a constant negative slope until it reaches the low noise limit.

Noise Limits

Enter the high and low noise limits. Look at the display graph to determine the noise levels on your line profile. Enter limits that factor out the noise but leave the critical data available to find the edges. To help you determine these limits, refer to the next section.

Find First

Click this button to find the first edge in the image, based on the Line Profile Options dialog box settings.

Find Next

Click this button to find the next edge in the image, based on the Line Profile Options dialog box settings.

Find Current

Click this button to find the current edge in the image, based on the Line Profile Options dialog box settings.

Example of Using the Line Profile Tool

This example shows how to use the Line Profile tool to take a line profile of the active line ROI in the image Lines (shown in [Figure 75](#)), take a second derivative of the line profile, and find the edges in the image.

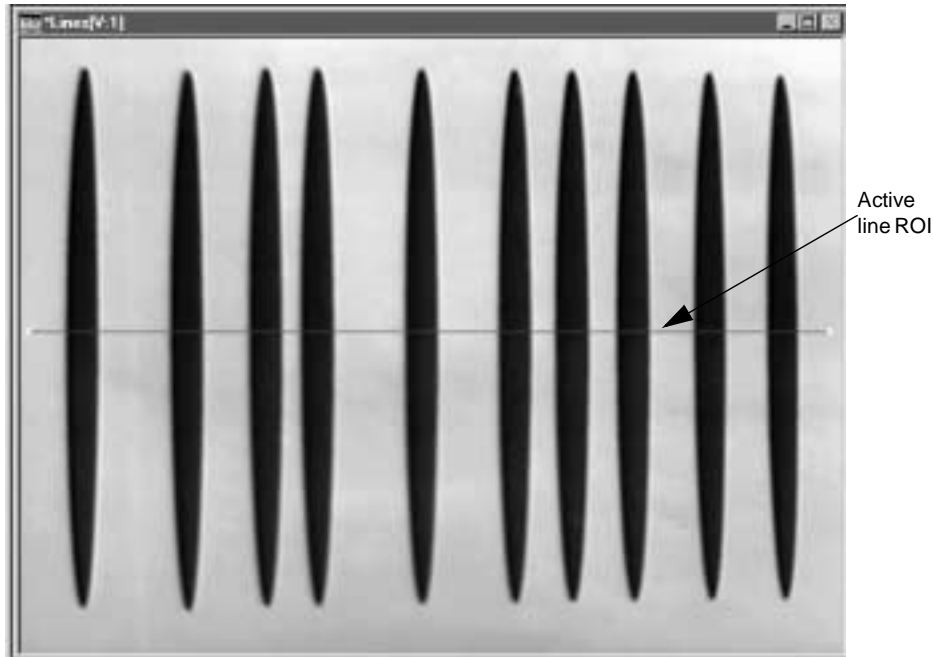
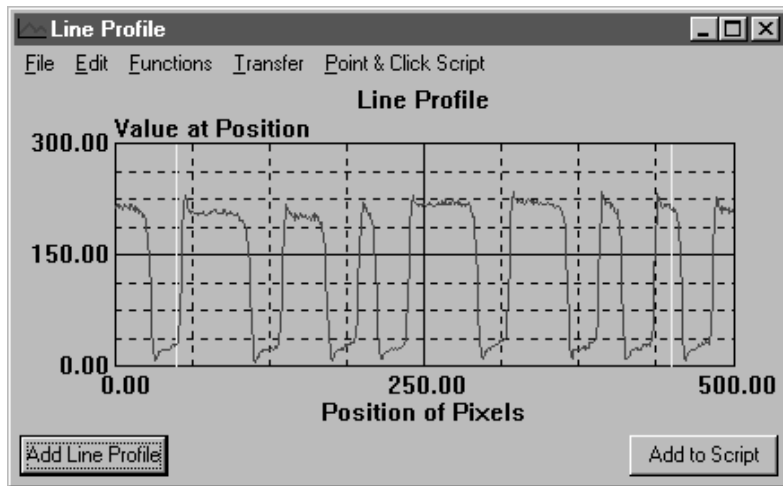


Figure 75: Line Profile Tool Example Image

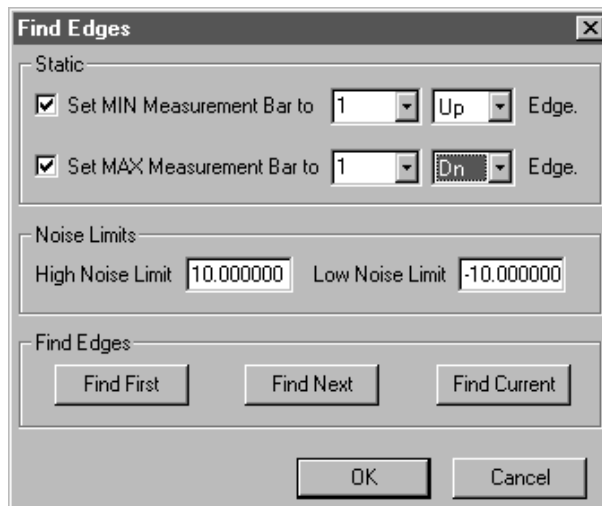
The operation is as follows:

1. Open a Line Profile tool (if one is not already open).
2. Activate the image Lines by clicking in it with the left mouse button.

3. Activate (red) the horizontal line ROI by clicking on it with the right mouse button.
4. Take a line profile of the active ROI by clicking **Add Line Profile**.
The Line Profile tool looks as follows:

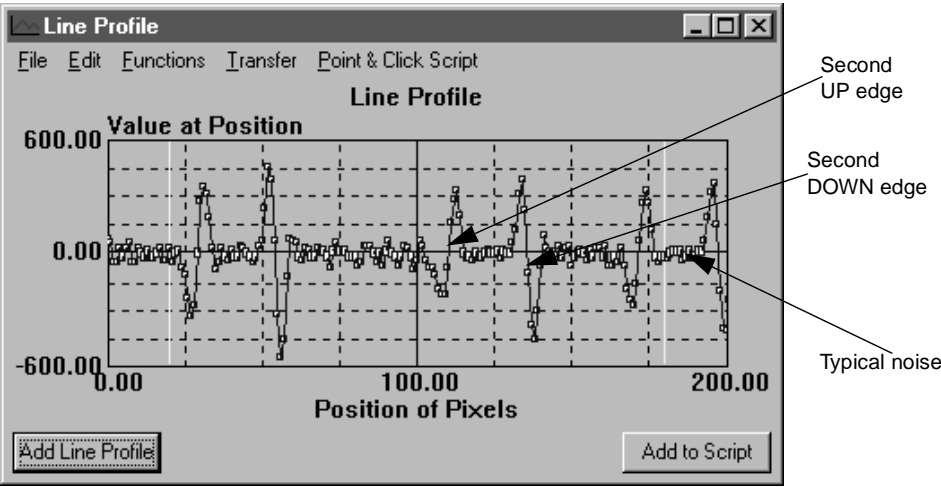


5. Open a Find Edges dialog box by selecting **Function | Show Edges Box**.
6. In the Find Edges dialog box, set the minimum measurement bar to the FIRST UP edge and the maximum measurement bar to the FIRST DOWN edge.
The Find Edges dialog box looks as follows:



7. Open a Distances dialog box by selecting **Function | Show Distance Box**.
8. Select a curve and click on or move the minimum and/or maximum measurement bars in the Line Profile display graph. Notice how the measurements in the Distances dialog box automatically update.
9. Select the line profile curve by clicking on it with the right mouse button.
The Line Profile display graph shows each point on the curve.
10. Take the second derivative of the line profile by selecting **Function | Take Derivative | Second**. Scale the graph by selecting **Function | Auto Scale**. Select **Edit | Axis Min/Max Values** and adjust the axis so that you can easily see the zero y-axis.

The Line Profile tool looks as follows:

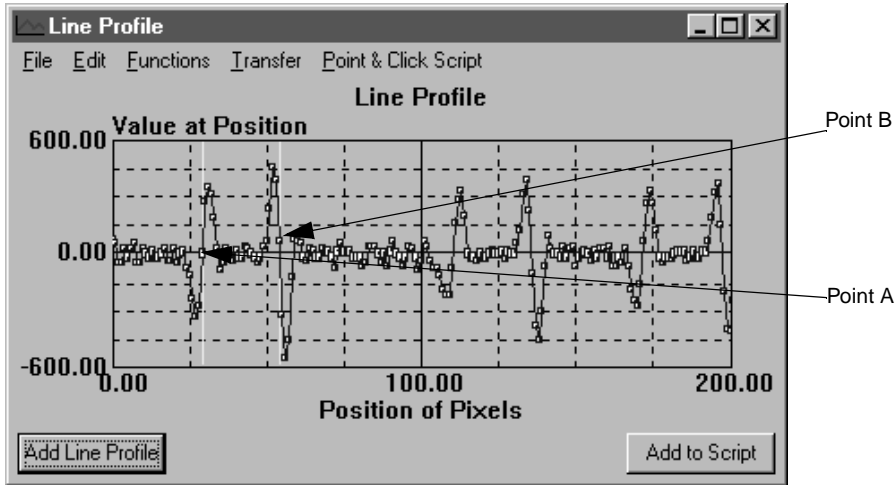


11. Visually inspect the Line Profile display graph to determine how to set the noise limits. In the Find Edges dialog box, set the high noise limit to 150.00 and the low noise limit to -150.00.
The Find Edges dialog box looks as follows:

The 'Find Edges' dialog box has a title bar with a close button. It contains three main sections: 'Static', 'Noise Limits', and 'Find Edges'. The 'Static' section has two checked checkboxes: 'Set MIN Measurement Bar to' with a value of '1' and a dropdown set to 'Up', and 'Set MAX Measurement Bar to' with a value of '1' and a dropdown set to 'Dn'. The 'Noise Limits' section has two input fields: 'High Noise Limit' set to '150.00000' and 'Low Noise Limit' set to '-150.00000'. The 'Find Edges' section has three buttons: 'Find First', 'Find Next', and 'Find Current'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

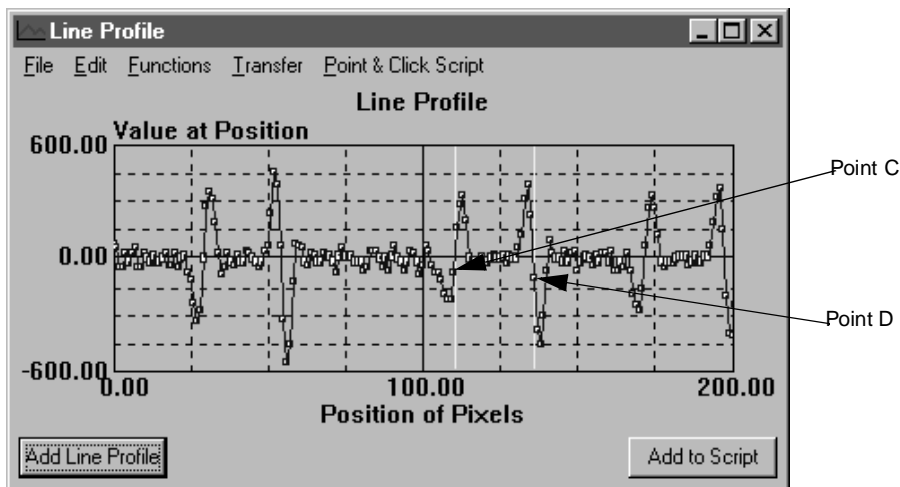
12. Click **Find First** in the Find Edges dialog box to locate the first UP edge and the first DOWN edge of the active ROI in the image Lines. The minimum and maximum measurement bars move to Points A and B on the graph, which are the edges of the first large black vertical line found in the image. The Distances dialog box automatically updates with the corresponding measurements.

The Line Profile tool looks as follows:



13. Click **Find Next** in the Find Edges dialog box to locate the next UP edge and the next DOWN edge of the active ROI in the image Lines. The minimum and maximum measurement bars move to Points C and D on the graph, which are the edges of the second large black vertical line found in the image. The Distances dialog box automatically updates with the corresponding measurements.

The Line Profile tool looks as follows:



14. Hold down the <Ctrl> key and click on various points in the Line Profile display graph with the left mouse button. Notice that the tool shows the exact location on the image Lines that the points correspond to.

Note: Do not use the <Ctrl> key and the right mouse button. If you do, the displayed curve is deleted.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Line Profile tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing scripting and selecting scripting options. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Line Profile tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Line Profile tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input image, the point & click script options, and the active line ROI. Click **Add Line Profile** to create the line profile and add it to the graph, then click **Add to Script** to record the operation in the Point & Click Script tool. To keep the Line Profile tool visible while running a point & click script, select **Point & Click Script | Never Hide Tool**.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Line Profile tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input image, the point & click script options, and the active line ROI. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Measurement Tool

Introduction.	310
Description of Measurement Tool Options.	312
Example of Using the Measurement Tool.	328
Point & Click Script	332

Introduction

The Measurement tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to perform measurement operations on objects (ROIs) in an image. Note that all measurements are taken from center of pixel to center of pixel.

By default, the tool returns results in pixels. If you apply a calibration object to your image, the tool returns results in the specified units of measurement, such as inches or degrees.

You can perform measurement operations on ROIs from up to three images captured from up to three cameras. This is useful if you require increased precision or if you cannot physically set up a single camera to capture your entire image. For example, you can focus one camera on a small component at one end of an object and another camera on a small component at the other end of the object, then measure the distance between the two components. Note that if you are using multiple cameras, you must attach a calibration object to each image you are using.

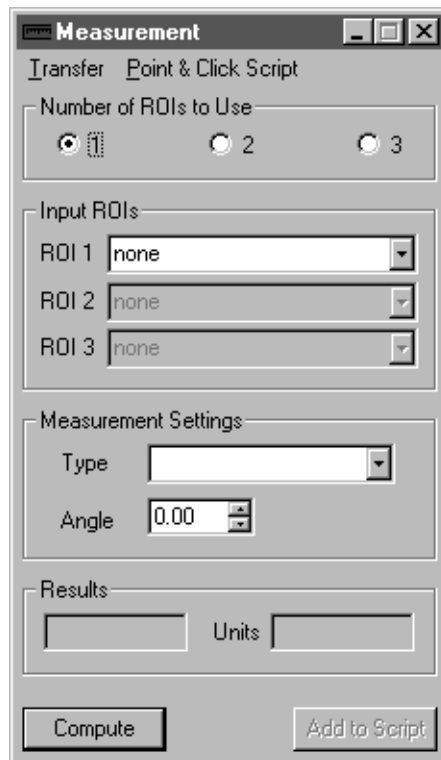



Figure 76: Measurement Tool

To open a Measurement tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Measurement** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Measurement tool is fully compatible with all tools, ROIs, and image types.

You can have up to 100 Measurement tools open at the same time.

Description of Measurement Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Measurement tool dialog box.

Transfer Menu Options



Figure 77: Measurement Tool - Transfer Menu

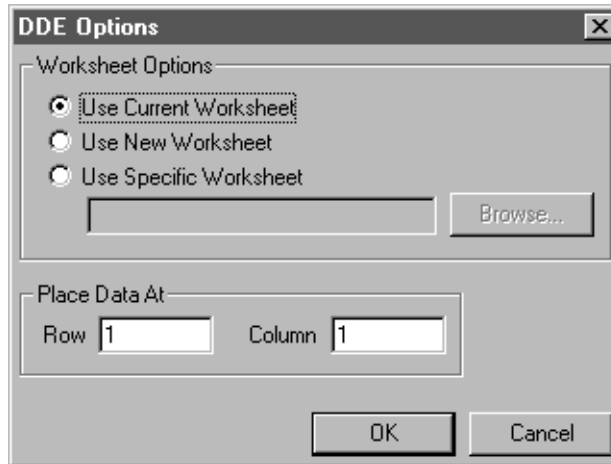
DDE Transfer

Note: It is recommended that you use the Export tool to send variables and/or images from GLI/2 to Excel. For more information, refer to [Chapter 11, “Using the Export Tool.”](#) The DDE options in the Measurement tool have been retained for backward compatibility.

The DDE Transfer option allows you to select the following options for sending measurement data to the spreadsheet program Excel:

- **Send Data to Excel** – Select this option to send all selected measurement data to Excel. Excel automatically opens and loads the data. You can then display the data in any supported format, such as charts, graphs, and spreadsheets.

- **Set DDE Options...** – Select this option to open the DDE Options dialog box.



Click the appropriate radio button to specify the Excel worksheet that you want to use. You can browse for a specific worksheet or enter the name manually. You can place your data at a specific row and/or column in the specified worksheet. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Note that GLI/2 assumes that you are using the English-language version of Excel. If you are using a different version of Excel, you must update the GLI.DEF file to indicate the language you are using. For more information, refer to [page 51](#).

Copy Data to Clipboard

Select this option to copy all selected measurement data to the clipboard. You can then paste from the clipboard to any supported program, such as Word or Notepad.

Write to Disk...

Select this option to write all selected measurement data to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the appropriate directory and enter the file name, then click **Save**. Note that if no measurement is displayed in the **Result** field, an error is returned.

Append to Disk

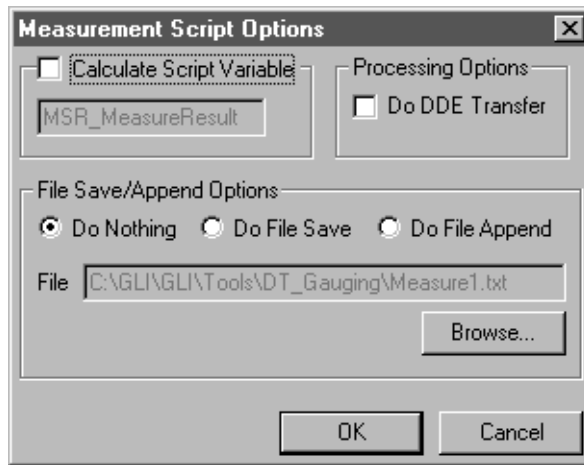
Select this option to add the selected measurement data to the end of the file that you saved using **Write to Disk**.

Point & Click Script Menu Options



Figure 78: Measurement Tool - Point & Click Script Menu

Select the **Options...** option to open the Measurement Script Options dialog box. When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.



Calculate Script Variable

Select this checkbox if you want the Measurement tool to put the result of the measurement operation into the specified point & click scripting variable. Note that if a measurement operation fails, the scripting variable is set to -1.

By default, the name of the scripting variable is MSR_MeasureResult. You can change the name by entering a new name in the text box.

Do DDE Transfer

Select this checkbox if you want to send the measurement result to the spreadsheet program Excel using the options in the DDE Options dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 313](#).

File Save/Append Options

Click one of the following radio buttons to specify how you want to save the calculations performed by the Measurement tool:

- **Do Nothing** – Click this radio button if you do not want to save calculations.
- **Do File Save** – Click this radio button if you want to save the calculations to a file. By default, the calculations are saved in the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, either enter the file name in the text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file.
- **Do File Append** – Click this radio button if you want to add the calculations to the end of a file. By default, the calculations are added to the file specified by **File**. If you want to use a different file, either enter the file name in the text box or use the **Browse** button to locate the file.

Main Dialog Box Options

Number of ROIs to Use

Click the appropriate radio button to indicate whether you want to take a measurement of a single ROI, take a measurement between two ROIs, or take a measurement among three ROIs. For example, you may want to measure the enclosed area of a single rectangle, you may want to measure the length of a line between the center points of two rectangles, or you may want to measure the angle between two line segments formed by three points.

Input ROIs

Select the appropriate ROIs from the drop-down lists. The drop-down lists contain any user-drawn ROIs in your image and any ROIs generated by other GLI/2 tools, such as the Edge Finder tool or the Blob Analysis tool.

You can also select the ROIs by clicking the appropriate **Number of ROIs to Use** radio button, then using the right mouse button to activate the ROIs in order.

Type

Select the type of measurement you want to take. The measurement types available from the drop-down list depend on the number of ROIs you are using and the particular types of ROI you are using. For example, if you select a single point ROI, you can measure the x-coordinate or the y-coordinate of the ROI. If you select two ROIs (ROI 1 is a point ROI and ROI 2 is a line ROI), you can measure the distance between the ROIs. If you select three point ROIs, you can measure the angle between the vectors that are formed by the ROIs.

Note that if the **Type** drop-down list is empty, no measurement operations using the selected ROIs are supported.

[Table 5](#) contains all supported measurement types, listed alphabetically, and a brief description of each type.

Table 5: Measurement Type s

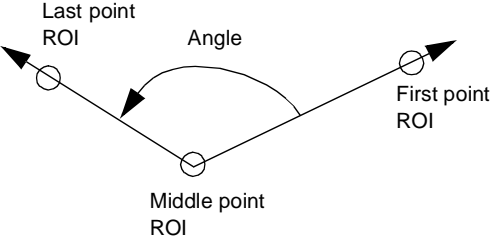
Measurement Type	Description
Angle at middle point	<p>The angle between two vectors formed by three point ROIs. The first vector points from the middle point ROI to the first point ROI; the second vector points from the middle point ROI to the last point ROI. The angle is formed by going in a counter-clockwise direction from the first vector to the second vector and can range from 0 to 360°.</p> 
Angle from x axis	The angle between the x-axis and a line ROI or between the x-axis and a line formed by two point ROIs.
Area	The area of an enclosed ROI.
Average distance	The average distance between two ROIs.
Blue average ^a	The average blue value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.
Blue value ^a	The blue value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

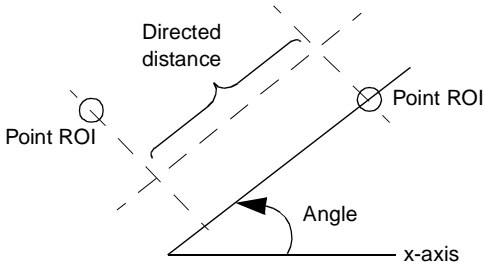
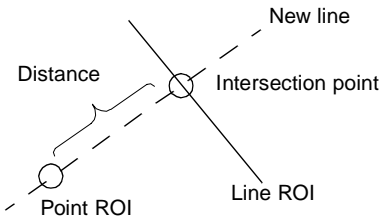
Measurement Type	Description
Directed distance	<p>To compute the directed distance between two point ROIs, the tool creates two parallel lines, both perpendicular to a line at the specified angle, and shifts both lines until each line crosses one of the point ROIs. The tool then creates a third line that is perpendicular to the two parallel lines. The directed distance is the distance between the two parallel lines.</p> 
Distance	<p>The distance between two point ROIs or between a point ROI and a line ROI. To compute the distance between a point ROI and a line ROI, the tool first creates a new line that passes through the point ROI and is perpendicular to the line ROI, extending the line ROI if necessary. The tool then calculates the distance between the point ROI and the intersection point between the line ROI and the new line.</p> 
Green average ^a	<p>The average green value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.</p>

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

Measurement Type	Description
Green value ^a	The green value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.
Gray average	The average grayscale value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.
Gray value	The grayscale value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.
Height	The height (the dimension with respect to the y-axis) of an ellipse or rectangle ROI. For a line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, the tool returns the height of the bounding box that encompasses the ROI.
Hue average ^b	The average hue value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.
Hue value ^b	The hue value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.
Intersection angle	The smaller of the two angles formed by the intersection of two line ROIs. The value can range from 0° to 90°.
Line length	The distance between the end points of a line ROI.
Luminance average ^b	The average luminance value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.
Luminance value ^b	The luminance value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

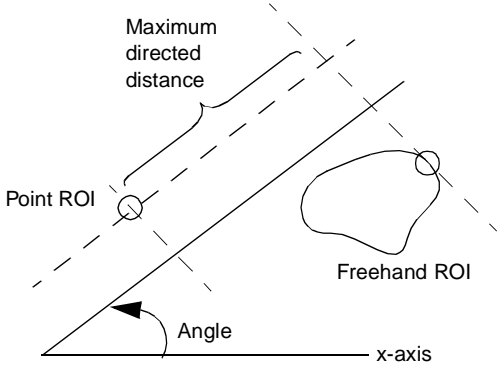
Measurement Type	Description
Maximum directed distance	<p>The maximum directed distance between two points, each on a different freehand ROI, or the maximum directed distance between a point ROI and a point on a freehand ROI. For more information, refer to the description of directed distance.</p> 
Maximum distance	<p>The distance between two points, each on a different ROI, that are farthest apart from each other.</p>

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

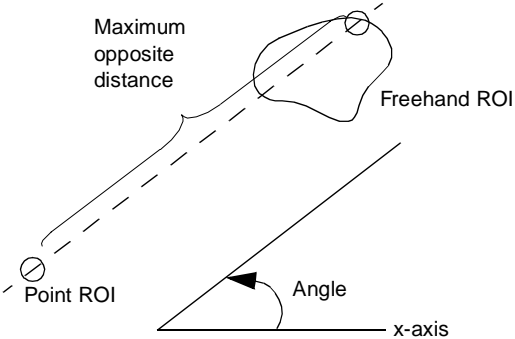
Measurement Type	Description
Maximum opposite distance ^c	<p>To compute the maximum opposite distance between two points, each on a different freehand ROI, or between a point ROI and a point on a freehand ROI, the tool creates a series of lines that are parallel to the specified angle and that cross both ROIs. The tool measures the distance between the intersection points on each line and then returns the maximum distance.</p> 

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

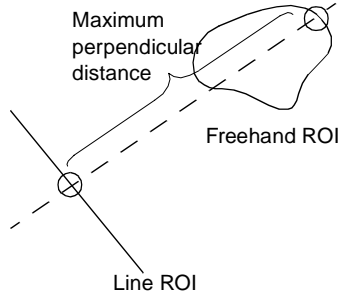
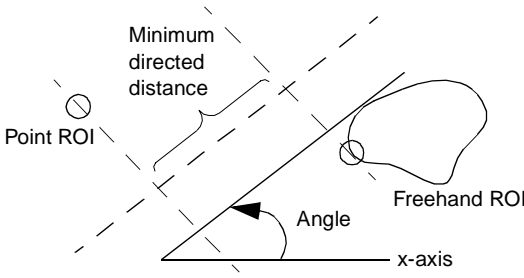
Measurement Type	Description
Maximum perpendicular distance	<p>To compute the maximum perpendicular distance between a line ROI and an ellipse ROI or between a line ROI and a freehand ROI, the tool creates a series of lines that are perpendicular to the line ROI and that cross the ellipse or freehand ROI. The tool measures the distance between the intersection points on each line and then returns the maximum distance.</p> 
Minimum directed distance	<p>The minimum directed distance between two points, each on a different freehand ROI, or the minimum directed distance between a point ROI and a point on a freehand ROI. For more information, refer to the description of directed distance.</p> 
Minimum distance	<p>The distance between two points, each on a different ROI, that are closest to each other.</p>

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

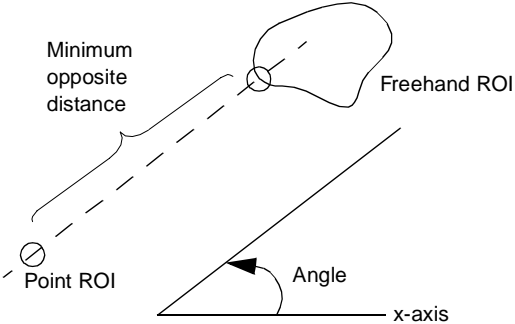
Measurement Type	Description
Minimum opposite distance ^c	<p>To compute the minimum opposite distance between two points, each on a different freehand ROI, or between a point ROI and a point ROI and a point on a freehand ROI, the tool creates a series of lines that are parallel to the specified angle and that cross both ROIs. The tool measures the distance between the intersection points on each line and then returns the minimum distance.</p> 

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

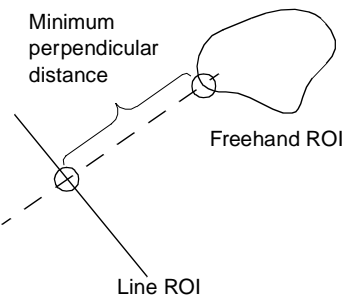
Measurement Type	Description
Minimum perpendicular distance	<p>To compute the minimum perpendicular distance between a line ROI and an ellipse ROI or between a line ROI and a freehand ROI, the tool creates a series of lines that are perpendicular to the line ROI and that cross the ellipse or freehand ROI. The tool measures the distance between the intersection points on each line and then returns the minimum distance.</p> 
Perimeter	The perimeter of an enclosed ROI.
Red average ^a	The average red value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.
Red value ^a	The red value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.
Roundness	<p>The degree of roundness of an enclosed ROI. The result of the measurement operation is less than or equal to 1, where a value of 1 indicates that the ROI is perfectly circular. The tool uses the following formula:</p> $\text{Roundness} = \frac{4 \times \pi \times \text{Area}}{\text{Perimeter}^2}$
Saturation average ^b	The average saturation value of all pixels underneath a line ROI or within an enclosed ROI. Note that point ROIs are not supported.

Table 5: Measurement Types (cont.)

Measurement Type	Description
Saturation value ^b	The saturation value of the pixel underneath a point ROI.
Width	The width (the dimension with respect to the x-axis) of an ellipse or rectangle ROI. For a line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, the tool returns the height of the bounding box that encompasses the ROI.
x coordinate	The x-axis coordinate of a point ROI.
x intersection	The x-axis coordinate of the point at which two line ROIs intersect.
y coordinate	The y-axis coordinate of a point ROI.
y intersection	The y-axis coordinate of the point at which two line ROIs intersect.

- a. Available for 24-bit RGB color images only.
- b. Available for 24-bit HSL color images only.
- c. If the two ROIs are situated so that they cannot cross the same parallel line, the tool cannot perform the measurement and returns **Failed** in the **Result** field.

Angle

Specify the angle that you want to use for directed distance, minimum directed distance, maximum directed distance, minimum opposite distance, and maximum opposite distance measurement operations. Enter the value in the text box or use the up and down arrows to adjust the value.

Results

This field displays the results of the measurement operation, in the specified units of measure.

Note that all measurements are taken from center of pixel to center of pixel.

Units

After you click **Compute**, this field displays the units of measure. By default, the units of measure are pixels. If you have a calibration object attached to your image, the displayed values are in the calibrated units of measure, such as inches or millimeters. For more information about calibration objects, refer to [Chapter 6, “Using the Calibration Tool.”](#)

Note that if the default units of measure (pixels) or the calibrated units of measure are not appropriate to the measurement type you are using, the tool uses the appropriate unit of measure instead. For example, if your calibrated units of measure are inches and you are measuring an angle, the tool returns the measurement result in degrees.

Compute

Click this button to perform the measurement operation.

Add to Script

After you perform the measurement operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Measurement Tool

This example shows how to use the Measurement tool with the Edge Finder tool to find the minimum distance between two objects (Object A and Object B) in the image Lines, shown in [Figure 79](#). For more information about the Edge Finder tool, refer to [Chapter 10](#), “Using the Edge Finder Tool.”

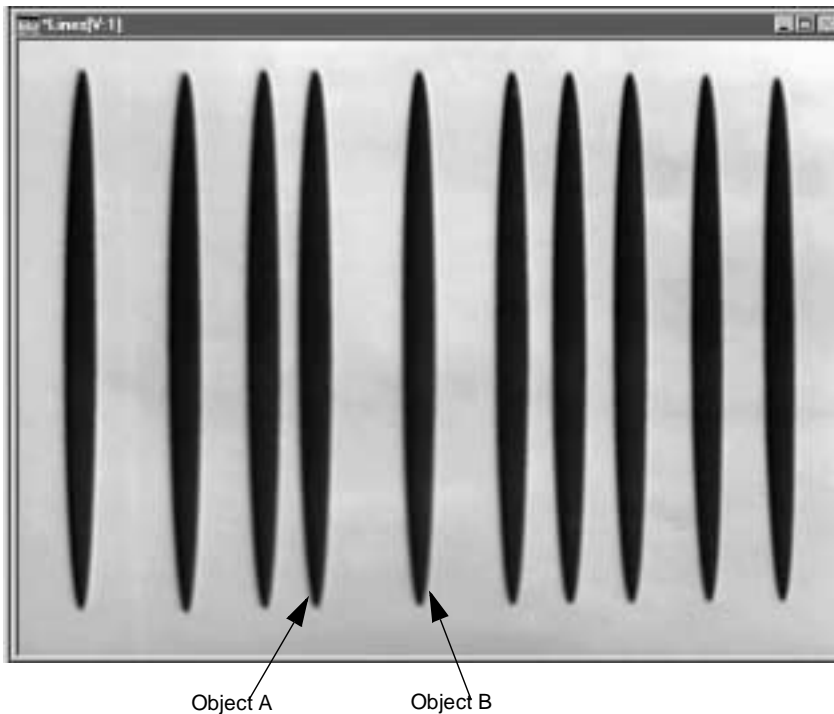
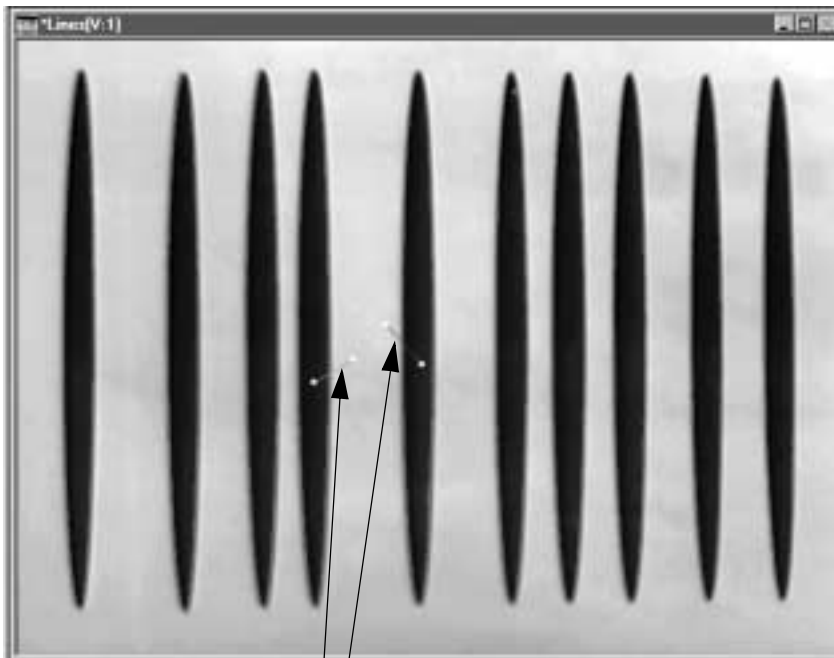


Figure 79: Measurement Tool Example Image

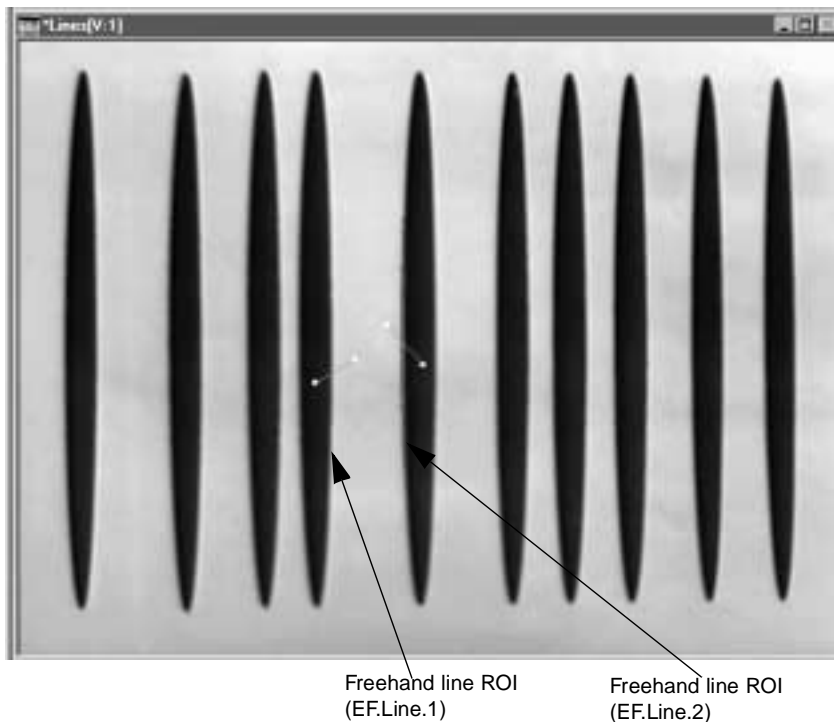
The operation is as follows:

1. Open the image Lines.
2. Open an Edge Finder tool (if one is not already open).
3. In the Edge Finder tool, select the **Activate threshold controls** checkbox and then set the **Maximum** value to 120 and the **Minimum** value to 50.
4. Draw a line ROI through the edge of Object A and another line ROI through the edge of Object B.
*The image looks as follows. The names of the ROI are listed in the **Input ROI** drop-down list in the Edge Finder tool (Line.1 and Line.2).*



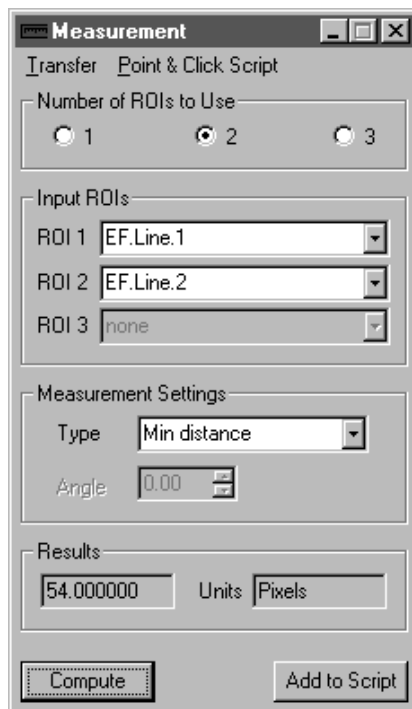
Line ROIs
(Line.1 and Line.2)

5. Select **White** from the **Object Color** drop-down list to generate the edges within the white pixels.
6. Enter **100** in the **Search Radius** text box to generate a freehand line ROI that is 201 pixels long.
7. Activate (red) Line.1 by clicking it with the right mouse button, then click **Find Edge** to extract the edge and generate a freehand line ROI named EF.Line.1.
8. Activate (red) Line.2 by clicking it with the right mouse button, then click **Find Edge** to extract the edge and generate a freehand line ROI named EF.Line.2.
9. Toggle the **Switch search direction checkbox**, if necessary, to ensure that the edges are on the outside of the objects.
The image looks as follows.



10. Open a Measurement tool (if one is not already open).
11. Click **2** to specify that you want to use two ROIs in your measurement operation.
12. Select **EF.Line.1** from the **ROI 1** drop-down list and **EF.Line.2** from the **ROI 2** drop-down list.
13. Select **Min distance** from the **Type** drop-down list, then click **Compute**.

*The distance is displayed in the **Results** field.*



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Measurement tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add a Measurement tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Measurement tool to perform the desired function. This includes the names of the ROIs that you are using and the measurement type. Click **Compute** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Measurement tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the names of the ROIs you are using and the measurement type. The **Add to Script** button is changed to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Morphology Tool


Introduction.	334
Description of Morphology Tool Options.	336
Example of Using the Morphology Tool.	340
Point & Click Script	343

Introduction

The Morphology tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to perform the following morphological operations on binary images:

- **Erosion** – Erodes a foreground object by removing pixels touching the background. This tends to shrink and smooth foreground particles.
- **Dilation** – Dilates a foreground object by adding onto pixels touching the background. This tends to grow particles and fill small holes in foreground particles. It is the opposite of Erosion.
- **Opening** – Performs an erosion followed by a dilation. This opens up spaces between particles touching one another.
- **Closing** – Performs a dilation followed by an erosion. This tends to join touching particles and fills small holes in foreground particles. It is the opposite of Opening.
- **Skeletonization** – Finds a line replica of the particle.
- **Watershed** – Separates touching or overlapping particles.

For a detailed description of the morphological operations, refer to the literature on morphological image processing, such as the text *An Introduction to Morphological Image Processing* by Edward R. Dougherty, SPIE Press 1992.

To open a Morphology tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Morphology** from the Tools menu.

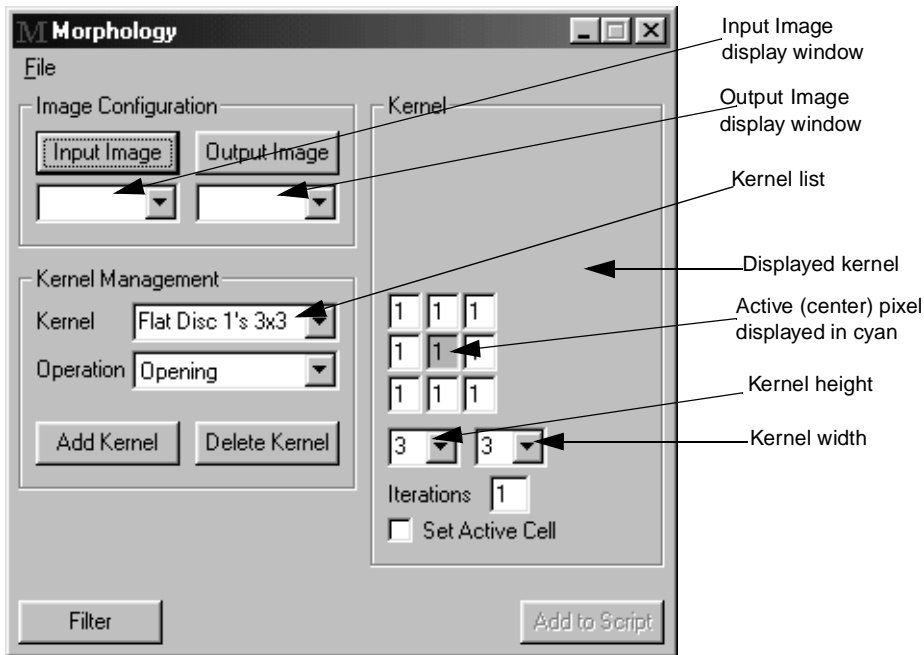


Figure 80: Morphology Tool

Notes: The Morphology tool is fully compatible with all tools and all ROI types. It works only with GLI/2 binary images. To open a binary image, click **Options | Image Type | Grayscale | Binary Image** from the main application. You can also use the Threshold tool to create a binary image.

All operations are performed with respect to the active ROI of the input image. If no active ROI is present, the whole image is used.

You can have up to 100 Morphology tools open at the same time.

Description of Morphology Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Morphology tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

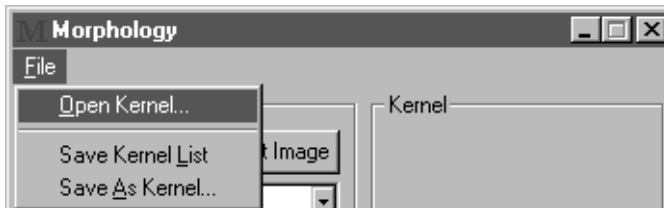


Figure 81: Morphology Tool - File Menu

Open Kernel...

Select this option to open stored kernel information from disk and add it to the kernel list. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a kernel (the file name must be followed by the extension .ker), the object is loaded into the Morphology tool.

Save Kernel List

Select this option to save the kernel list to disk. All opened Morphology tools use this list.

Save As Kernel...

Select this option to save the current kernel displayed in the kernel list to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension .ker.

Dialog Box Options

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the **Input Image** display window. You can also select the input image from the display window drop-down list.

The input image must be a binary image. A binary image is an image with all pixel values set to either 1 (foreground/black) or 0 (background/white). You can use the Threshold tool to create a binary image.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the **Output Image** display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Morphology tool automatically creates an output image for you. Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Kernel List

Select the kernel (structuring element) that you want to use. This option is valid only for Erosion, Dilation, Opening, and Closing operations.

Operation

Select the morphological operation you want to perform on the input image. For Erosion, Dilation, Opening, and Closing operations, the current kernel is displayed in the displayed kernel area on the tool.

Add Kernel

If you created your own custom kernel in the displayed kernel area, enter a name for the kernel by overwriting one of the kernel names in the kernel list, then click this button to add the kernel to the kernel list.

Delete Kernel

Click this button to delete the current kernel from the kernel list.

Displayed Kernel

For Erosion, Dilation, Opening, and Closing operations, the kernel is displayed in this area. You can change the values of the cells to create a custom kernel, if desired. The only values that you can enter in the cells are the following:

- **1** = Foreground
- **0** = Background
- **X** = Don't Care

Active (Center) Pixel

The active pixel, which is usually the center pixel, is the pixel in which the operation output is placed. The operation is performed with respect to the active pixel; it is not always performed with respect to the center pixel. You can select a new active pixel for the convolution by selecting the **Set Active Cell** checkbox and then clicking on the cell that you want to be the active cell. The active pixel is denoted in cyan (light blue).

Note that the active pixel is also referred to as the origin of the structuring element.

Kernel Height

Specify the height of the displayed kernel.

Kernel Width

Specify the width of the displayed kernel.

Iterations

Specify the number of iterations you want to perform. This option is valid only for Erosion, Dilation, Opening, and Closing operations.

Set Active Cell

Select this checkbox if you want to select a new active pixel for the convolution. Then, click the appropriate cell in the kernel. The active pixel is denoted in cyan (light blue).

Filter

When all options for the tool are set appropriately, click this button to perform the operation.

Add to Script

After you perform the operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

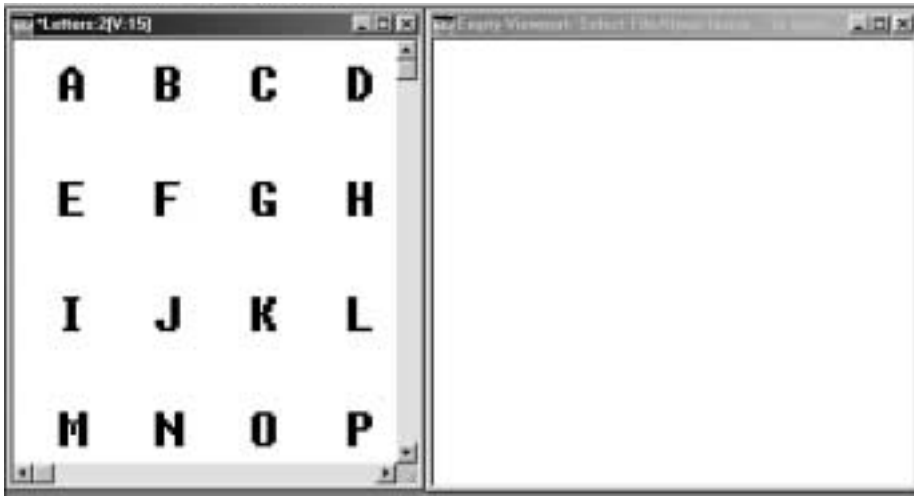
Example of Using the Morphology Tool

This example shows how to use the Morphology tool to run the morphological operation Dilation on the binary image Letters.

The operation is as follows:

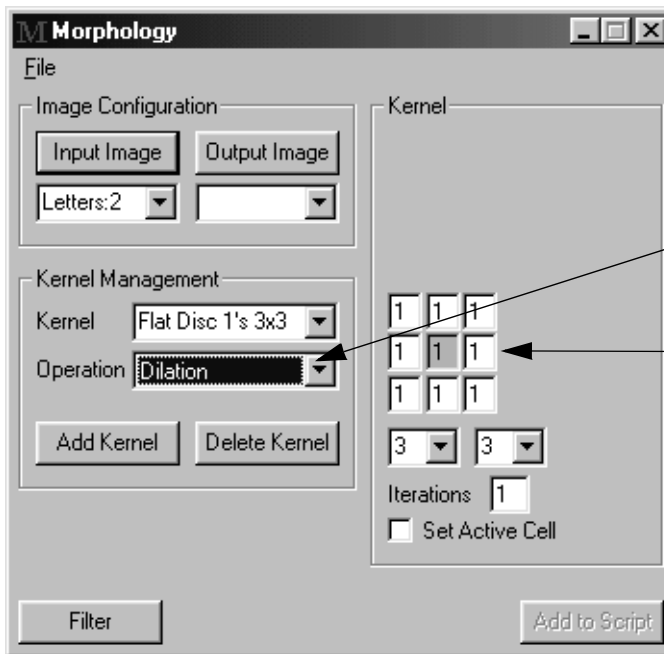
1. Open a Morphology tool (if one is not already open).
2. Activate the binary image Letters by clicking in it with the left mouse button.

The result is as follows:



3. Set Letters as the input image by clicking **Input Image**.
4. You can select an output image or you can let the Morphology tool create an output image for you. For this example, the tool automatically creates the output image.
5. Select **Dilation** from the operation drop-down list.

The Morphology tool looks as follows:

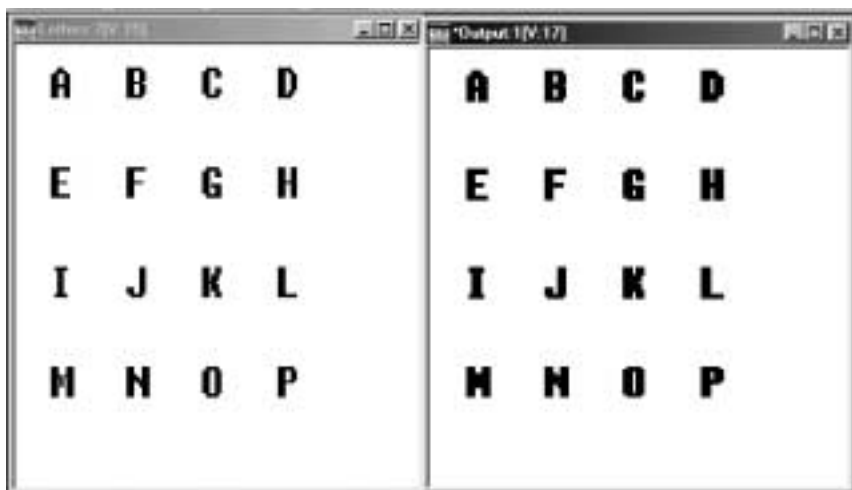


Select the Dilation operation.

This operation is using a 3x3 flat kernel (structuring element).

6. Perform the operation by clicking **Filter**.

The output image shows that the letters have been dilated, as follows:



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Morphology tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

20

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Morphology tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Morphology tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input and output images, the morphological operation, and the active ROI (if you are using one). Click **Filter** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Morphology tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input and output images, the morphological operation, and the active ROI (if an ROI was used). The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired option(s) and click **Update Script**. The script item is performed and saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Picture Tool

Introduction.....	346
Description of Picture Tool Options	348
Example of Using the Picture Tool.	358
Point & Click Script	359

Introduction

The Picture tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to acquire images using a frame grabber board. You can use the Picture tool with any frame grabber board, as long as you have loaded the appropriate plug-in from the manufacturer. The plug-in allows you to specify settings for your device, such as the video signal type, the pixel clock, and the input look-up table you are using.

GLI/2 is shipped with the plug-in for DataTranslation frame grabber boards, such as the DT3153 and the DT3157. For information on obtaining the plug-in for another device, contact the manufacturer.

To open a Picture tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Picture Tool** from the Tools menu.

Notes: Only options that are supported by your particular frame grabber board are available. If an option is not supported by your board, it is grayed out.

You can have only one Picture tool open at a time.

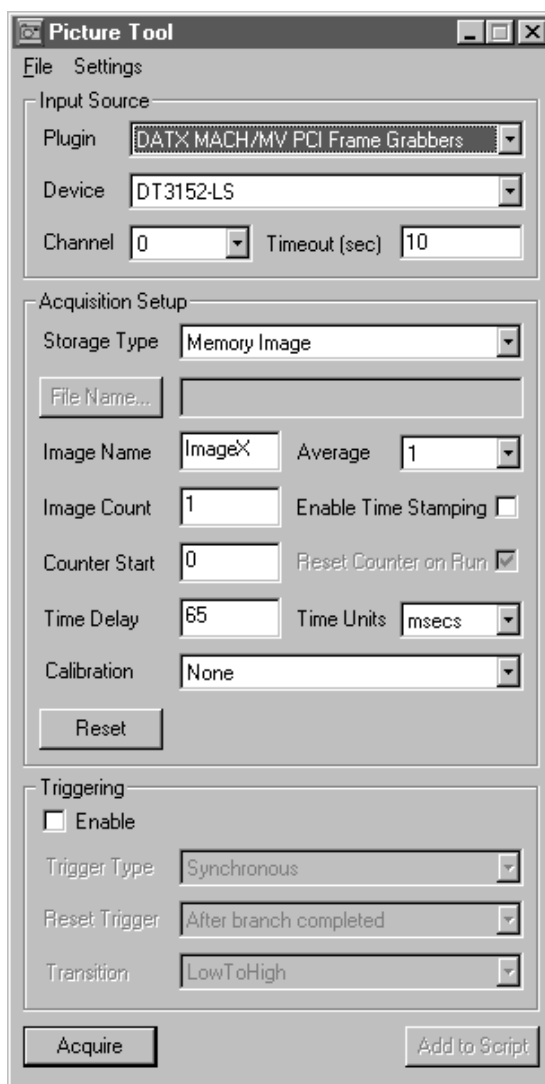


Figure 82: PictureTool

Description of Picture Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Picture tool dialog box.

Note: Before you can use any of the Picture tool options, you must select a plug-in from the **Plugin** drop-down list and a device from the **Device** drop-down list.

If only one plug-in is installed in your system, the Picture tool automatically opens it. If only one device is supported by the plug-in, the Picture tool automatically opens it.

File Menu Options

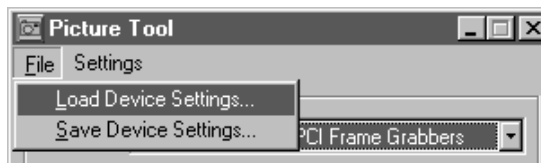


Figure 83: PictureTool - File Menu

Load Device Settings

Select this option if you want to set up your device using the settings in an existing settings file. A Load Device Settings dialog box is displayed. Locate the appropriate file (with the appropriate extension), then click **Open**. Note that the extension varies depending on your device.

Save Device Settings

Select this option to save the current device settings to disk. A Save Device Settings dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the appropriate extension, then click **Save**. Note that the extension varies depending on your device.

Settings Menu Options

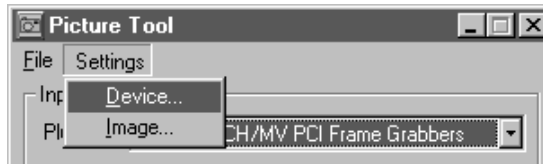


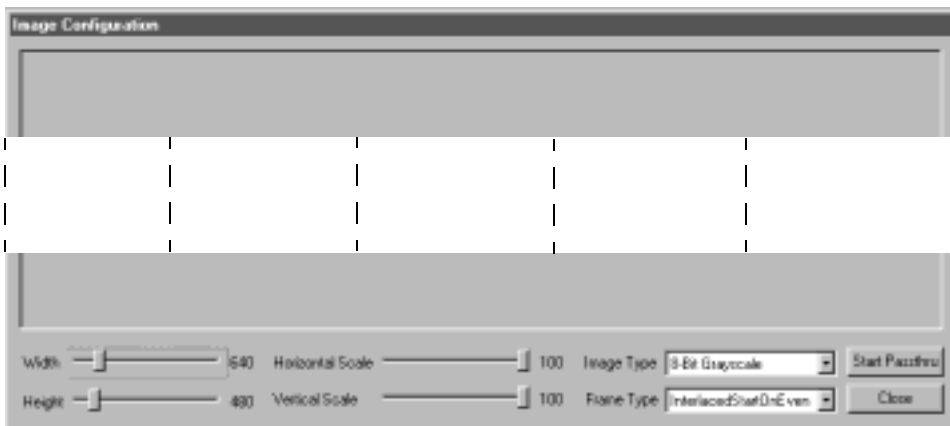
Figure 84: Picture Tool - Settings Menu

Device

Select this option to open the plug-in software used to set up the currently open device. For example, if you are using a Data Translation frame grabber board, the Device Properties tabs are displayed. For more information on setting up your device, refer to the documentation provided with your plug-in. If you are using a Data Translation frame grabber board, click the **Help** button in the lower-right corner of each Device Properties tab.

Image

Select this option to specify how the Picture tool acquires images. The Image Configuration dialog box is displayed.



You can set the following options:

- **Width** – Use the slider control to specify the number of pixels to digitize in each line of an image. You can also use the arrow keys to fine-tune the value. If you are scaling the image, enter the number of pixels in the original image, not the number of pixels in the scaled image.
- **Height** – Use the slider control to specify the number of lines in an image to digitize. You can also use the arrow keys to fine-tune the value. If you are scaling the image, enter the number of lines in the original image, not the number of lines in the scaled image.

Note: The values you set for width and height are limited by the maximum number of pixels per image (height x width) supported by your device and by the capabilities of your camera. In addition, the values you set must be consistent with the values set in the plug-in software for width (active line count) and height (active pixel count).

- **Horizontal Scale** – Use the slider control to specify the percentage that you want to scale each image horizontally. You can also use the arrow keys to fine-tune the value.
- **Vertical Scale** – Use the slider control to specify the percentage that you want to scale each image vertically. You can also use the arrow keys to fine-tune the value.
- **Image Type** – Select the type of image to acquire from the drop-down list (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, floating-point, RGB color, or HSL color).
- **Frame Type** – Select the type of frames/fields to acquire from the drop-down list. The following types are supported:
 - *EvenField* – Acquire even fields only from an interlaced frame, starting with the next even field.
 - *InterlacedStartOnEven* – Acquire interlaced frames, starting with the next even field.
 - *InterlacedStartOnNext* – Acquire interlaced frames, starting with the next field of either kind.
 - *InterlacedStartOnOdd* – Acquire interlaced frames, starting with the next odd field.
 - *NextField* – Acquire fields of either kind from an interlaced frame, starting with the next field of either kind.
 - *NonInterlaced* – Acquire noninterlaced frames.
 - *OddField* – Acquire odd fields only from an interlaced frame, starting with the next odd field.

After you specify the appropriate values, click **Start Passthru** to start a passthru operation. The tool displays the acquired images in the center of the Image Configuration window. If the images are not clear, click **Stop Passthru** to stop the passthru operation, then focus or reposition your camera or adjust the other Image Configuration settings appropriately. When you are satisfied that your settings are correct, click **Stop Passthru** again, then click **Close** to accept the settings and close the Image Configuration dialog box.

Note: The settings and ranges available in the Image Configuration dialog box vary depending on your device.

Dialog Box Options

Plugin

Select the plug-in that is associated with your device. The Data Translation plug-in (DATX Mach/MV PCI Frame Grabbers) is shipped with GLI/2.

Device

Select the device that you want to use. The drop-down list contains all the devices installed in your system that are supported by the plug-in.

Channel

Select the video input source (channel) that is acquiring images from the drop-down list.

Timeout

Enter the timeout period, in seconds. The timeout period is the length of time that GLI/2 waits for the operation to complete before generating a timeout error and terminating the operation.

Storage Type

Select one of the following options to specify how to store the acquired images:

- **Memory Image** – The images are stored in random access memory (RAM) and are accessible by GLI/2. You can display them in a viewport, or you can manage them using the Image Manager tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 15, “Using the Image Manager Tool.”](#) The images are named using the base **Image Name** and the appropriate suffix.
- **Bitmap File** – Each acquired image is stored in a separate .BMP file on disk. Click the **Folder** button, locate the directory in which to store the files in the Browse for Folder dialog box, then click **OK**. The images are named using the base **Image Name** and the appropriate suffix.
- **AVI File (Direct To Disk)** – Multiple images are acquired into RAM. After each image is acquired, it is saved into a single .AVI file on disk. Click the **File Name** button, enter a file name in the Output AVI File dialog box, then click **Save**.
- **AVI File (To Disk Via Memory)** – Multiple images are acquired into RAM. After the number of images specified by **Image Count** have been acquired, they are saved into a single .AVI file on disk. Click the **File Name** button, enter a file name in the Output AVI File dialog box, then click **Save**.

This method is faster than the **AVI File (Direct To Disk)** method; however, the maximum number of images in the .AVI file depends on the RAM memory available.

Note that the **AVI File (Direct To Disk)** and **AVI File (To Disk Via Memory)** options are supported only for 8-bit color, 16-bit color, and 24-bit color .AVI video files, where 24-bit color AVI frames are imported as 24-bit RGB or HSL color images, 16-bit color AVI frames are converted to 24-bit RGB or HSL color images, and 8-bit color AVI frames are imported as 8-bit grayscale images.

Image Name

Enter the name that you want the Picture tool to give to the acquired images. This name is used as the base name for the image. If **Image Count** is greater than 1, the number specified by **Counter Start** is appended to **Image Name** and then incremented with each new image you acquire. This allows you to acquire several images in sequence.

This option is used for memory images and .BMP files only.

Image Count

Enter the number of images that you want to acquire. Note that the maximum number of images that you can acquire depends on the image size and on the RAM memory or disk space available.

Average

Select the number of acquired images (1 to 9) to average together to create a single image. For example, if **Average** = 3, a single image is created for every three acquired images. If **Average** = 1, no averaging is performed. Note that the higher the value, the longer it takes to acquire images and the less accurate the images are.

Counter Start

Specify the number to append to the first acquired image. This number is then incremented with each new image you acquire.

This option is used for memory images and .BMP files only.

Enable Time Stamping

Select this checkbox if you want the date and time of acquisition marked on the lower left corner of each acquired image. Clear this checkbox if you do not want the date and time of acquisition marked on the images.

Reset Counter on Run

Select this checkbox if you want to append the number specified by **Counter Start** to the first acquired image each time you click **Acquire**. Images with the same name are overwritten.

Clear this checkbox if you want to append the next available number to the first acquired image each time you click **Acquire**. This is useful if you are saving multiple images to disk and want to ensure that each image has a unique name.

Time Delay

Enter the time delay between each image acquisition, in the measurement units specified by **Time Units**. To disable the time delay, set **Time Delay** to 0.

Time Units

Select the measurement unit to use for the **Time Delay** (milliseconds, seconds, minutes, or hours).

Calibration

Select the calibration object that you want to attach to every image taken with the Picture tool. The drop-down list contains all the calibration objects in the system (as listed in the Calibration tool). To add a calibration object to the list, refer to [Chapter 6, “Using the Calibration Tool.”](#)

If you do not want to use a calibration object, select **None**.

Reset

Click this button to return all Acquisition Setup options to their default state.

Triggering

Select the **Enable** checkbox if you want to use an external trigger to determine when to execute point & click script items that are nested beneath a Picture tool script item.

Use the **Trigger Type** option to specify how to execute the point & click script. Select one of the following:

- **Synchronous** – When the Point & Click Script tool reaches a Picture tool script item in the point & click script, the tool waits until the trigger event occurs and then continues with the execution of the rest of the script.
- **Asynchronous** – If a trigger event has occurred when the Point & Click Script tool reaches a Picture tool script item in the point & click script, the tool executes the nested script items and then continues with the execution of the rest of the script. If a trigger event has not occurred, the tool continues with the execution of the rest of the script without executing the nested script items. This option allows you to perform other operations while waiting for a trigger event to occur.

Use the **Reset Trigger** option to specify when to reset an asynchronous trigger. Select one of the following:

- **Immediately** – The Point & Click Script tool resets the trigger immediately, before executing the nested script items.
- **After branch completed** – The Point & Click Script tool resets the trigger after the nested script items under each Picture tool script item are executed.
- **After all branches completed** – The Point & Click Script tool resets the trigger after the nested script items under all the Picture tool script items are executed. This option is useful when you are using multiple Picture tools to acquire images from multiple cameras.

Use the **Transition** option to specify which edge of the external trigger signal causes a trigger event to occur. Select **HighToLow** to trigger on a falling edge. Select **LowToHigh** to trigger on a rising edge.

Acquire

Click this button to acquire an image or images. The images are averaged according to the value specified for **Average** and are stored in the format specified by **Output Format**.

Add to Script

After you acquire an image or images, click this button to record the operation in a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Picture Tool

This example shows how to use the Picture tool to acquire four images.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Picture tool (if it is not already open).
2. Select the appropriate plug-in from the **Plugin** drop-down list and select the device you want to use from the **Device** drop-down list.
The options in the Picture tool that are supported by your device become available.
3. Select **Image** from the Settings menu to open the Image Configuration dialog box.
4. Click **Start Passthru**.
The tool starts displaying images in the Image Configuration window.
5. Click **Stop Passthru**, then change the image size to a width of 100 pixels and a height of 100 pixels.
6. Click **Start Passthru** again.
The 100-pixel by 100-pixel image appears in the Image Configuration window.
7. Click **Stop Passthru**, then click **Close**.
8. Select **Device** from the Settings menu to open the plug-in software. Adjust the image as necessary using the device settings, such as white and black levels and input LUT.
9. Enter the name MyPict in the **Image Name** text box, set **Image Count** to 4, set **Average** to 1, and set **Counter Start** to zero.
10. Click **Acquire**.
Four images, named MyPict0, MyPict1, MyPict2, and MyPict3, are stored in RAM and are listed in the list of images in memory in the Image Manager tool.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Picture tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script.

Each time you run a point & click script, the Picture tool overwrites the current images; it does not keep making new images. If the images do not exist in the system, they are created.

21

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Picture tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Picture tool to perform the desired function. This includes the name of the image and the device settings. Click **Acquire** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Picture tool is set up exactly as it is when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the name of the image and the device settings. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is performed and saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Pixel Change Tool

Introduction.....	362
Description of Pixel Change Tool Options	363
Example of Using the Pixel Change Tool	365
Point & Click Script	367

Introduction

The Pixel Change tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It sets the values of pixels in the active ROI to the specified value for the active image or its overlay. The Pixel Change tool allows you to create overlays and change their color.

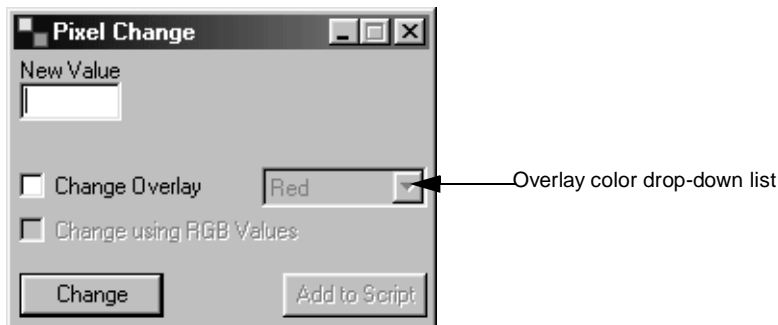



Figure 85: Pixel Change Tool

To open a Pixel Change tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Pixel Change** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Pixel Change tool is fully compatible with all tools and ROIs. It works with all grayscale images and with 24-bit RGB color images. At the present time, 24-bit HSL color images are not supported. The Pixel Change tool always works on the image in the active viewport.

You can have up to 100 Pixel Change tools open at the same time.

Description of Pixel Change Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Pixel Change tool dialog box.

New Value / New RGB Values

Enter the new value(s) that you want to set all pixels inside the active ROI in the image in the active viewport to.

Note that if the **Change using RGB Values** checkbox is selected, you can change the pixel values of the red, green, and blue color planes in an RGB color image individually.

Change Overlay

Select this checkbox if you want to create an overlay or change the overlay color in an image. Select the overlay color from the overlay color drop-down list.

The overlay color is used in conjunction with the color specified in the **New Value / New RGB Values** text box to set the color of all pixels inside the active ROI in the image in the active viewport. To remove the overlay color, select **Clear** from the overlay color drop-down list.

Change using RGB Values

Select this checkbox if you want to change the pixel values of the red, green, and blue color planes in an RGB color image individually. Enter the new pixel values in the **New RGB Values** text boxes. All pixels inside the active ROI in the active viewport are set to these values.

Change

Click this button to set all the pixels inside the active ROI in the active viewport to the new value(s).

Add to Script

After you perform the pixel change operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Pixel Change Tool

This example shows how to set all the pixels inside an ellipse ROI to a value of 100 for the image Lines, shown in [Figure 86](#).

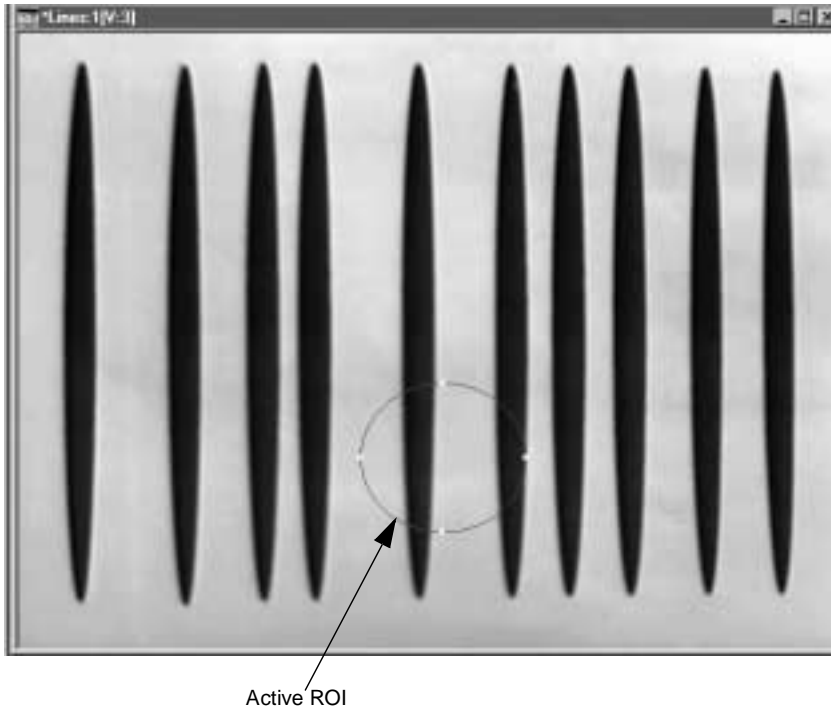


Figure 86: Pixel Change Tool Example Image

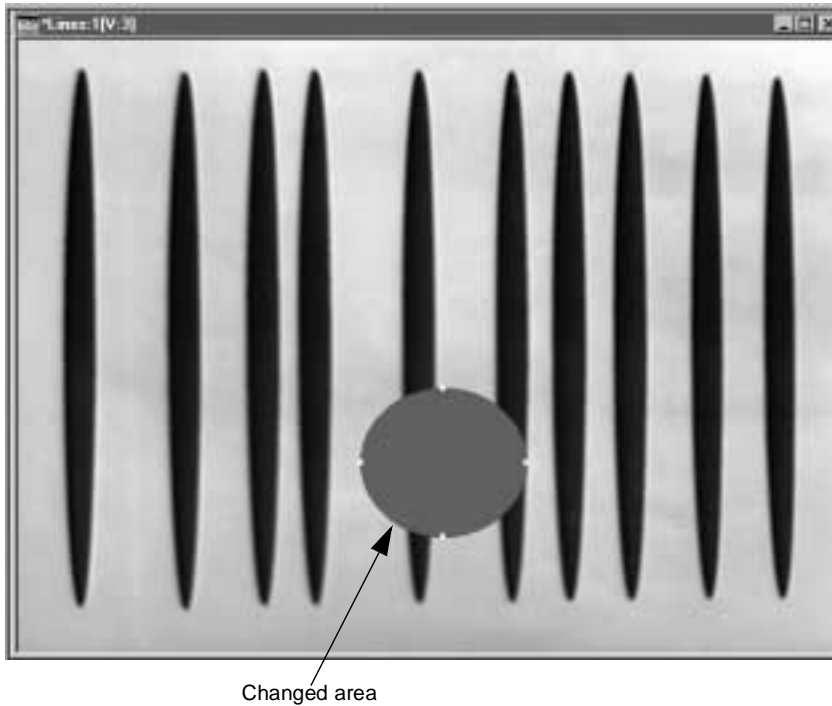
The operation is as follows:

1. Activate the image Lines by clicking in it with the left mouse button.
2. Open a Pixel Change tool (if one is not already open).

3. Set **New Value** to 100.

4. Click **Change**.

All pixels inside the active ROI in the image Lines have a value of 100, as follows:



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Pixel Change tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Pixel Change tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the Pixel Change tool to perform the desired function. This includes the new value, the overlay color, and the active ROI. Click **Change** to perform the desired operation, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

22

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Pixel Change tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the new value, the overlay color, and the active ROI. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Point & Click Script Tool

Introduction.....	370
Description of Point & Click Script Tool Options	374
Example of Using the Point & Click Script Tool	393

Introduction

The Point & Click Script tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to perform scripting operations using an easy-to-use point & click / drag-and-drop interface.

The Point & Click Script provides the following functionality:

- If-Then branching conditions
- For-Next loops
- While loops
- Do-While loops
- Assign statements
- Error branching
- Time delays
- Halting mechanism
- Short user-defined description of script item's functionality; the tools automatically fill in the descriptions when recording the script
- Long user-defined description of script item's functionality; the tools automatically fill in the descriptions when recording the script
- Auto-run mechanism
- Failure descriptions
- Debugging information
- Scripting variables
- Drag-and-drop movement of script items
- Step, run, and editing of all script items
- Save and restore options

- Failure options
- Unlimited nesting of looping and branching conditions

Note: The Point & Click Script tool functionality conforms to the associated flow control of any basic programming language. For more information, refer to your programming documentation.

You can use drag-and-drop to move script items to different locations within the script. If you drag a script item using the left mouse button, the script item is placed **AFTER** the script item you drop it on. All script items can be dragged using the left mouse button. If you drag a script item using the right mouse button, the script item is placed **UNDER** the script item you drop it on. You can drop script items under For-Next loops, Do-While loops, If-Then branches, While loops, and error branches only. You cannot drop one tool's script item on another tool's script item using the right mouse button.

All GLI/2 tools, as well as all third-party tools and custom tools, can be used with the Point & Click Script tool. The Point & Click Script tool can hold up to 10,000 script items.

GLI/2 also provides C/C++ Object Oriented APIs. For more information, refer to the *GLOBAL LAB Image/2 API Manual*. Note that no APIs are provided for GLI/2 Streamline.

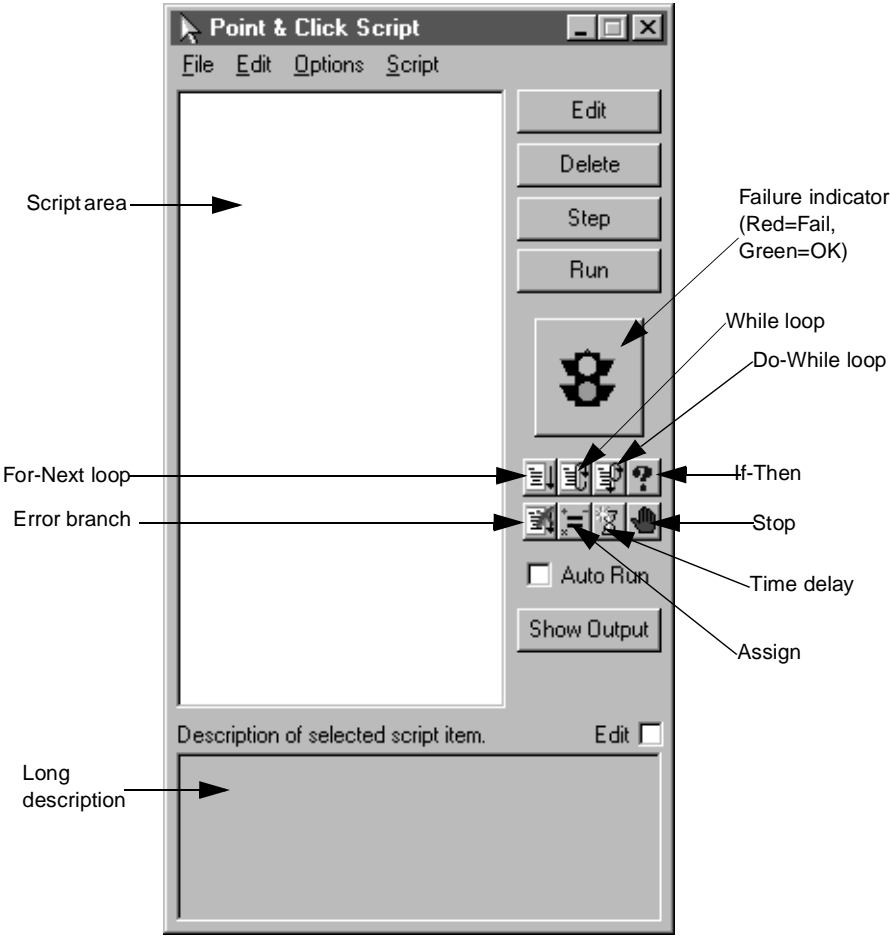



Figure 87: Point & Click Script Tool

To open a Point & Click Script tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Point & Click Script** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Point & Click Script tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

The Point & Click Script tool **MUST** be open when you record a point & click script item.

You can have only one Point & Click Script tool open at a time.

Description of Point & Click Script Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Point & Click Script tool dialog box.

File Menu Options

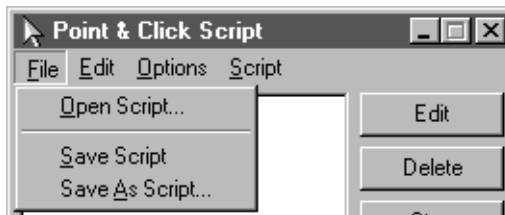


Figure 88: Point & Click Script Tool - File Menu

Open Script...

Select this option to open a saved point & click script from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a script (the file name must be followed by the extension .pcs), the object is loaded into the Point & Click Script tool. If the **Auto Run** checkbox was selected when the script was saved, the script automatically runs after opening.

Note that if you are using GLI/2 Streamline, this option automatically opens the point & click script that you previously saved. Since only one script is supported, the Open dialog box is not displayed.

Save Script

Select this option to save the current point & click script back to disk.

Note that if you are using GLI/2 Streamline, you can save only one point & click script. If you have already saved a script when you select this option, the previously saved script is overwritten.

Save As Script...

For GLI/2 only, select this option to save the current point & click script to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension .pcs.

Note that if you save a point & click script with the name default.pcs, the file will automatically open each time you open a Point & Click Script tool. You must save default.pcs in the DT_Pnclk directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Note that this option is meaningless for GLI/2 Streamline.

23

Edit Menu Options



Figure 89: Point & Click Script Tool - Edit Menu

Copy

Select this option to copy the highlighted script item to the clipboard. Note that you can also use <Ctrl>+<C> to copy a script item.

Paste

Select this option to paste the script item in the clipboard below the highlighted script item in the point & click script. Note that you can also use <Ctrl>+<V> to paste a script item.

Options Menu Options

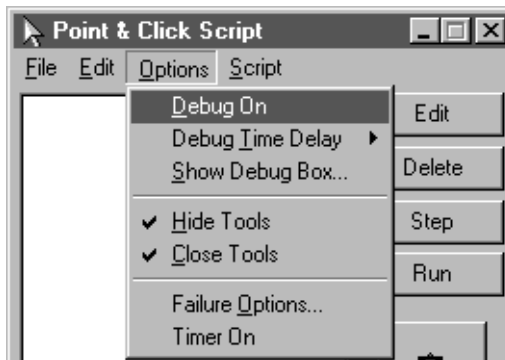


Figure 90: Point & Click Script Tool - Options Menu

Debug On

Select this option to debug a script while it is running. If you run a script with this option selected, you will see each script item as it is executed. You can also use the Debug box to examine script variables as the script is running; to open a Debug box, select **Options | Show Debug Box**.

Debug Time Delay

Select the time delay that you want to occur between each script item. This allows you to slow down the script so that you can better examine the script as it runs.

Show Debug Box...

Select this option to open the Debug Window.



The Debug Window allows you to select 10 script variables whose values you want to view during a script run. You can manually change the value of a script variable by entering a new value in the text box next to the variable. You can also use the **Step** button to single-step through the script, watching the script values after each step.

Hide Tools

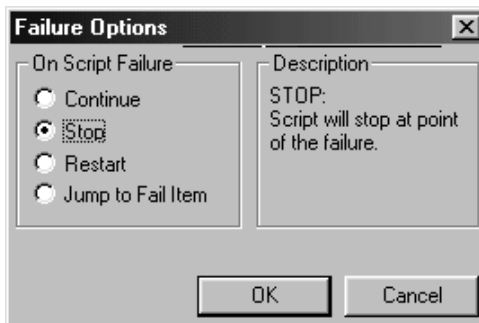
Select this option if you want to keep all tools hidden during a script run; this is useful if too many tools are recorded in a script and the screen becomes cluttered. Clear this option if you want to see all tools during a script run.

Close Tools

Select this option if you want to close all tools used by the script when the Point & Click Script tool is closed. Clear this option if you want to keep all tools open after the Point & Click Script tool is closed. If you decide to keep the tools open, make sure that you unhide the tools (make sure that the **Hide Tools** option is cleared).

Failure Options...

Select this option to open the Failure Options dialog box.



Select one of the following options to determine what happens when an item in a script fails during a script run:

- **Continue** – The script continues, ignoring the failure as if there were no failure.
- **Stop (default)** – The script stops at the point of failure.

- **Restart** – The script stops at the point of failure and restarts from the beginning of the script.
- **Jump to Fail Item** – The script stops at the point of failure, jumps to the error branch, and runs all the items under the error branch. If there is no Stop item in the error branch, the script continues to run all items in the script after the error branch and then loops to the start of the script as normal.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Timer On

Select this option if you want to display the time used to execute each script item in the point & click script, in milliseconds. The tool displays the time to the left of the script item in the format (*current*, *min*, *max*), where *current* is the time used in the current execution of the script item, *min* is the minimum time used to execute the script item, and *max* is the maximum time used to execute the script item.

Clear this option if you do not want to display the time.

Script Menu Options

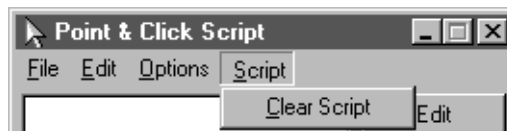


Figure 91: Point & Click Script Tool - Script Menu

Clear Script

Select this option to delete the entire script.

Dialog Box Options

Script Area

This area is where the point & click script is recorded and displayed. You can highlight a script item and move it using drag-and-drop.

A short description of each script item is displayed next to the script item's icon. The tool automatically sets the short description when the item is recorded. To change the short description, click on the current short description and enter a new one (up to 20 characters). Note that a long description of the selected script item is displayed at the bottom of the dialog box; for more information, refer to [page 392](#).

Edit

Click this button to edit the highlighted script item. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the tool associated with the highlighted script item is set up exactly as it was when the script was recorded. Use the associated tool to change any desired options. You can then save the script.

Note that you can also double-click a script item to edit it.

Delete

Click this button to delete the highlighted script item. The Point & Click Script tool asks you to confirm that you want to delete the script item. If you delete a looping or branching script item (such as a For-Next script item), you also delete any script items attached to the script item.

Note that you can also delete the highlighted script item by clicking the <Delete> key on your keyboard.

Step

Click this button to execute the highlighted script item. After the Point & Click Script tool executes the script item, it highlights the next script item in the script.

Run

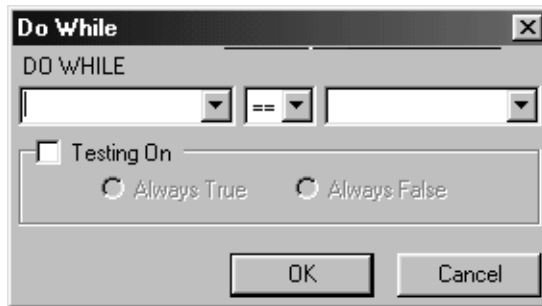
Click this button to run the script. The Point & Click Script tool checks for items that are required to run the script, such as required ROIs and images, and then runs the script. If a required object is not present, the tool stops on the script item that could not run and changes the stop light to Red. Click the stop light (failure indicator) to determine the problem.

Failure Indicator

This icon (stop light) turns red if any problems occur during a script step, run or edit. Click on the stop light to determine the problem. After you click the stop light and read the message, the stop light turns green. Note that you are still responsible for fixing the problem.

23**Do While Loop ()**

Click this icon to enter a Do-While loop script item into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the Do-While box.



The Do-While loop is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). If the loop is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new Do-While loop, drag-and-drop them under the new Do-While loop using the right mouse button.

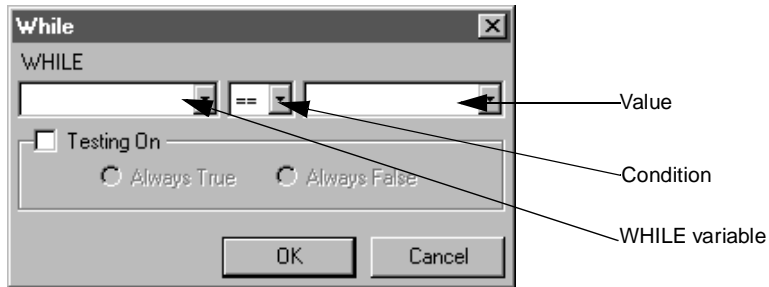
Note that the Do-While loop is identical to the While loop (see [page 382](#)) except that all the script items under a Do-While loop are always run at least once during a single execution of a point & click script.

Select the **Testing On** checkbox if you want to enter a loop or branch for debugging purposes even if the condition is not satisfied. Select the **Always True** radio button if you want to ignore the condition and always enter the loop or branch. Select the **Always False** radio button if you never want to enter the loop or branch.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

While Loop ()

Click this icon to enter a While loop script item into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the While box.



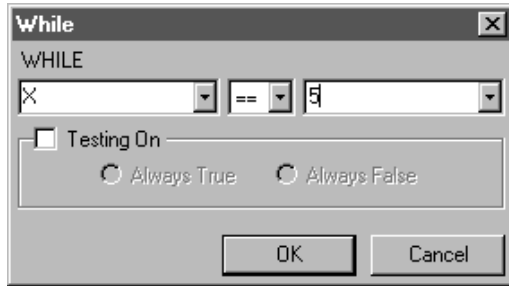
The While box runs all the script items under itself while some condition is true.

Enter a variable name in the WHILE text box or select a script variable from the WHILE variable drop-down list. Then, select one of the following conditions to test for from the condition drop-down list box:

- Equal To (==)
- Not Equal To (!=)
- Greater Than or Equal To (>=)
- Less Than or Equal To (<=)
- Less Than (<)
- Greater Than (>)

Finally, enter a constant, such as 5, in the test box or select a script variable from the value drop-down list.

For example, to keep running all the items under a While loop while X is equal to 5, set the While box as follows:



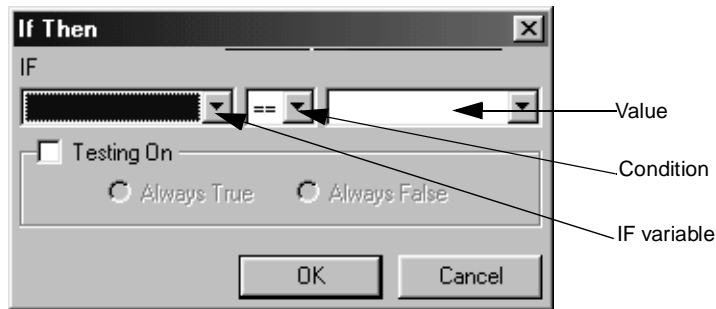
The While loop is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). If the loop is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new While loop, drag-and-drop them under the new While loop using the right mouse button.

Select the **Testing On** checkbox if you want to enter a loop or branch for debugging purposes even if the condition is not satisfied. Select the **Always True** radio button if you want to ignore the condition and always enter the loop or branch. Select the **Always False** radio button if you never want to enter the loop or branch.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

If Then ()

Click this icon to enter an If-Then script item into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the If-Then box.



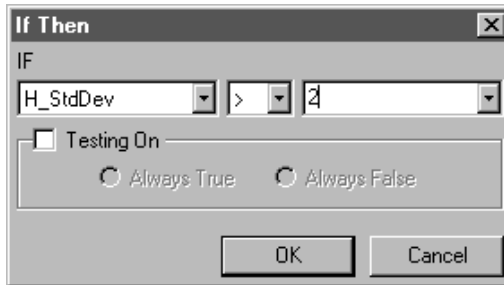
The If-Then box tests for a simple condition. If the condition is TRUE, the items in the branch under If-Then are run.

Enter a variable name in the IF text box or select a script variable from the IF variable drop-down list. Then, select one of the following conditions to test for from the condition drop-down list:

- Equal To (==)
- Not Equal To (!=)
- Greater Than or Equal To (>=)
- Less Than or Equal To (<=)
- Less Than (<)
- Greater Than (>)

Finally, enter a constant, such as 5, in the test box or select a script variable from the value drop-down list.

For example, if you want to run a set of script items if the H_StdDev script variable is greater than 2, set the If-Then box as follows:



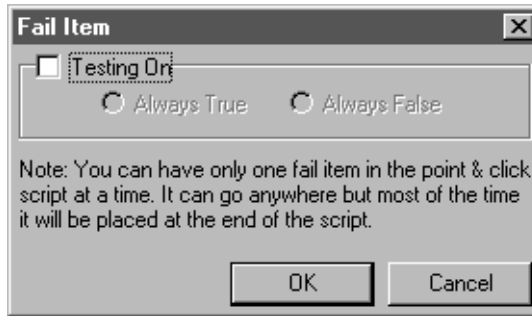
The If-Then statement is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). If the statement is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new If-Then statement, drag-and-drop them under the new If-Then statement using the right mouse button.

Select the **Testing On** checkbox if you want to enter a loop or branch for debugging purposes even if the condition is not satisfied. Select the **Always True** radio button if you want to ignore the condition and always enter the loop or branch. Select the **Always False** radio button if you never want to enter the loop or branch.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

Error Branch ()

Click this icon to enter an error branch into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the Fail Item box.



The error branch is a type of If-Then item that is used for error conditions. On any failure, the script, if configured to do so, jumps to the error branch and runs its script items. To configure the script to use the error branch, refer to [page 378](#).

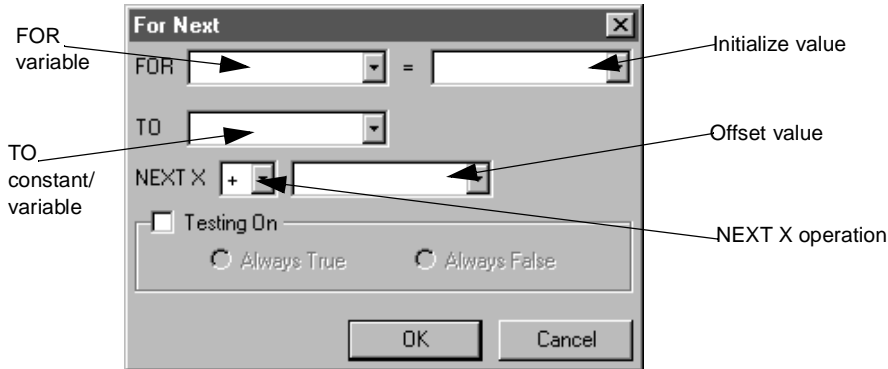
The error branch is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). Typically, you would position the error branch at the end of the script; however, you can position it any place you want. If the error branch is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new error branch, drag-and-drop them under the new error branch using the right mouse button.

Select the **Testing On** checkbox if you want to enter a loop or branch for debugging purposes even if the condition is not satisfied. Select the **Always True** radio button if you want to ignore the condition and always enter the loop or branch. Select the **Always False** radio button if you never want to enter the loop or branch.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

For Next ()

Click this icon to enter a For-Next loop script item into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the For-Next box.



Enter a variable name in the FOR text box or select a script variable from the FOR variable drop-down list. In the initialize box, enter a constant, such as 5, or select a variable from the drop-down list. Enter a constant value or variable name in the TO text box or select a script variable from the TO constant/variable drop-down list.

When the loop starts, the FOR variable is initialized to the value in the initialize value box. The loop continues until the FOR variable is equal to the constant or variable in the TO text box. Each time through the loop, the FOR variable is incremented or decremented by the amount specified in the offset box. If the NEXT X operation is set to +, the value is incremented; if it is set to -, the value is decremented.

For example, to create a simple loop where something would be run five times (x=1, x=2, x=3, x=4, and x=5), you could use the statement:

```
FOR X=1 TO X=5 NEXT X (X=X+1)
```


To implement this statement, set the For Next box as follows:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "For Next". It contains the following fields and controls:

- FOR**: A dropdown menu showing 'X' followed by an equals sign and a text box containing '1'.
- TO**: A dropdown menu showing '5'.
- NEXT X**: A dropdown menu showing '+' followed by a text box containing '1'.
- Testing On**: A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Below the checkbox are two radio buttons: **Always True** (which is selected) and **Always False** (which is unselected).
- At the bottom are two buttons: **OK** and **Cancel**.

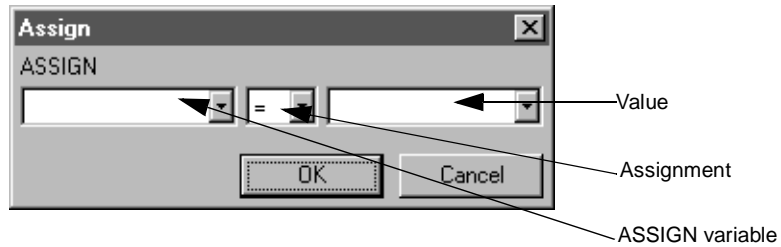
The For-Next loop is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). If the For-Next statement is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new For-Next statement, drag-and-drop them under the new For-Next statement using the right mouse button.

Select the **Testing On** checkbox if you want to enter a loop or branch for debugging purposes even if the condition is not satisfied. Select the **Always True** radio button if you want to ignore the condition and always enter the loop or branch. Select the **Always False** radio button if you never want to enter the loop or branch.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

Assign

Click this icon to enter an Assign script item into the point & click script. Then, enter the appropriate information in the Assign box.



The Assign box assigns a value to a variable.

Enter a variable name in the ASSIGN text box or select a script variable from the ASSIGN variable drop-down list. Then, select one of the following assignments from the assignment drop-down list box:

- Assign (=)
- Add and assign (+=)
- Subtract and assign (-=)
- Multiple and assign (*=)
- Divide and assign (/=)

Finally, enter a constant, such as 5, in the test box or select a script variable from the value drop-down list.

For example, to set the variable Test equal to 5, set the Assign box as follows:



The Assign statement is entered into the point & click script at the selected script item (if one is selected). If the statement is entered in an incorrect location, you can drag-and-drop it to the correct location with the mouse. To enter script items under the new Assign statement, drag-and-drop them under the new Assign statement using the right mouse button.

When all the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the box without saving your changes.

Time Delay ()

Click this icon to enter a time delay, in milliseconds, into the script at the selected point.

Stop ()

Click this icon to enter a stop script item into the script at the selected point. A stop script item stops the script when encountered during a script run and is typically used under an error branch to stop the execution of a script in an error condition. You can place one or more stop items anywhere in a script. If you accidentally enter a stop script item in the wrong location, drag-and-drop it to the correct location.

Auto Run

Select this checkbox to automatically run a script when the script is opened. This is useful for scripts that you want to run on system startup. You can place GLI/2 in the Windows Start menu section so that GLI/2 is run on system startup and, in the Point & Click tool entry in the dttools.ini file, set AUTOSTART to automatically open the Point & Click Script tool when GLI/2 is started. You can then save a script with the name default.pcs. If the **Auto Run** checkbox selected, default.pcs automatically runs on system startup.

For information on editing the dttools.ini file, refer to [page 50](#).

Show Output

Click this button to display the output of the selected script item during a script run. You can toggle the showing of the output by clicking this button again.

Note that showing output takes time and may not be required if no-one is watching.

Long Description

This field displays a long description of the selected script item. The tool automatically sets the long description when the item is recorded. To change the long description, select the **Edit** checkbox and edit the current long description. The long description remains the same even if you edit the script item.

Note that a short description of each script item is displayed in the script area next to the script item's icon. For more information, refer to [page 380](#).

Example of Using the Point & Click Script Tool

This example checks for cracks in a piece of plastic with a constant color such as tan. To check for cracks in an automated system, you would need to do the following:

1. Take a picture of the tan plastic with a color or grayscale camera.
2. Run a filter, such as a Sobel filter, on the image to enhance the cracks, if present (optional).
3. Run a histogram of the desired area (or whole image) and look at the standard deviation. If the standard deviation is low, no cracks are present. If it is high, cracks are present.
4. If the part has no cracks, you want to place the text GOOD PART on the image. If the part contains cracks, you want to place the text BAD PART on the image and stop the system.

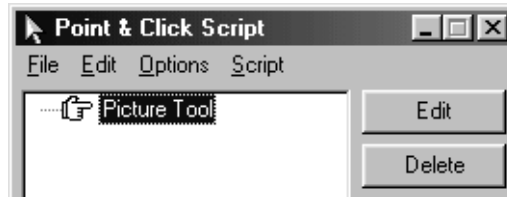
Note: You might also want to signal other machines using RS-232 or digital I/O, store the bad image and statistics about the image (why it was bad) in a database, and remove the part from the assembly line automatically and continue running the process. However, for ease of understanding the recording and editing of a script, these items will not be covered in this example.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Point & Click Script tool (if it is not already open).
2. Open the Picture tool and set it up to take the desired picture. For more information, refer to [Chapter 21, "Using the Picture Tool."](#) When you have all the options set and you are happy with the image from the camera, click **Acquire** to take the picture, then click **Add to Script** to record this step in the Point & Click script.

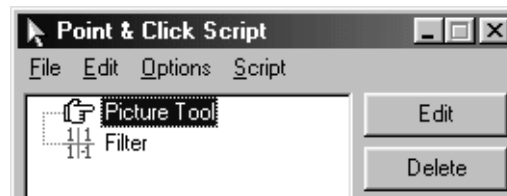
Remember that other tools will find and process the image by the name specified in the Picture tool.

The Point & Click Script tool has a single script item in its script area and looks as follows:



3. Open the Filter tool and set it up to run a Sobel filter on the image you acquired using the Picture tool. You can use an ROI, if desired, or you can process the entire image. For more information, refer to [Chapter 13, “Using the Filter Tool.”](#) After setting up the Filter tool to run a Sobel filter on the image, click **Filter** to run the filter, then click **Add to Script** to record the script item.

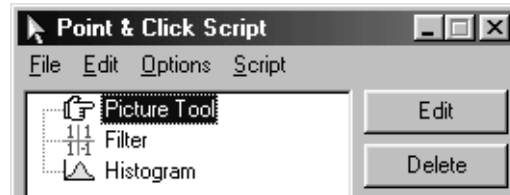
The image is filtered and the script looks as follows:



4. Open the Histogram tool to take a histogram of the filtered image. Set up the Histogram tool's scripting options to calculate the histogram statistics, which make statistic scripting variables. For more information, refer to [Chapter 14, “Using the Histogram Tool.”](#)

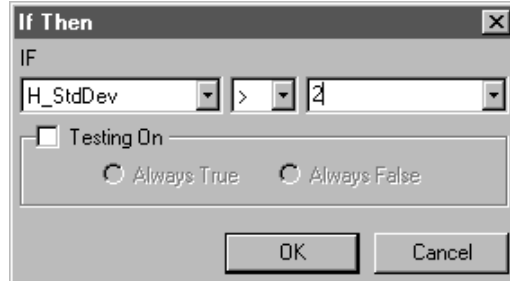
Make sure that your desired ROI is active (if you are using an ROI) and that the filtered image is in the active viewport. Click **Add Histogram** to take a histogram of the image, then click **Add to Script** to record the script item.

The histogram is created and the script looks as follows:



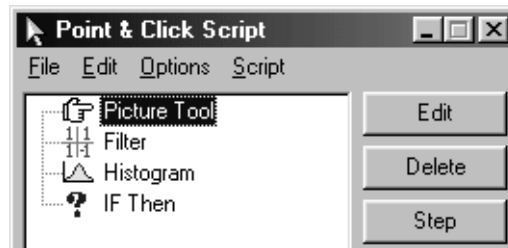
5. Create an If-Then branch based on the standard deviation created from the histogram by clicking on the If-Then icon in the Point & Click Script tool. Set the If-Then box so that if the standard deviation is greater than 2, the part is considered to have cracks.

The If-Then box looks as follows:



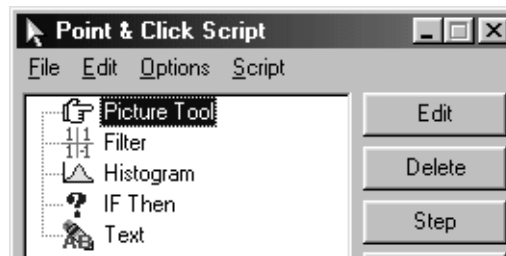
6. Accept the settings by clicking **OK**.

The script looks as follows:



7. Open a Text tool and place the text BAD PART on the filtered image. For more information, refer to [Chapter 28, “Using the Text Tool.”](#) After the text is on the image, click the **Add to Script** button in the Text tool to record this item in the script.

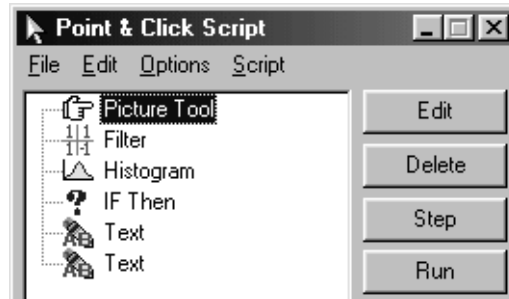
The script looks as follows:



8. Copy the text item using the same text object by using drag-and-drop while holding down the <Ctrl> key to drop the text item on the If-Then item (or on any item other than the text item). You now have two text items that use the same text object that both contain the text BAD PART. Edit one of the text items so that it contains the text GOOD PART. To do this, select one of the text objects and click the **Edit** button (or double-click the text item).

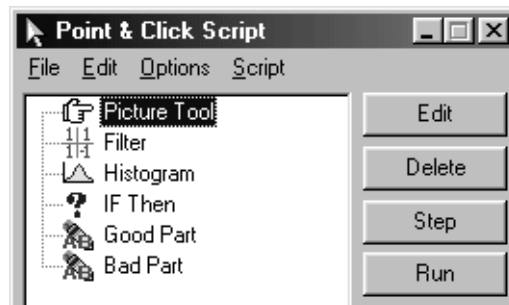
The Text tool is now set up exactly as it was when the script item was recorded (it contains the text BAD PART). Change the text to GOOD PART and click **Update Text** in the Text tool to update the text object. Save the script item by clicking **Update Script** in the Text tool. You now have two text items, one that contains the text BAD PART and one that contains the text GOOD PART.

The script looks as follows:



9. To help keep track of the two text items, change the short descriptions to Good Part and Bad Part by slowly clicking on each item twice and then changing its text. When finished, click **Enter**.

The script looks as follows:



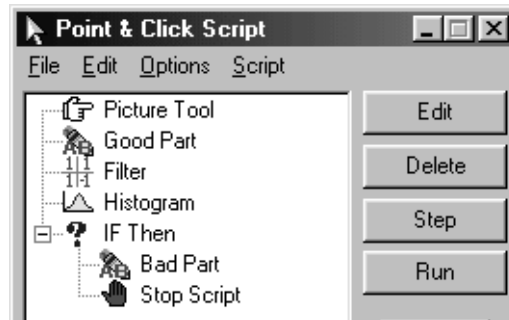
10. Take the mouse and drag the Good Part item to the PictureTool script item and drop it so that the script starts off displaying Good Part. Then, drag the Bad Part item using the RIGHT mouse button and drop it on the If-Then item.

The script looks as follows:



11. Click the Stop icon in the Point & Click Script tool and position the Stop item under the Bad Part item using drag-and-drop. This allows you to stop the script if you catch a bad part.

The script looks as follows:



12. Either step through the script using the **Step** button or run the script using the **Run** button.

To catch different sized cracks, you may have to adjust the value in the If-Then statement. You can also determine which script items show their output by selecting a script item and clicking the **Show Output** button.

In a real-world application, you may not want to place the text GOOD PART on the image each time. To avoid this, you could put everything in a While loop and place the text on the image once, or you could not place the GOOD PART text on the image at all. For help with logic and programming, refer to any book on programming.

Using the Prompt Tool

Introduction..... 402

Description of Prompt Tool Options 403


Example of Using the Prompt Tool 408

Point & Click Script 410

Introduction

Note: The Prompt tool is not supported for GLI/2 Streamline.

The Prompt tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to display a prompt to the end-user while a point & click script is running. The end-user can respond to the prompt either by clicking a button or by entering text in a text box.

To open a Prompt tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Prompt** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Prompt tool is fully compatible with all tools. Images and ROIs are not used.

You can have up to 100 Prompt tools open at the same time.

Description of Prompt Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Prompt tool dialog box.

Button Tab Options

The Button tab allows you to create a prompt that the end-user responds to by clicking a button. You can provide one or two buttons on the prompt. In addition, the Prompt tool provides an **Exit Script** button that allows the end-user to exit the script, if necessary.

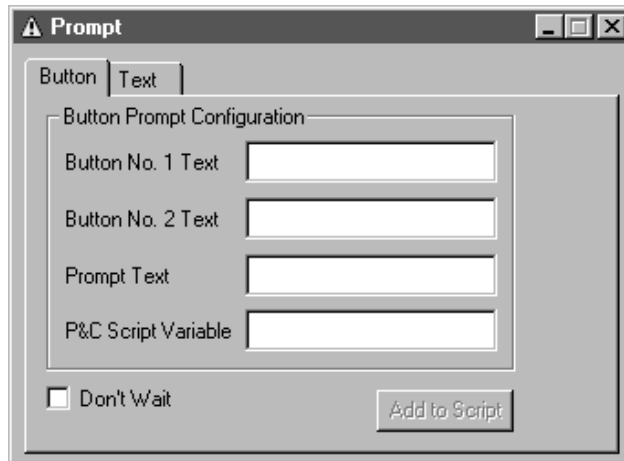


Figure 92: PromptTool - Button Tab

An example button prompt is shown in [Figure 93](#).

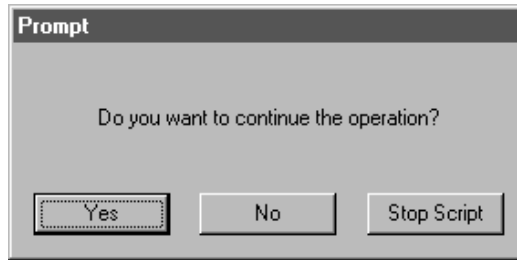


Figure 93: Example Button Prompt

Button No. 1 Text

Enter the text that you want to appear on the first (leftmost) button of the prompt.

Note that only the number of characters that can fit on the button (approximately 14 characters) are displayed. Any additional characters are clipped.

Button No. 2 Text

Enter the text that you want to appear on the second (middle) button of the prompt.

Note that only the number of characters that can fit on the button (approximately 14 characters) are displayed. Any additional characters are clipped.

Prompt Text

Enter the prompt text.

Note that only the number of characters that can fit in the Prompt box (approximately 49 characters) are displayed. Any additional characters are clipped.

P&C Script Variable

Enter the name of the variable that you want to use to keep track of which button the end-user clicks. You can use this variable in your point & click script to move to a particular point in the script, depending on the button that the end-user clicks.

Don't Wait

Select this checkbox if you want the point & click script to continue running when the prompt is displayed.

Clear this checkbox if you want the point & click script to stop running when the prompt is displayed. This is useful if you want the end-user to be able to do such things as repositioning an object or entering some required information before a particular point in the script is reached. When the end-user clicks one of the buttons, the script automatically continues running.

Add to Script

Once you have specified both a point & click script variable and prompt text, click this button to add a Button Prompt script item to your point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

Text Tab

The Text tab allows you to create a prompt that the end-user responds to by entering text in a text box. The Prompt tool provides an **Exit Script** button that allows the end-user to exit the script, if necessary.

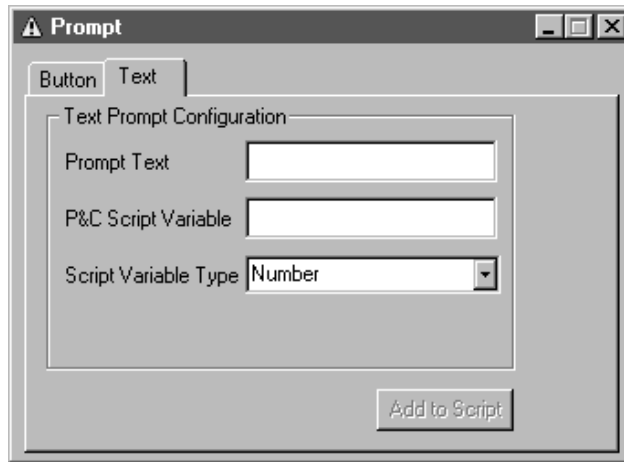


Figure 94: PromptTool - Text Tab

An example text prompt is shown in [Figure 95](#).

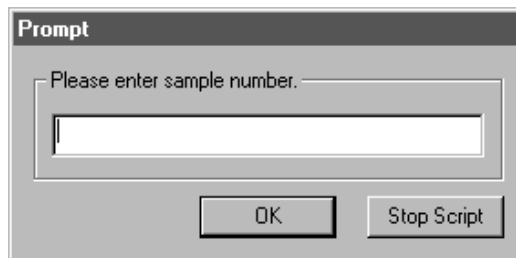


Figure 95: Example Text Prompt

Note: The point & click script always stops running when a Text prompt is displayed. This allows the end-user to do such things as repositioning an object or entering some required information before a particular point in the script is reached. When the end-user enters text and then clicks **OK**, the script automatically continues running.

Prompt Text

Enter the prompt text.

Note that only the number of characters that can fit in the Prompt box (approximately 49 characters) are displayed. Any additional characters are clipped.

P&C Script Variable

Enter the name of the variable that you want to use to keep track of the text that the end-user enters. You can use this variable in your point & click script to move to a particular point in the script, depending on the text that the end-user enters.

Script Variable Type

Select the type of the point & click script variable (String, Number).

Add to Script

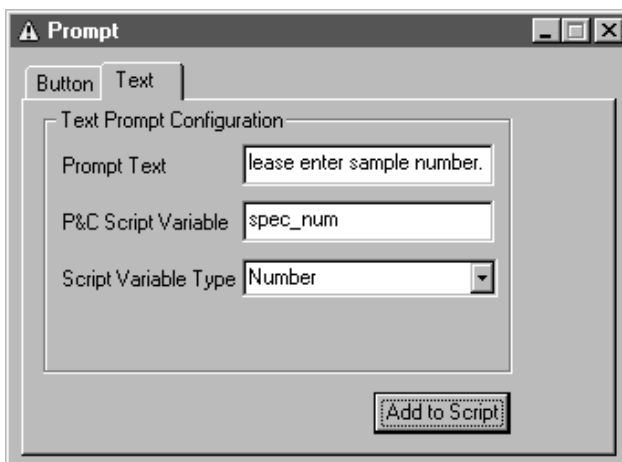
Once you have specified both a point & click script variable and prompt text, click this button to add a Text prompt script item to your point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Prompt Tool

This example shows how to create a Text prompt in a point & click script. The prompt is intended for an end-user who is looking at and analyzing blood specimens on slides. The identification number for each specimen is stored in a database for future processing.

The operation is as follows:

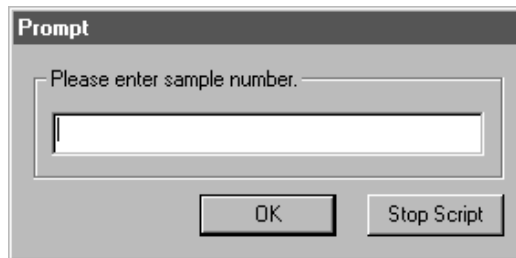
1. Open the Point & Click Script tool (if it is not already open).
2. Open a Prompt tool (if one is not already open).
3. In the Prompt tool, click the Text tab.
4. In the **Prompt Text** text box, enter **Please enter sample number.**
5. In the **P&C Script Variable** text box, enter **spec_num**.
6. From the **Script Variable Type** drop-down list, select **Number**.
The Prompt tool looks as follows.



7. Click **Add to Script** to add the Text prompt script item to your point & click script.

8. In the Point & Click Script tool, include the following:
 - Code that runs the Text prompt script item whenever the end-user presses the <Enter> key.
 - Code that extracts the specimen number from the spec_num variable and stores the data in a database.

When the end-user receives a new specimen and clicks <Enter>, the following Text prompt is displayed:



When the end-user enters the specimen number and clicks **OK**, the specimen number is stored in the variable spec_num and then transferred to a database for future processing.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Prompt tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Prompt tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up the Prompt tool to specify the point & click script variable and the prompt text. Click **Add to Script** to record the script item in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Prompt tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the point & click script variable and the prompt text. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.


Using the ROI Manager Tool

Introduction.	412
Description of ROI Manager Tool Options.	413
Example of Using the ROI Manager Tool.	420
Point & Click Script	424

Introduction

The ROI Manager tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to do the following:

- Create an ROI (region of interest).
- Create a set of similar ROIs.
- View the coordinates of an ROI.
- Select the type of ROI to be created.
- Enter the coordinates of an ROI to be created.
- Copy an existing ROI from one viewport to another.
- Control the positioning of an ROI using a reference point.

To open an ROI Manager tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **ROI Manager** from the Tools menu.

Note: The ROI Manager tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have only one ROI Manager tool open at a time.

Description of ROI Manager Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the ROI Manager tool dialog box.

Draw Tab Options

The Draw tab allows you to create an ROI, change the name of an ROI, save an ROI to disk, open an ROI that was previously saved to disk, or add a series of similar ROIs (auto increment).

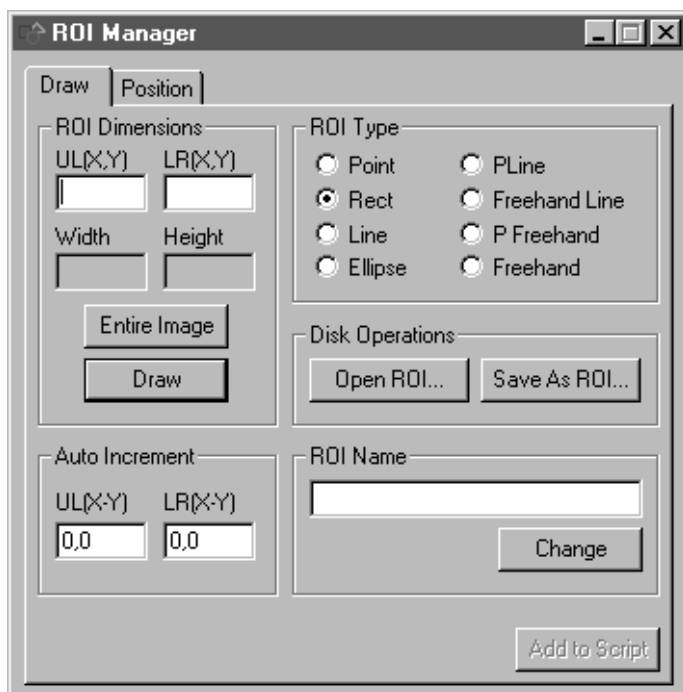


Figure 96: ROI Manager Tool - Draw Tab

UL(X,Y)

This field displays the coordinates of a selected point ROI or the coordinates of the upper-left corner of a selected ROI. For a line or ellipse ROI, the values represent a bounding box that encompasses the selected ROI.

If you are creating a line, rectangle, or ellipse ROI, enter the upper-left corner of the ROI in the text box. If you are creating a point ROI, enter the coordinates of the ROI in the text box. Enter the coordinates in the form x, y (for example, enter 10,10).

You cannot use the ROI Manager tool to create a poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI; these ROIs must be copied or drawn.

Note that the **UL(X,Y)** values are in image coordinates, where 0,0 refers to the lower-left corner of the image.

Each time you select, create, move, or delete an ROI in a viewport with the mouse, the tool updates to show the coordinates of the ROI.

LR(X,Y)

This field displays the lower-right corner of a selected rectangle ROI in image coordinates. For a line or ellipse ROI, the values represent a bounding box that encompasses the selected ROI. For a point ROI, this option is not used.

If you are creating a line, rectangle, or ellipse ROI, enter the lower-right corner of the ROI in the text box. Enter the coordinates in the form x, y (for example, enter 10,10).

You cannot use the ROI Manager tool to create a poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI; these ROIs must be copied or drawn.

Note that the **LR(X,Y)** values are in image coordinates, where 0,0 refers to the lower-left corner of the image.

Each time you select, create, move, or delete an ROI in a viewport with the mouse, the tool updates to show the coordinates of the ROI.

Width

This field displays the width of the selected or created ROI.

Height

This field displays the height of the selected or created ROI.

Entire Image

Click this button to enter the upper-left and lower-right coordinates of the entire image in the active viewport into the **UL(X,Y)** and **LR(X,Y)** text boxes.

Draw

Click this button to add an ROI of the selected type to the active viewport. For a point, rectangle, line, or ellipse ROI, the tool uses the values specified in the **UL(X,Y)** and **LR(X,Y)** text boxes. For a poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, the tool uses an internal copy of the most recently activated ROI of that type. If no internal copy is available, the **Draw** button is grayed out. This option is provided so that you can copy ROIs from one viewport to another.

Auto Increment

Enter the offset value that you want to add to the values specified in the **UL(X,Y)** and **LR(X,Y)** text boxes each time you click **Draw**. This allows you to add sets of similar ROIs to the active viewport quickly.

Note that for a point, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI, only the **UL(X,Y)** value is used. This is because these ROIs can only be repositioned; they cannot be resized.

ROI Type

Click the **Point**, **Rect**, **Line**, or **Ellipse** radio button to specify the type of ROI that you want to create. You can then either use the mouse to draw the ROI or specify the image coordinates of the ROI in the **UL(X,Y)** and **LR(X,Y)** text boxes and then click **Draw**.

Note that you cannot use this option to draw a poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI. If you select one of these ROI types and click **Draw**, the tool uses an internal copy of the most recently activated ROI of that type, if one is available.

Open ROI...

Click this button to open an ROI from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open an ROI (the file name must be followed by the extension .roi), the object is loaded into the ROI Manager tool.

Save As ROI

Click this button to save the active ROI to disk. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension .roi.

If you save the active ROI with a new name and if you want the name of the ROI on disk to match the name of the ROI in the GLI/2 environment, make sure that you also change the name in the **ROI Name** text box.

ROI Name

This field displays the name of the active ROI in the active viewport.

Change

Click this button to change the name of an ROI in the active viewport. Activate the ROI whose name you want to change by clicking in it with the right mouse button or by using the <**Tab**> key. Enter the new name in the **ROI Name** text box, then click **Change**.

Add to Script

After you open or save an ROI, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

Position Tab Options

The Position tab allows you to control the positioning of an ROI by establishing a relationship between the ROI and a reference point. The reference point is a known point, whose x- and y-coordinates are typically provided by another tool, such as the Measurement tool.

Note: The Position tab options are not intended to be used to reposition an ROI on the display. They are intended to provide functionality that is added to a point & click script.

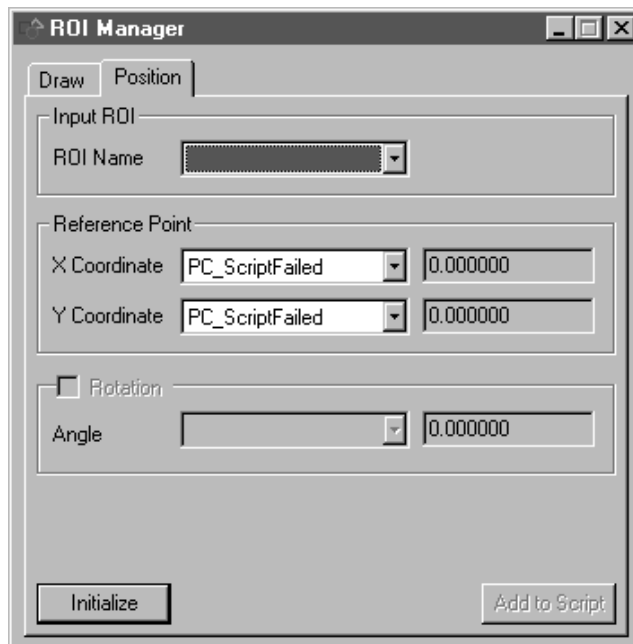


Figure 97: ROI Manager Tool - Position Tab

ROI Name

Select the name of the ROI in the image whose relationship to the reference point you want to establish. You can select the ROI name from the drop-down list, in which case the ROI is activated (red) in the image, or you can right-click or tab to the ROI in the image, in which case the appropriate ROI name is displayed in the drop-down list.

Note that a text object that you created using the Text tool is referred to as **Textx**, not **Rectx**. For more information about the Text tool, refer to [Chapter 28, "Using the Text Tool."](#)

Reference Point X Coordinate

Select the variable containing the x-coordinate of the reference point from the drop-down list. The x-coordinate value is displayed in the text box.

Reference Point Y Coordinate

Select the variable containing the y-coordinate of the reference point from the drop-down list. The y-coordinate value is displayed in the text box.

Rotation

Select the variable containing the angle at which you want to rotate a line or point ROI. The angle, in degrees, is displayed in the text box.

Note that the ROI Manager tool does not take rotation into account when repositioning a rectangle, ellipse, poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, or freehand ROI.

Initialize

Click this button to establish the relationship between the ROI specified by **ROI Name** and the reference point specified by **Reference Point X Coordinate** and **Reference Point Y Coordinate**.

Add to Script

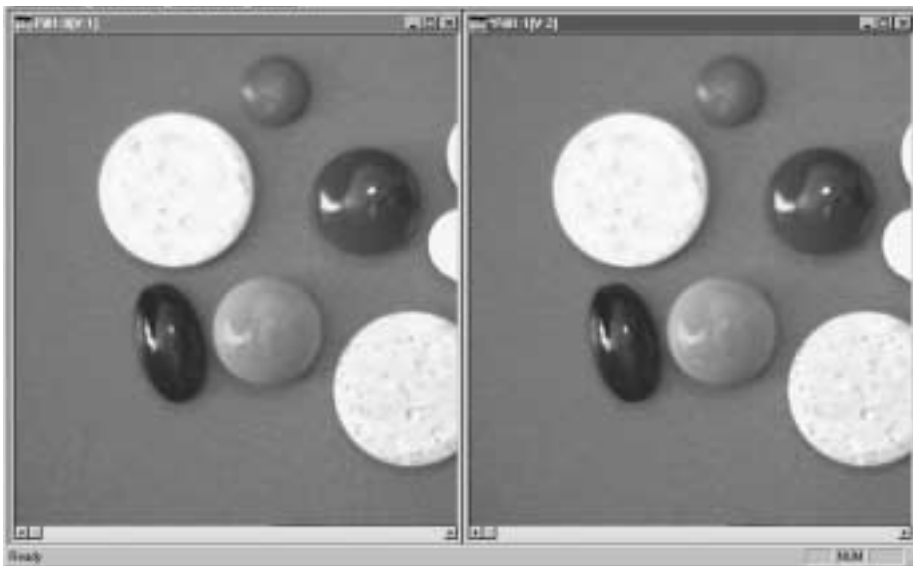
After you establish the relationship between the ROI and the reference point by clicking **Initialize**, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the ROI Manager Tool

This example shows how to add an ellipse ROI around Pill A in the image Pill1:0, how to copy the ellipse ROI to the image Pill1:1, and how to add five rectangle ROIs around the ellipse ROI to the image Pill1:1. Each of the five rectangle ROIs is 10 pixels larger than the last.

The operation is as follows:

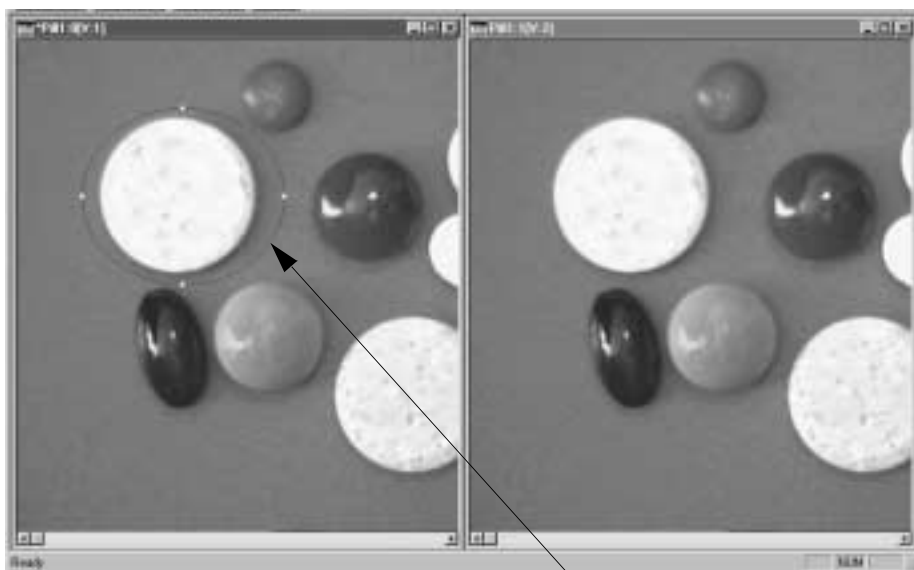
1. Open the image Pill1, open a new viewport, and then open the image Pill1 again. Pill1:0 is the first instance of the image and Pill1:1 is the second instance of the image.



2. Open the ROI Manager tool (if it is not already open), and click the **Draw** tab.
3. Activate the image Pill1:0 by clicking in it with the left mouse button.

4. Click the **Ellipse** radio button in the ROI Manager tool. Note that you can also specify the ROI type by selecting **Options | ROI Type | Ellipse** from the menu bar in the main application or by selecting the **Ellipse** radio button from the ROI menu bar.
5. Place the mouse cursor over the image Pill1:0 at the upper-left corner of the large white pill at the left of the image. While holding down <Ctrl> and <Shift> on the keyboard, press the left mouse button. While holding down the left mouse button, drag the mouse to the lower-right corner of the pill. Release the left mouse button.

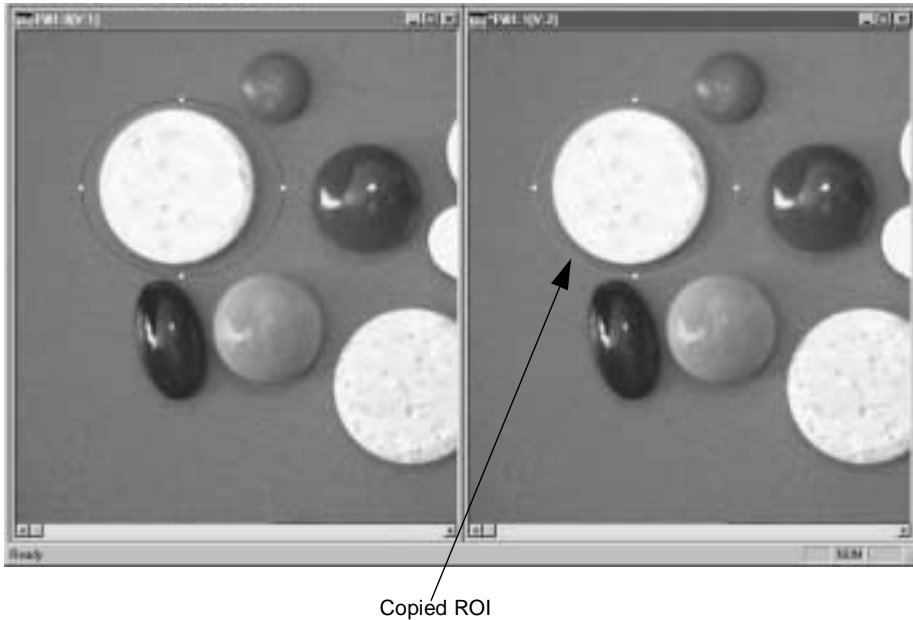
The main application looks as follows:



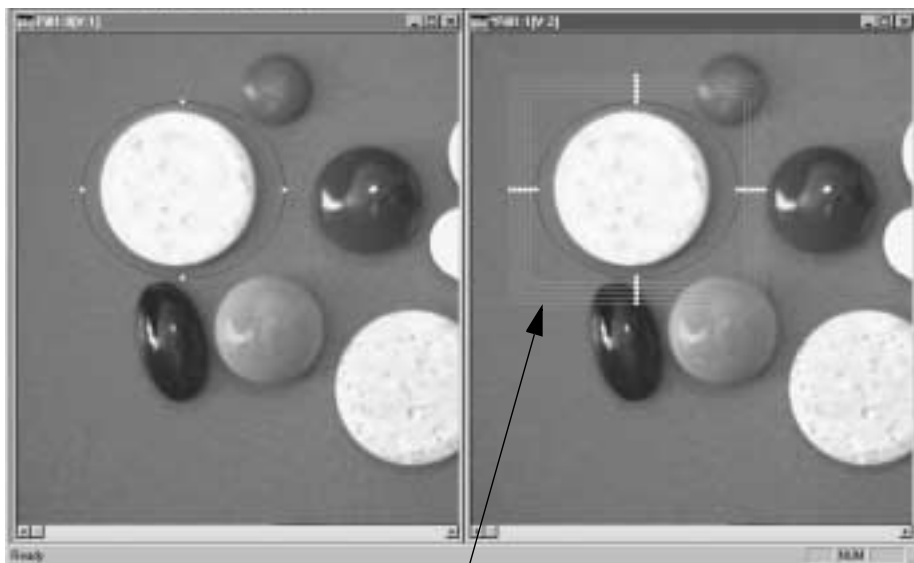
Newly created
ellipse ROI

6. Activate (red) the ROI by clicking in it with the right mouse button. The ROI Manager tool is updated with the coordinates of the ROI.

7. Activate the image Pill1:1 by clicking in it with the left mouse button.
8. Click **Draw** in the ROI Manager tool.
The main application looks as follows:



9. To obtain the coordinates of the ROI that you want to copy and enlarge, activate (red) the ellipse ROI in image Pill1:1 by clicking in it with the right mouse button. The ROI Manager tool is updated with the coordinates of the ROI.
10. Set **Auto Inc** to make the upper-left corner move up and left by five pixels $(-5, 5)$ and to make the lower-right corner move down and right by five pixels $(5, -5)$.
11. Set the ROI type to **Rect**.
12. Add five new rectangle ROIs to the active image Pill1:1 by clicking **Draw** five times.
The main application looks as follows:



Five new rectangle ROIs (each
larger than the last)

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the ROI Manager tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the ROI Manager tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. The only functions from the ROI Manager tool that are scriptable are opening an ROI from disk and saving an ROI to disk (from the **Draw** tab) and setting up the relationship between an ROI and a reference point for positioning purposes (from the **Position** tab). Click **Open ROI**, **Save As ROI**, or **Initialize** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Note that one script item is created for the **Draw** tab and another script item is created for the **Position** tab.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out. The only functions from the ROI Manager tool that you can edit are opening an ROI from disk and saving an ROI to disk (from the **Draw** tab) and setting up the relationship between an ROI and a reference point for positioning purposes (from the **Position** tab). The **Add to Script** button is changed to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.

Note: An ROI can be opened only once from disk, even if the script item that opens the ROI is run multiple times. The point & click script checks to see if an ROI with the same name as the ROI to be opened is attached to the desired image. If the point & click script detects an ROI with the same name, the script does not open another ROI. If the ROI is deleted from the system, the ROI is opened and added to the system when the script item is run.

26

Using the Serial I/O Tool

Introduction.....	428
Description of Serial I/O Tool Options.....	430
Example of Using the Serial I/O Tool.....	435
Point & Click Script	436

Introduction

The Serial I/O tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to send and receive data through the serial port(s) of your computer so that GLI/2 can interface with peripheral equipment.

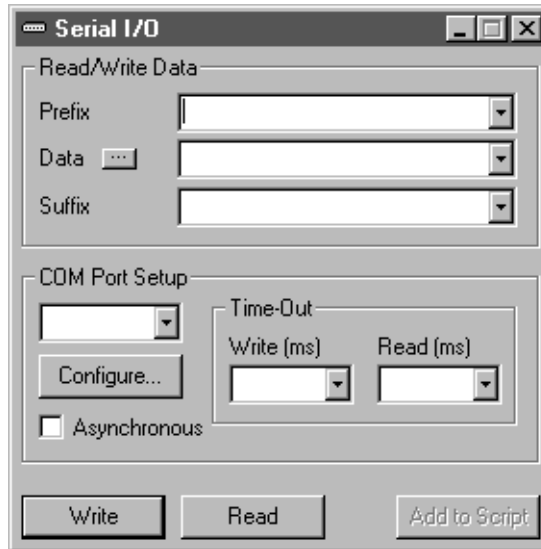



Figure 98: Serial I/O Tool

The Serial I/O tool allows you to do the following:

- Send and receive data using COM ports 1 through 15.
- Use multiple COM ports at the same time.
- Read or write data in synchronous or asynchronous mode.
- Control individual COM port settings, including baud rate, stop bits, and parity.
- Read and write text, string objects, and formatted number objects.
- Provide a prefix and suffix that can be text, string objects, or ASCII control characters.
- Provide separate timeouts for reading and writing.
- Enable a point & click script.

To open a Serial I/O tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Serial I/O** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Serial I/O tool is compatible with all other tools. It does not use images or ROIs.

You can have only one Serial I/O tool open at a time.

Description of Serial I/O Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Serial I/O tool dialog box.

Prefix

Enter the prefix that you want to include when sending data from the serial port or reading data to the serial port. You can specify simple text, a point & click string variable, or ASCII control character(s). When the data is sent from the serial port, the prefix is sent first, then the data, then the suffix.

If you use ASCII control characters, you must use the 0x hex prefix so the tool knows that you are sending ASCII control characters. All control characters must be specified as 2-digit hex values. For example, to send the Control and Line Feed control characters, enter 0x0d0a, where 0d is the Control and 0a is the Line Feed.

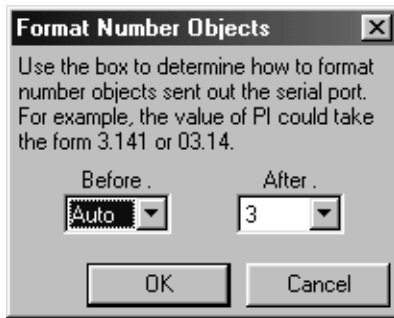
When reading data, the tool waits for the prefix and then begins to capture the data. Any data entering the serial port before the prefix is discarded.

Data

When sending data from the serial port, enter the data in the text box. You can enter simple text, a point & click string variable, or a point & click number variable. You cannot enter ASCII control characters.

When reading data to the serial port, this field contains the data read.

If you are sending/receiving a number variable, click the ... button (next to the **Data** text box) to format the number. The tool opens the Format Number Objects dialog box.



Specify the number of digits before the decimal point from the **Before** drop-down list. Specify the number of digits after the decimal point from the **After** drop-down list.

When the settings are correct, click **OK** to set your options. Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without saving your changes.

Suffix

Enter the suffix that you want to include when sending data from the serial port or reading data to the serial port. You can specify simple text, a point & click string variable, or ASCII control characters. When the data is sent from the serial port, the prefix is sent first, then the data, then the suffix.

If you use ASCII control characters, you must use the `0x` hex prefix so the tool knows that you are sending ASCII control characters. All control characters must be specified as 2-digit hex values. For example, to send the Control and Line Feed control characters, enter `0x0d0a`, where `0d` is the Control and `0a` is the Line Feed.

When reading data, the tool waits for the suffix to enter the serial port before returning.

COM Port Setup

Select the COM port that you want to use from the drop-down list. Only COM ports that are unused, available, and working are listed in the drop-down list.

Asynchronous

Select this checkbox if you want to perform the operation asynchronously.

Configure...

Click this button to set the COM port properties. The tool opens the COM port setup dialog box that is appropriate to your operating system. Use the dialog box to set up the COM port to match the device you are communicating with.

If you are recording a point & click script, make sure that each time you reference a particular COM port, the settings for that COM port are exactly the same. For example, do not use a baud rate of 9600 for COM1 in one script item and a baud rate of 19,200 for COM1 in another script item. For more information, refer to any book on serial communications or refer to the manual that came with the device you are communicating with. Note that you can use different settings for different COM ports.

Time-Out Write

Select the timeout period, in milliseconds, that you want to use when sending data from the serial port. You can select the timeout period from the drop-down list or enter it in the text box. If you do not want to use a timeout period, select **Infinite**.

Time-Out Read

Select the timeout period, in milliseconds, that you want to use when reading data to the serial port. You can select the timeout period from the drop-down list or enter it in the text box. If you do not want to use a timeout period, select **Infinite**.

Write

After you set up the serial port, click this button to output the specified prefix, data, and suffix from the port.

Read

After you set up the serial port, click this button to read data to the port. By default, data entering the port is automatically buffered. The data is read in the following ways:

- If you specified both a prefix and a suffix, the tool waits to read the prefix, then starts collecting data until the suffix is read. Only the data is returned; the prefix and suffix are not returned.
- If you specified only a prefix, the tool waits for the prefix and then reads whatever is stored in the COM port input buffer.
- If you specified only a suffix, the tool reads whatever is stored in the COM port input buffer and continues to read incoming data until the suffix is read.
- If you specified a point & click string variable, the data read from the serial port is stored in this variable.
- If you specified a point & click number variable, the data read from the serial port is converted to a number and stored in this number object. If other than numeric text is read from the serial port, the function fails.
- If you did not select a variable, the data read from the serial port is displayed in the **Data** field.

Add to Script

After you read or write data, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool](#).”

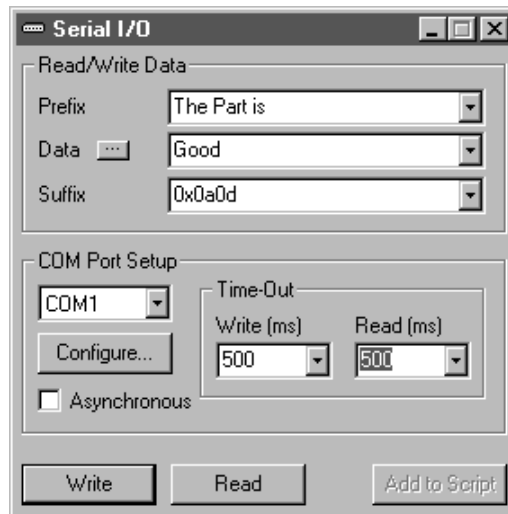
Example of Using the Serial I/O Tool

This example shows how to use the Serial I/O tool.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Serial I/O tool (if it is not already open).
2. Enter `The Part is` for the prefix. Enter `Good` for the data. Enter `0x0a0d` for the suffix.
3. From the **COM Port Setup** drop-down list, select COM1.
4. Enter a read/write timeout period of 500 milliseconds.
5. Click **Configure** to open the COM port properties dialog box. Set the port properties to exactly match the settings of the device that you are communicating with.

The Serial I/O tool looks as follows:



6. Click **Write** three times. The Serial I/O tool sends the prefix `The Part is` `Good` from COM1 to the port. The suffix `0x0a0d` tells the port to perform a Control and a Line Feed.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Serial I/O tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Serial I/O tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Set up all the options in the Serial I/O tool to perform the desired function. This includes the COM port setup, the COM port properties, and the format number options. Click **Write** or **Read** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Serial I/O tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the COM port number and all option settings. The **Add to Script** button is changed to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Sound Tool

Introduction.....	438
Description of Sound Tool Options	439
Example of Using the Sound Tool	441
Point & Click Script	442

Introduction

The Sound tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to play .WAV sound files using any standard sound card that is configured to support .WAV files. To set the audio device properties, such as volume, tone, and balance, use the standard Windows utilities.



Figure 99: Sound Tool

To open a Sound tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Sound** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The Sound tool is compatible with all other tools. It does not use images or ROIs.

You can have only one Sound tool open at a time.

Description of Sound Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Sound tool dialog box.

WAV File

Enter the full path to the .WAV audio file that you want to play. You can also use the **Browse** button to locate the file.

PLAY

Click this button to play the specified .WAV file once. The file is played either synchronously or asynchronously depending on whether the **Wait Until Play Completes** checkbox is selected.

LOOP

Click this button to play the specified .WAV file continuously until you click either **Stop** or **Play**. The file is always played asynchronously.

STOP

Click this button to stop any playback that is in progress.

Wait Until Play Completes

Select this checkbox if you want the Sound tool to wait for the sound file to complete before returning its status (synchronous playback). Clear this checkbox if you want the Sound tool to return its status immediately after initiating the playback (asynchronous playback).

For a long .WAV file, it is recommended that you run the Sound tool asynchronously.

Note that if you attempt to play multiple sounds consecutively in asynchronous mode, some of the playbacks may be preempted. You can add a DELAY step to the point & click script to solve this problem.

Add to Script

After you perform the desired operation, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Example of Using the Sound Tool

This example shows how to use the Sound tool.

The operation is as follows:

1. Open the Sound tool (if it is not already open).
2. Click **Browse** and select a .WAV sound file to play.
3. Click **PLAY** to play the sound file once.
4. Click **LOOP** to play the sound file continuously.
5. Click **STOP**.

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Sound tool’s point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Sound tool’s functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Set up all the options in the Sound tool to perform the desired function. This includes the path name of the .WAV file and the **Wait Until Play Completes** checkbox. Click **PLAY**, **LOOP**, or **STOP** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

The Sound tool sets point & click variables as output status. These variables are described in [Table 6](#).

Table 6: Sound Tool Variables

Variable	Status
WAV_OPERATION (number variable)	0 = Stop playback 1 = Asynchronous play 2 = Asynchronous loop 3 = Synchronous play
WAV_PLAY_STATUS (number variable)	0 = Don't know (asynchronous play mode) 1 = Play OK >1 = Error in play

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Sound tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the path name of the .WAV file and the synchronous/asynchronous play mode setting. The **Add to Script** button is changed to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Using the Text Tool

Introduction.....	446
Description of Text Tool Options	448
Example of Using the Text Tool	451
Point & Click Script	454

Introduction

The Text tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to add text to your images. You can add text directly on the image or add text using a transparent overlay.

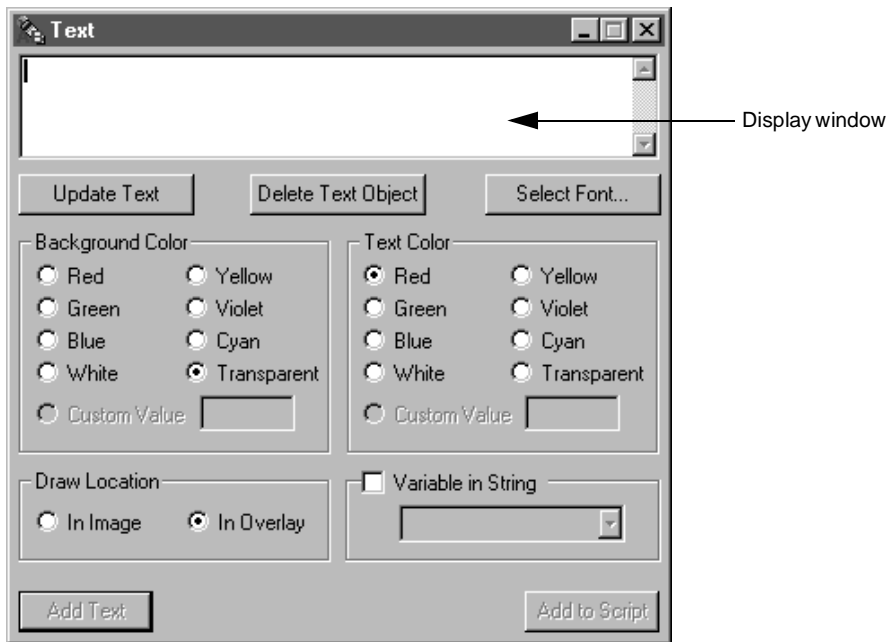


Figure 100: Text Tool

To open a Text tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Text** from the Tools menu.

Note: The text tool is fully compatible with all other tools, image types, and ROIs.

You can have up to 100 Text tools open at the same time. However, you can place multiple text objects on an image or on different images using the same Text tool.

Description of Text Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Text tool dialog box.

Display Window

Enter the text that you want to add in this field. Each line of text can be up to 100 characters in length and you can have up to 10 lines of text. To move to the next line, press <Enter> on the keyboard.

Note that some versions of Windows require <Ctrl> + <Enter> to move the cursor to the next line.

Update Text

Click this button to modify the text in a text object. Activate the ROI (red) surrounding the text object you want to update, make your changes in the display window, and then click **Update Text**. The text object is now updated with your changes.

Delete Text Object

Click this button to delete a text object. Activate the ROI (red) surrounding the text object that you want to delete, then click **Delete Text Object**. The text object (including wording) is deleted.

Note that if **Draw in Image** is selected and you delete the ROI surrounding the text object, only the ROI is deleted; the associated text is permanently placed in the image and cannot be deleted.

Select Font...

Click this button to select font, font style, and font size.

Background Color

Click the appropriate radio button to specify the background color. If you want to use a custom color, click **Custom Value** and enter the custom color value in the text box. Custom colors are primarily used when adding text to a 32-bit or floating-point image.

Text Color

Click the appropriate radio button to specify the text color. If you want to use a custom color, click **Custom Value** and enter the custom color value in the text box. Custom colors are primarily used when adding text to a 32-bit or floating-point image.

Draw Location

Select the appropriate radio button to determine where to add text.

- **In Image** – Select if you want to add text directly in the image. The text object is added to the image within an ROI.
- **In Overlay** – Select if you want to overlay text on the image. The text object is added to the image within an ROI.

Variable in String

Select this checkbox if you want to use a point & click script variable in a text object. Select the variable from the drop-down list, which contains all the point & click script variables in your script. You can then add the variable %s in a string in the display window. The first %s variable in the string is updated with the value of the selected point & click script variable.

For example, assume that you select the **Variable in String** checkbox and select the variable PC_ScriptFailed. If you add the string “**The value of PC_ScriptFailed = %s**” in the display window, the value of the PC_ScriptFailed variable replaces %s when the script is run. So, if the value of **PC_ScriptFailed = 1.0000**, the text appears on the image as follows:

The value of PC_ScriptFailed = 1.0000

Note: If you clear this checkbox or if you select this checkbox and do not select a point & click script variable from the list, the %s variables in the strings are not updated.

Add Text

When all the options are set, click this button. Position the mouse cursor on the image location where you want to add the text. Click the left mouse button. The text object is added within an inactive ROI (green). To activate the text object (red), click on it with the right mouse button.

Because the tool adds the text object to the image within an ROI, you can move the text object as you would move any ROI. For more information about ROIs, refer to [page 36](#).

Add to Script

After you add the text, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

Example of Using the Text Tool

This example shows how to add text to the image Mixpoll, shown in [Figure 101](#).

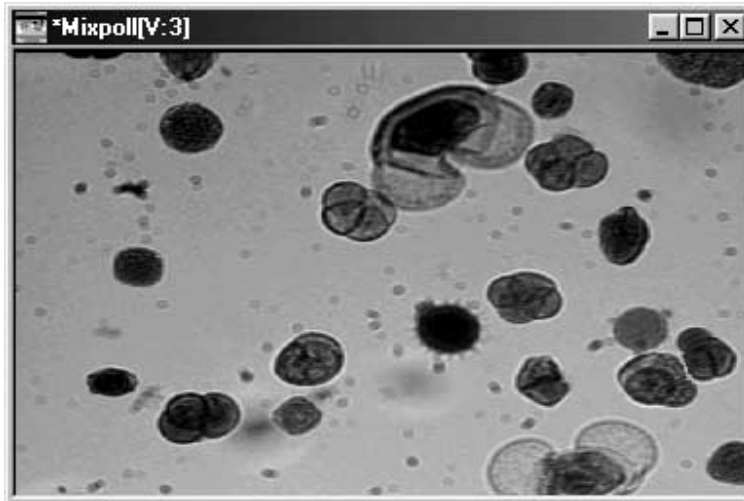


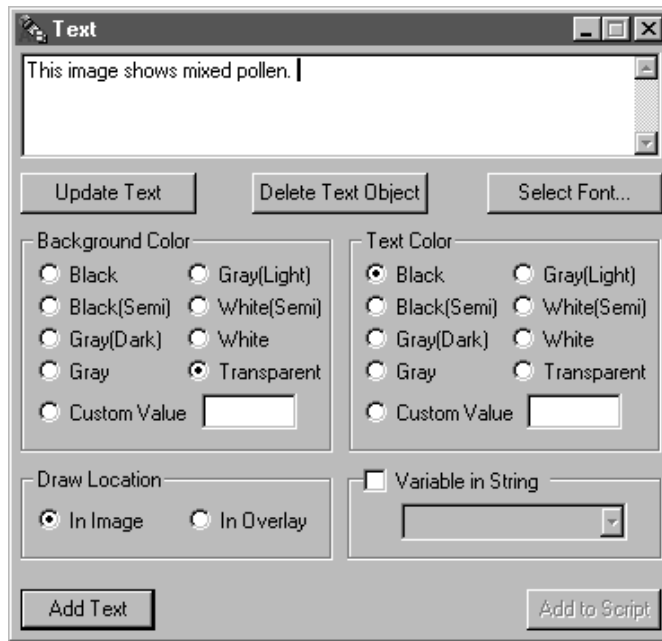
Figure 101: Text Tool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

1. Open a Text tool (if one is not already open).
2. Click **Draw in Image**.
3. In the display window, enter `This image shows mixed pollen.`
4. Select Arial, Bold, and 22 points for the font options.
5. Select Black for the text color.

6. Select Transparent for the background color.

The Text tool looks as follows:



7. Click **Add Text**. Position the mouse cursor on the location in the image where you want to add text. Click the left mouse button. *The text is added to the image within an inactive ROI (green).*
8. Right-click on the ROI surrounding the text object to make it active (red), as follows:



Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Text tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Text tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Set up all the options in the Text tool. Click **Add Text** to add the text to the image, then click **Add to Script** to record the operation in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Text tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input image, all options, and the desired text. The **Add to Script** button is changed to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options. It is recommended that you click **Update Text** to view the results of your changes before saving the script.

Using the Threshold Tool

Introduction.....	456
Description of Threshold Tool Options.....	459
Example of Using the Threshold Tool.....	467
Point & Click Script	469


Introduction

The Threshold tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to threshold an image to create a binary image. A binary image has all pixel values set to either 1 (foreground/black) or 0 (background/white). The Morphology tool requires a binary image. The Blob Analysis and Edge Finder tools require a binary mask image.

You can threshold an image in one of the following ways:

- **Manually** – Manual thresholding is useful when lighting conditions are consistent. You threshold an image manually by specifying the high and low threshold values in the threshold display graph (see [page 459](#)) or in the Threshold Controls dialog box (see [page 463](#)).
- **Automatically** – Automatic thresholding is more reliable if your images may experience changes in lighting conditions. You threshold an image automatically by selecting the **Auto Threshold** checkbox in the Threshold Controls dialog box (see [page 463](#)).

Note that automatic thresholding is not appropriate for all images. It is intended for images whose histogram has a bimodal distribution. If automatic thresholding does not produce the results you expect, use manual thresholding instead.

To open a Threshold tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Threshold** from the Tools menu.

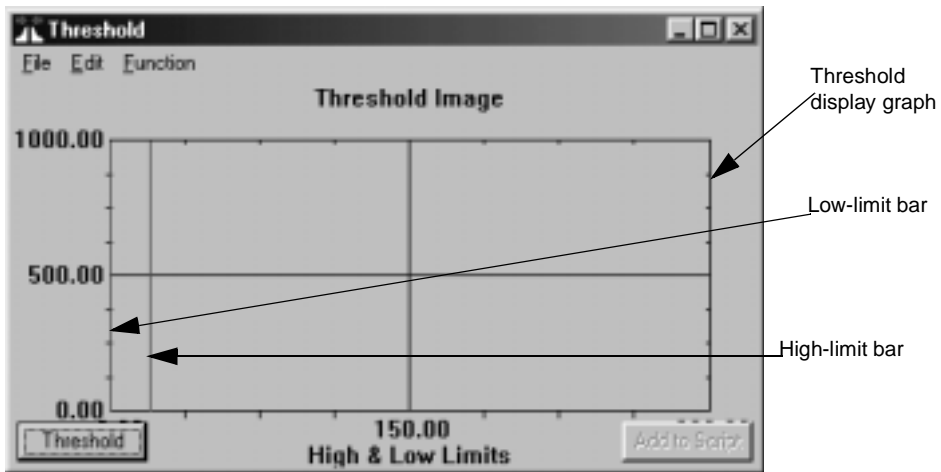


Figure 102: Threshold Display Graph

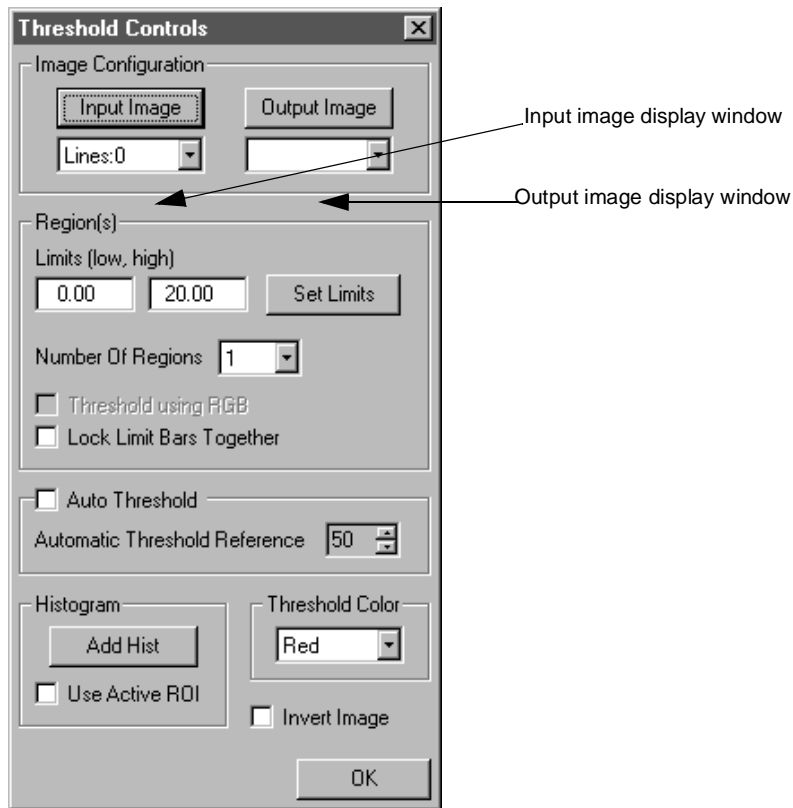


Figure 103: Threshold Controls Dialog Box

Notes: The Threshold tool is fully compatible with all other tools, ROIs, and images.

You can have up to 100 Threshold tools open at the same time.

Description of Threshold Tool Options

This section contains a description of the options in the Threshold tool dialog boxes.

29

Threshold Display Graph Options

Threshold Display Graph

The threshold display graph shows the low and high threshold limit bars and (if desired) a histogram of the image you are thresholding.

The high-limit and low-limit bars in the graph allow you to select a range of threshold values. You can adjust the low and high range by dragging the vertical bars with the left mouse button. As you drag the bar, the image you are thresholding is updated to show the new limits. You can also view or set the exact value for the high and low limits by using the **Limits (low, high)** text boxes in the Threshold Controls dialog box. For more information, refer to [page 463](#).

Threshold

After you have set the low threshold limit, high threshold limit, and all other options, click this button to threshold the image. If you do not select an output image, the Threshold tool automatically creates an output image for you.

Add to Script

After you threshold the image, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “Using the Point & Click Script Tool.”

File Menu Options

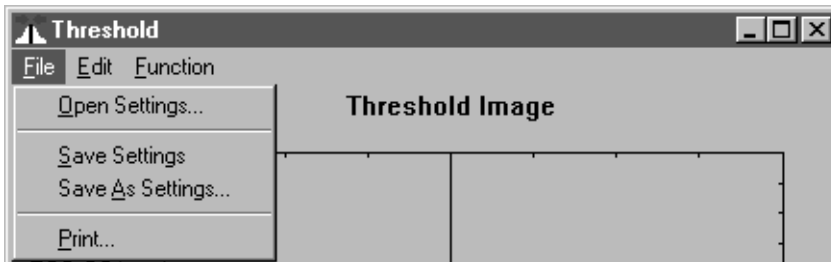


Figure 104: ThresholdTool - File Menu

Open Settings...

Select this option to open a graph configuration from disk. An Open dialog box is displayed. When you open a graph configuration (the file name must be followed by the extension `.ths`), the object is loaded into the Threshold tool.

Note that a graph configuration includes the x-axis and y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save Settings

Select this option to save a graph configuration back to disk. The Threshold tool saves x-axis limits, y-axis limits, graph text, and grid markings.

Save As Settings...

Select this option to save a graph configuration to disk with a different name. A Save As dialog box is displayed. Select the directory and enter a file name with the extension `.ths`.

Note that if you save a graph configuration with the name default.ths, the file will automatically open each time you open a Threshold tool. You must save default.ths in the DT_Thrsh directory (located in C:\GLI\GLI\Tools, by default).

Print...

Select this option to print the graph.

29

Edit Menu Options

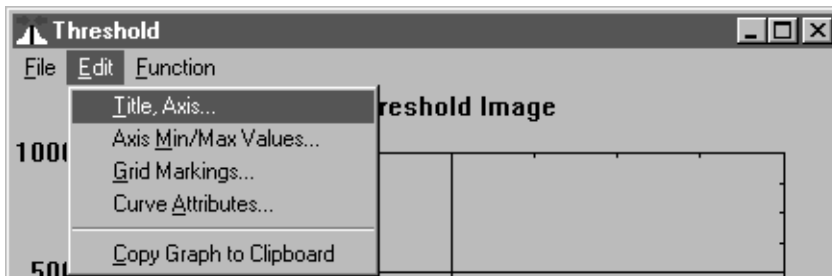


Figure 105: Threshold Tool - Edit Menu

Title, Axis...

Select this option to change the graph text for the title, x-axis, and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Set Title, X & Y Labels dialog box, then click **OK**.

Axis Min/Max Values...

Select this option to change the minimum and maximum limits for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Axis Min/Max Values dialog box, then click **OK**.

You can also set the minimum and maximum values for the graph by performing the following steps:

1. Move the mouse cursor to the point in the graph at which you want to start drawing the rectangular region.
2. While holding down the <Shift> and <Ctrl> keys at the same time, click and hold down the left mouse button.
3. Drag the mouse until you complete the rectangular region. While dragging the mouse, you will see the proposed zooming region on the graph.
4. When you have completed the rectangular region, release the left mouse button. The graph now zooms to the desired minimum and maximum axis points.

You can switch back and forth between zoomed and unzoomed modes by double-clicking in the graph with the right mouse button.

Grid Markings...

Select this option to change the grid markings for the x-axis and y-axis. Enter the appropriate values in the Grid Markings dialog box, then click **OK**.

Curve Attributes...

Select this option to change the style and color of the curve selected in the threshold display graph. Click the appropriate radio buttons in the Curve Attributes dialog box, then click **OK**.

Copy Graph To Clipboard

Select this option to copy the threshold display graph to the clipboard.

Function Menu Options

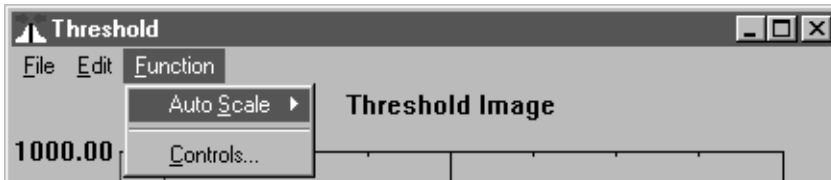


Figure 106: Threshold Tool - Function Menu

Auto Scale

The **Auto Scale** option allows you to specify how to scale the x-axis and y-axis of the graph:

- **Selected Curve** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit the selected curve on the graph.
- **All Curves** – Select this option to automatically scale the x-axis and y-axis to best fit all curves on the graph.

Controls...

Select this option to open the Threshold Controls dialog box. For more information, refer to the following section.

Threshold Controls Dialog Box Options

The Threshold Controls dialog box is automatically opened when you open the Threshold tool. You can also open it by selecting **Function | Controls**. When you have specified all appropriate values, click **OK** to save the settings and close the dialog box.

Input Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the input image. The image name is shown in the Input Image display window. You can also select the input image from the display window drop-down list.

Output Image

Click this button to load the image in the active viewport as the output image. The image name is shown in the Output Image display window. You can also select the output image from the display window drop-down list or enter your own name for the output image in the display window text box.

If you do not select an output image, the Threshold tool automatically creates an output image for you. Note, however, that if you intend to use multiple output images in a point & click script, it is recommended that you either use the image in the active viewport as the output image or select the output image from the drop-down list. This ensures that each output image in the point & click script has a unique name.

Limits (low, high)

Enter the low and high threshold limits in these text boxes, then click **Set Limits**. When you click **Set Limits**, the high-limit and low-limit bars in the threshold display graph and the image are updated to reflect the new values.

When you drag the high-limit and low-limit bars in the threshold display graph with the mouse, the low and high threshold limits are displayed in these fields.

Note that the range between the low threshold limit and the high threshold limit must be at least 1.

Number of Regions

Select the number of regions that you want to work with (maximum of 6) from the drop-down list. The threshold display graph is updated to reflect the number of regions you specify.

Threshold Using RGB/Threshold Using HSL

Select this checkbox if you are thresholding a 24-bit RGB or HSL color image. The Threshold tool automatically sets **Number of Regions** to 3 and adds three sets of limit bars that correspond to the red, green, and blue color planes of an RGB color image or to the hue, saturation, and luminance of an HSL color image.

Lock Limit Bars Together

Select this checkbox if you want both limit bars to move together whenever you move either of the limit bars with the mouse.

Auto Threshold

Select this checkbox to enable automatic thresholding. Clear the checkbox to disable automatic thresholding.

If automatic thresholding is enabled, select a reference value from the **Automatic Threshold Reference** spin box. Assuming that the lower threshold value is 0, the reference value is the position (percentage) between the left-most peak in the associated histogram and the right-most peak in the associated histogram at which the upper threshold value occurs. By default, the reference value is 50%.

Histogram

After you set the input image, click the **Add Hist** button to add a histogram to the graph. The histogram is useful as a visual aid in determining the correct threshold limits. If you are thresholding a RGB color image and **Threshold using RGB** is selected, a histogram for each color plane (red, green, and blue) is added to the graph.

If you select the **Use Active ROI** checkbox, the histogram is created with respect to the active ROI for the input image. If you clear the **Use Active ROI** checkbox, the histogram is created from the entire image.

When you add a histogram to the graph, the **Add Hist** button changes to a **Remove Hist** button. Click **Remove Hist** to remove the histogram from the graph.

Threshold Color

Select the color that you want to display the thresholding in. This serves as a visual aid only.

Invert Image

Select this checkbox to invert the output binary image. The foreground pixels are output as background pixels and the background pixels are output as foreground pixels.

Example of Using the Threshold Tool

The following example shows how to use the Threshold tool to create a binary image from the image Mixpoll, shown in [Figure 107](#).

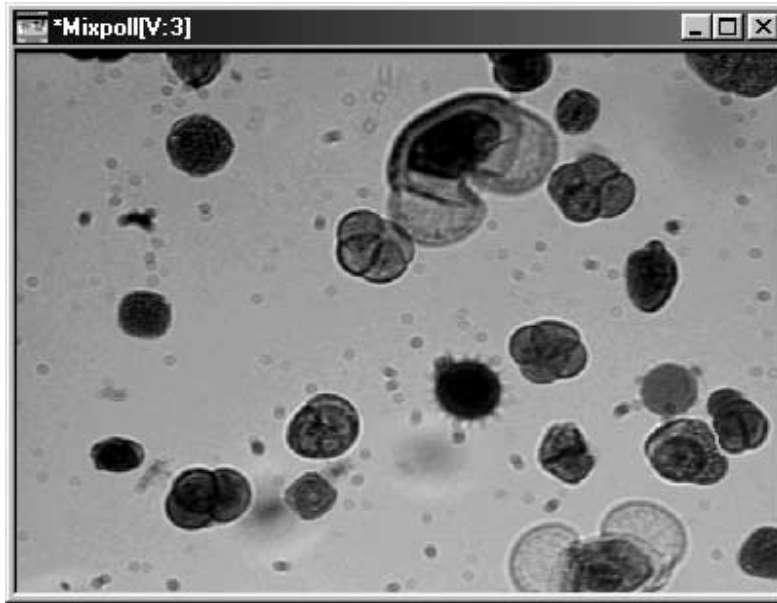
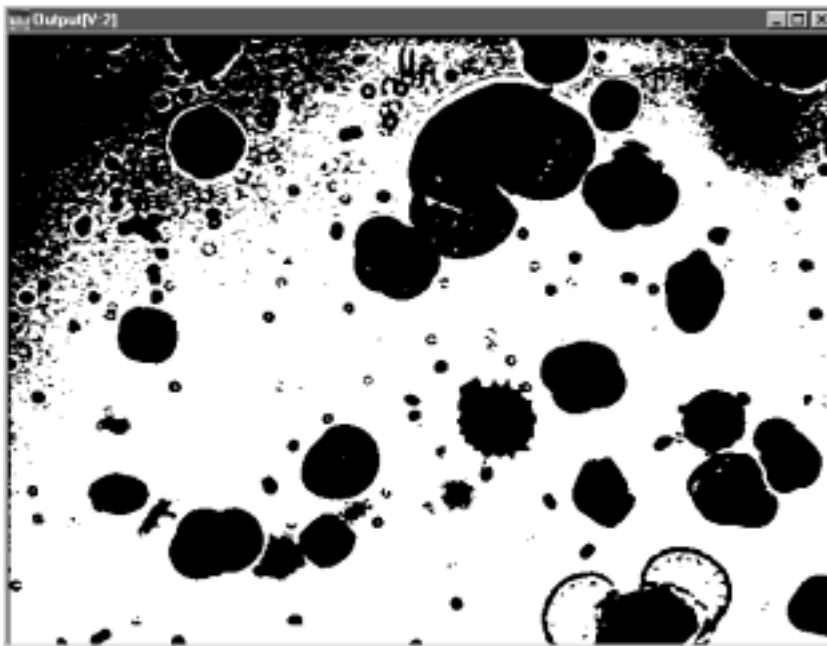


Figure 107: ThresholdTool Example Image

The operation is as follows:

1. Open a Threshold tool (if one is not already open).
2. Click in the viewport on the image Mixpoll with the left mouse button. It is now the active viewport and is denoted with an asterisk. Click **Input Image** to load Mixpoll as the input image.

3. Set the low threshold limit to 0 and the high threshold limit to 105. You can do this either by dragging the limit bars in the threshold display graph or by entering the values in the **Limits (low, high)** text boxes and then clicking **Set Limits**.
4. Click **Threshold** on the Threshold Display graph to threshold the input image.
The input image Mixpoll is thresholded and produces a binary copy of itself. The Threshold tool automatically creates the binary image Output, as follows:



You can use the binary image for anything you want. If you intend to use the binary image with the Blob Analysis tool (as the mask image), you may want to further process (clean) the binary image using the Morphology tool. For more information, refer to [Chapter 20, “Using the Morphology Tool.”](#)

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the Threshold tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

29

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the Threshold tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Set up all the options in the Threshold tool to perform the desired function. This includes the input and output images, the threshold limits, and all other options. Click **Threshold** to perform the desired action, then click **Add to Script** to record the desired action in the Point & Click Script tool.

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the Threshold tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the input and output images, the threshold limits, and all options. The **Add to Script** button is changed to a **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.

30

Using the TWAIN Tool

Introduction.....	472
Description of TWAIN Tool Options.....	473
Point & Click Script	475

Introduction

The TWAIN tool is supplied with GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2). It allows you to acquire 24-bit color or 8-bit grayscale images from devices, such as scanners, that provide TWAIN drivers.

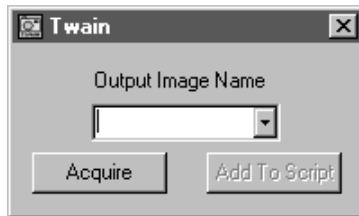



Figure 108: TWAINTool

To open a TWAIN tool, select the  icon from the Toolbox or select **Twain** from the Tools menu.

Notes: The TWAIN tool is fully compatible with all tools. You can acquire 24-bit color and 8-bit grayscale images only. ROIs are not used.

You can have only one TWAIN tool open at a time.

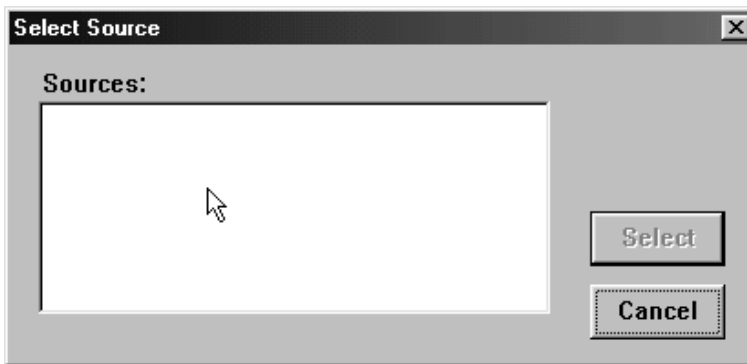
Description of TWAINTool Options

Output Image Name

Enter the name that you want to use to identify the image acquired from the TWAIN device in the text box. If you previously acquired an image from a TWAIN device, the name of the image is listed in the drop-down list.

Acquire

After you enter a name for the image, click this button to acquire the image from the TWAIN device. The Select Source dialog box appears.



All available devices with TWAIN drivers are listed in the Sources window.

Click the TWAIN device that you want to use, then click **Select**, or double-click the TWAIN device to select it. The TWAIN manager that is provided by the device's manufacturer is displayed. Use the TWAIN manager to configure the TWAIN device and to acquire an image from the TWAIN device. For information, refer to the documentation provided with the TWAIN device.

Note that when you acquire the image from the TWAIN device, the image is brought into GLI/2. To save the image, you must save it within GLI/2.

Once you have acquired an image from the TWAIN device, close the TWAIN manager to return to the Output Image Name dialog box.

Add to Script

After you acquire the image from the TWAIN device, click this button to add the operation to a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23](#), “[Using the Point & Click Script Tool.](#)”

Point & Click Script

This section describes the specific use of the TWAIN tool's point & click script functionality with respect to adding and editing a point & click script. For more information, refer to [Chapter 23, "Using the Point & Click Script Tool."](#)

Adding to the Point & Click Script

To add the TWAIN tool's functionality to a point & click script, you must first have the Point & Click Script tool open. Then, set up all the options in the TWAIN tool to perform the desired function. This includes specifying the name of the acquired image and configuring the TWAIN device. Use the TWAIN manager to acquire the image, then click **Add to Script** to record the action in the Point & Click Script tool.

30

Editing the Point & Click Script

From within the Point & Click Script tool, double-click the script item that you want to edit, or select the script item and click **Edit**. The Point & Click Script tool is grayed out and the TWAIN tool is set up exactly as it was when you previously recorded the script item. This includes the name of the acquired image and the configuration of the TWAIN device. The **Add to Script** button changes to an **Update Script** button, indicating that you are editing a point & click script item. Change the desired options and click **Update Script**. The script item is saved back to the point & click script with the new options.



Product Support

General Checklist 478

Service and Support..... 479

General Checklist

Should you experience problems using GLOBAL LAB Image/2 (GLI/2), please follow these steps:

1. Read all the appropriate sections of this manual. Make sure that you have added any “Read This First” information to your manual and that you have used this information.
2. Check the GLOBAL LAB Image/2 CD-ROM for a README file. If present, read this file for the latest installation and usage information.
3. Check that you have installed your software properly. For information, refer to [Chapter 1, “Installing GLOBAL LAB Image/2.”](#)
4. Check that you have installed your frame grabber board properly. For information, refer to the documentation supplied with your board.
5. Check that you have installed the device driver for your frame grabber board properly. For information, refer to the documentation supplied with your board.

Note: If you are still having problems, follow the instructions provided in the next section.

Service and Support

If you have difficulty using GLI/2, the Data Translation Technical Support Department is available to provide technical assistance. Support upgrades, technical information, and software are also available.

All customers can always obtain the support needed. The first 90 days are complimentary, as part of the product's original warranty, to help you get your system running. Customers who call outside of this time frame can either purchase a support contract or pay a nominal fee (charged on a per-incident basis).

For "priority support," purchase a support contract. Support contracts guarantee prompt response and are very affordable; contact your local sales office for details.

Refer to the Data Translation Support Policy located at the end of this manual for a list of services included and excluded in our standard support offering.

31

Telephone Technical Support

Telephone support is normally reserved for original warranty and support-contract customers. Support requests from non-contract or out-of-warranty customers are processed after requests from original warranty and support-contract customers.

For the most efficient service, please complete the form on [page 481](#) and be at your computer when you call for technical support. This information helps to identify specific system and configuration-related problems and to replicate the problem in house, if necessary.

You can reach the Technical Support Department by calling (508) 481-3700 x1401.

If you are located outside the USA, call your local distributor. The name and telephone number of your nearest distributor are provided in your Data Translation catalog.

If you are leaving a message to request a support call, please include the following information:

- Your name (please include proper spelling),
- Your company or organization (please include proper spelling),
- A phone number,
- An e-mail address where you can be reached,
- The hardware/software product you need help on,
- A summary of the issue or question you have,
- Your contract number, if applicable, and
- Your product serial number or purchase date.

Omitting any of the above information may delay our ability to resolve your issue.

Information Required for Technical Support

Name: _____ Phone _____

Contract Number: _____

Address: _____

Data Translation hardware product(s): _____

serial number: _____

configuration: _____

Data Translation device driver - SPO number: _____

version: _____

Data Translation software - SPO number: _____

serial number: _____

version: _____

PC make/model: _____

operating system: _____

version: _____

Windows version: _____

processor: _____

speed: _____

RAM: _____

hard disk space: _____

network/number of users: _____

disk cache: _____

graphics adapter: _____

data bus: _____

I have the following boards and applications installed in my system: _____

I am encountering the following problem(s): _____

and have received the following error messages/codes: _____

I have run the board diagnostics with the following results: _____

You can reproduce the problem by performing these steps:

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

E-Mail and Fax Support

You can also get technical support by e-mailing or faxing the Technical Support Department:

- **E-mail:** You can reach Technical Support at the following address: tsupport@datx.com

Ensure that you provide the following minimum information:

- Your name,
- Your company or organization,
- A phone number,
- An e-mail address where you can be reached,
- The hardware/software product you need help on,
- A summary of the issue you are experiencing,
- Your contract number, if applicable, and
- Your product serial number or purchase date.

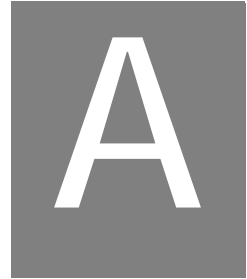
Omitting any of the above information may delay our ability to resolve your issue.

- **Fax:** Please photocopy and complete the form on [page 481](#), then fax Technical Support at the following number: (508) 481-8620.

Support requests from non-contract and out-of-warranty customers are processed with the same priority as telephone support requests.

World-Wide Web

For the latest tips, software fixes, and other product information, you can always access our World-Wide Web site free of charge at the following address: <http://www.datatranslation.com>



Using ROIs in Point & Click Scripts

Table 7 summarizes the input ROIs that you can create for each GLI/2 tool, the output ROIs that are created by each tool, and the input ROIs that are automatically recreated at run-time in your point & click script.

Table 7: GLI/2 ROI Usage

Tool	Input ROIs Used	Output ROIs Created	Automatically Recreates Input ROIs at Run-Time in a Point & Click Script
Arithmetic	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
AVI Player	None	None	N/A
Blob Analysis	Rectangle	Freehand	Yes
Calibration	Point	None	No
Color Plane	None	None	N/A
Custom Script	None	None	N/A
Display	All	None	No
Edge Finder	Line	Freehand line, freehand, point	Yes
	Rectangle	Freehand	Yes
	Ellipse Poly line Freehand line Poly freehand Freehand	Freehand line, freehand, point	No
Export	Line Rectangle ^b	None	N/A
File Manager	None	None	N/A

Table 7: GLI/2 ROI Usage (cont.)

Tool	Input ROIs Used	Output ROIs Created	Automatically Recreates Input ROIs at Run-Time in a Point & Click Script
Filter	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
Histogram	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
Image Manager	None	None	N/A
Image Modifier (Crop tab only)	Rectangle	None	Yes
	Ellipse	None	Yes
	Poly freehand	None	No
	Freehand	None	No
Import	None	None	N/A
Line Profile	Line	None	Yes
	Poly line	None	No
	Freehand line	None	No
Measurement	All	None	No
Morphology	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
Picture	None	None	N/A
Pixel Change	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
Point & Click Script	None	None	N/A
Prompt	None	None	N/A

A

Table 7: GLI/2 ROI Usage (cont.)

Tool	Input ROIs Used	Output ROIs Created	Automatically Recreates Input ROIs at Run-Time in a Point & Click Script
ROI Manager: Draw tab	All	Point Line Ellipse Rectangle	No ^c
ROI Manager: Position tab	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
Serial I/O	None	None	N/A
Sound	None	None	N/A
Text	None	Rectangle	Yes
Threshold	All	None	Point, rectangle, ellipse, and line ROIs only. ^a
TWAIN	None	None	N/A

- a. Poly line, freehand line, poly freehand, and freehand ROIs are not automatically recreated at run-time in a point & click script.
- b. The line and rectangle ROIs are used by the Export tool, but they are created and recreated by other tools.
- c. If desired, you can use the **Open ROI** option in your point & click script to open an ROI previously saved using the **Save As ROI** option.

Index

A

- Acquire button [357](#)
- Activate Threshold Controls option
 - Edge Finder tool [182](#)
 - Filter tool [222](#)
- Activate Thresholding Controls option
 - (Blob Analysis tool) [95](#)
- active cell (pixel)
 - Filter tool [223](#)
 - Morphology tool [338](#)
- active ROI [38](#)
- Add All button [106](#)
- Add button
 - Export tool [197](#), [199](#)
 - Import tool [274](#), [276](#)
- Add Hist button (Threshold tool) [466](#)
- Add Histogram button
 - Display tool [164](#)
 - Histogram tool [234](#)
- Add Kernel button [338](#)
- Add Line Profile option [282](#)
- Add Text button [450](#)
- Add to List button [106](#)
- Add to Script button
 - Arithmetic tool [59](#)
 - AVI Player tool [71](#)
 - Blob Analysis tool [99](#)
 - Calibration tool [125](#)
 - Color Plane tool [134](#)
 - Custom Script tool [143](#)
 - Display tool [165](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [185](#)
 - Export tool [197](#)
 - File Manager tool [211](#)
 - Filter tool [226](#)
 - Histogram tool [234](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [261](#), [263](#), [265](#)
 - Import tool [275](#), [276](#)
 - Line Profile tool [282](#)
 - Measurement tool [327](#)
 - Morphology tool [339](#)
 - Picture tool [357](#)
 - Pixel Change tool [364](#)
 - Prompt tool [405](#), [407](#)
 - ROI Manager tool [417](#), [419](#)
 - Serial I/O tool [434](#)
 - Sound tool [440](#)
 - Text tool [450](#)
 - Threshold tool [459](#)
- Add to Script option
 - Export tool [200](#)
- Angle option [326](#)
- Append to Disk option
 - Blob Analysis tool [94](#)
 - Histogram tool [243](#)
 - Line Profile tool [293](#)
 - Measurement tool [314](#)
- application, *see* main application
- Arithmetic tool [54](#)
- Arrange Icons option [18](#)
- Assign statement [389](#)
- Associate Active Image option [156](#)
- Asynchronous option [432](#)
- Attach Object to All Images option [121](#)
- Attach Object To Image option [121](#)

- attaching ROIs [38](#)
- Auto Increment option [415](#)
- Auto Run option [391](#)
- Auto Scale option
 - Display tool [156](#)
 - Histogram tool [239](#)
 - Line Profile tool [287](#)
 - Threshold tool [463](#)
- Auto Set End Points option [164](#)
- Auto Threshold option
 - Blob Analysis tool [96](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [183](#)
 - Threshold tool [465](#)
- Ave. option (Line Profile tool) [296](#), [298](#)
- Average option (Picture tool) [354](#)
- AVI File Name option [68](#)
- AVI files, creating from bitmap files [46](#)
- AVI Player tool [66](#)
- AVI View window [68](#)
- Axis Min/Max Values option
 - Display tool [155](#)
 - Histogram tool [236](#)
 - Line Profile tool [284](#)
 - Threshold tool [461](#)

B

- Background Color option [449](#)
- BASIC-like scripting [140](#)
- binary morphology operations, *see*
 - Morphology tool
- bitmap files, converting to an .AVI file
 - [46](#)
- Blob Analysis tool [76](#)
- Blob Settings option [91](#)
- Blob Statistics option [97](#)
- Brightness option (Display tool) [161](#)

- built-in thresholding
 - Blob Analysis tool [95](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [182](#)
- Button No. 1 Text / Button No. 2 Text
 - option [404](#)
- Button tab (Prompt tool) [403](#)

C

- Calculate Distance Measurements
 - option [294](#)
- Calculate Histogram Stats option [244](#)
- Calculate Script Variable option [315](#)
- Calculation level option [102](#)
- Calibrate button [125](#)
- calibration objects
 - Calibration tool [125](#)
 - Picture tool [355](#)
- Calibration Objects in System list [124](#)
- Calibration option (Picture tool) [355](#)
- calibration points [122](#)
- Calibration tool [116](#)
- Cascade option [18](#)
- center cell (pixel)
 - Filter tool [223](#)
 - Morphology tool [338](#)
- Center Scrollbars button [161](#)
- Change button [364](#), [417](#)
- Change Overlay option [363](#)
- Change using RGB Values option [363](#)
- Channel option [352](#)
- Child Level option [97](#)
- Clear Blobs option [103](#)
- Clear Script option [379](#)
- clipboard [47](#)
- Close Tools option [378](#)
- Close Viewport option [16](#)

color images 28, 45, 133
Color of found blobs option 103
Color Plane tool 132
COM port 432
Compute button 327
Configure option 432
contours, finding 174
Controls option 463
conventions used xviii
Copy Data to Clipboard option
 Blob Analysis tool 94
 Histogram tool 242
 Line Profile tool 292
 Measurement tool 313
Copy Graph to Clipboard option
 Display tool 156
 Histogram tool 237
 Line Profile tool 285
 Threshold tool 462
Copy option 376
Copy to Clipboard option
 Display tool 158
 main application 23
Counter Start option 354
Create New Image option 254
Crop button (Image Modifier tool) 261
Crop tab (Image Modifier tool) 259
Current Frame option 68
Curve Attributes option
 Display tool 155
 Histogram tool 237
 Line Profile tool 285
 Threshold tool 462
Curve Type option (Display tool) 162
Custom Script tool 140

D

Data option 430
DDE option (Export tool) 196, 199
DDE Transfer option
 Blob Analysis tool 92
 Display tool 157
 Histogram tool 241
 Line Profile tool 291
 Measurement tool 312
Debug button 142
Debug On option 376
Debug Time Delay option 377
Debug Window (Point & Click Script tool) 377
Delete All button
 Blob Analysis tool 106
 Image Manager tool 253
Delete all ROIs on tool closing option 103
Delete button
 Export tool 197, 199
 Image Manager tool 253
 Import tool 274, 276
 Point & Click Script tool 380
Delete Curve option
 Histogram tool 238
 Line Profile tool 287
Delete from List button 106
Delete Kernel button 338
Delete Object button 125
Delete ROIs button 40
Delete Text Object button 448
derivatives 286
Device option 349, 352
Display menu (main application) 19
Display tool 150
Divide option 222

- Do DDE Transfer option
 - Blob Analysis tool [107](#)
 - Histogram tool [245](#)
 - Line Profile tool [294](#)
 - Measurement tool [315](#)
- Do Thresholding option
 - Blob Analysis tool [107](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [180](#)
- Do While loop () [381](#)
- Don't Wait option [405](#)
- Draw button [415](#)
- Draw Location option [449](#)
- Draw tab (ROI Manager tool) [413](#)
- dttools.ini file [50](#)

E

- Edge Finder Settings option [179](#)
- Edge Finder tool [174](#)
- edges, finding [174](#), [299](#)
- Edit button
 - Custom Script tool [142](#)
 - Point & Click Script tool [380](#)
- Edit menu
 - Display tool [154](#)
 - Histogram tool [236](#)
 - Line Profile tool [284](#)
 - Point & Click Script tool [375](#)
 - Threshold tool [461](#)
- e-mail support [482](#)
- Enable option [356](#)
- Enable Time Stamping option [354](#)
- End Frame button [70](#)
- Entire Image button [415](#)
- Equalize button (Display tool) [164](#)
- error branch () [386](#)

- examples
 - Arithmetic tool [60](#)
 - AVI Player tool [72](#)
 - Blob Analysis tool [109](#)
 - Calibration tool [126](#)
 - Color Plane tool [135](#)
 - Custom Script tool [144](#)
 - Display tool [166](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [186](#)
 - Export tool [201](#)
 - File Manager tool [212](#)
 - Filter tool [227](#)
 - Histogram tool [246](#)
 - Image Manager tool [255](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [266](#)
 - Import tool [277](#)
 - Line Profile tool [301](#)
 - Measurement tool [328](#)
 - Morphology tool [340](#)
 - Picture tool [358](#)
 - Pixel Change tool [365](#)
 - Prompt tool [408](#)
 - ROI Manager tool [420](#)
 - Serial I/O tool [435](#)
 - Sound tool [441](#)
 - Text tool [451](#)
 - Threshold tool [467](#)
- Exit option (main application) [17](#)
- Export tool [192](#)

F

- failure indicator (Point & Click Script tool) [381](#)
- Failure Options option [378](#)
- false coloring of grayscale images [21](#)
- fax support [482](#)

- File Manager tool [206](#)
 - File menu
 - Blob Analysis tool [90](#)
 - Calibration tool [120](#)
 - Display tool [153](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [178](#)
 - File Manager tool [208](#)
 - Filter tool [220](#)
 - Histogram tool [235](#)
 - Line Profile tool [283](#)
 - main application [16](#)
 - Morphology tool [336](#)
 - Picture tool [348](#)
 - Point & Click Script tool [374](#)
 - Threshold tool [460](#)
 - File Name option (File Manager tool) [209](#)
 - File Open Multiple option [209](#)
 - File Open option [208](#)
 - File Save Last Opened option [209](#)
 - File Save option (File Manager tool) [208](#)
 - File Save/Append options
 - Blob Analysis tool [108](#)
 - Measurement tool [316](#)
 - Fill value (Image Modifier tool) [260](#), [265](#)
 - Filter button [226](#), [339](#)
 - Filter tool [218](#)
 - filters [7](#), [224](#)
 - Find All Edges option (Edge Finder tool) [184](#)
 - Find All Falling Edges option (Edge Finder tool) [184](#)
 - Find All Rising Edges option (Edge Finder tool) [184](#)
 - Find Blobs button [98](#)
 - Find Current button (Line Profile tool) [300](#)
 - Find Edge button (Edge Finder tool) [185](#)
 - Find First button (Line Profile tool) [300](#)
 - Find Next button (Line Profile tool) [300](#)
 - Find the First Edge option (Edge Finder tool) [184](#)
 - Find the Last Edge option (Edge Finder tool) [184](#)
 - first derivative [286](#)
 - Flip or Rotate option (Image Modifier tool) [263](#)
 - Flip/Rotate button (Image Modifier tool) [263](#)
 - Folder Path option [209](#)
 - For Next () loop [388](#)
 - Frame Size option [69](#)
 - Frame Skip option [70](#)
 - Frame Type option [351](#)
 - frames
 - moving backwards [69](#)
 - moving forwards [69](#)
 - Function menu
 - Display tool [156](#)
 - Histogram tool [238](#)
 - Line Profile tool [286](#)
 - Threshold tool [463](#)
- ## G
- Gain option
 - Arithmetic tool [58](#)
 - Filter tool [222](#)
 - Line Profile tool [296](#), [297](#)
 - Generate P&C Variable for selected parameter option [106](#)

- GLI.DEF file [51](#)
- graphs
 - histogram [234](#)
 - line profile [282](#)
 - output LUT [151](#)
 - threshold [459](#)
- Grayscale Color Mode option [21](#)
- grayscale images [44](#)
- Grid Markings option
 - Display tool [155](#)
 - Histogram tool [237](#)
 - Line Profile tool [285](#)
 - Threshold tool [462](#)
- Group Name option [274](#)
- Grow Options [102](#)

H

- Height option
 - Picture tool [350](#)
 - ROI Manager tool [415](#)
- help
 - online [11](#)
 - technical support [479](#)
- Hide Tools option [378](#)
- Histogram tool [232](#)
- Horizontal Contrast option (Display tool) [162](#)
- Horizontal Scale option [351](#)
- HSL color model [132](#)
- HSL option [134](#)
- hue [132](#)

I

- If Then () statement [384](#)
- Image Coordinates field [122](#)

- Image Count option [354](#)
- Image Dimensions option [252](#)
- Image Display Mode option (main application) [20](#)
- Image Manager tool [250](#)
- Image Modifier tool [258](#)
- Image Name option
 - AVI Player tool [70](#)
 - Picture tool [354](#)
- Image option [349](#)
- Image Type option
 - File Manager tool [209](#)
 - Image Manager tool [252](#)
 - main application [27](#)
 - Picture tool [351](#)
- images [46](#), [210](#)
- Import button [71](#)
- Import tool [272](#)
- initialization file [50](#)
- Initialize button [419](#)
- Input Image option
 - Arithmetic tool [57](#)
 - Blob Analysis tool [94](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [181](#)
 - Filter tool [221](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [260](#), [262](#), [264](#)
 - Morphology tool [337](#)
 - Threshold tool [464](#)
- Input ROI option
 - Edge Finder tool [182](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [260](#)
- Input ROIs option (Measurement tool) [316](#)
- installing the software [4](#)
- intensity of color [133](#), [134](#)
- Invert Image option [466](#)
- Iterations option [339](#)

K

Keep Bars in View option [290](#)
Keep Original Image Size (Image
Modifier tool) [261](#)
Keep parent-child relationship option
[104](#)
kernel height [339](#)
kernel list [337](#)
kernel width [339](#)
key [4](#), [9](#)
Key Test Utility [9](#)

L

Limits (low, high) option [464](#)
Line Profile tool [280](#)
Load Device Settings option [348](#)
localization file [51](#)
Lock Limit Bars Together option [465](#)
look-up table, *see* output LUT
Loop at end of sequence option [70](#)
LOOP button [439](#)
LR(X,Y) option [414](#)
luminance [133](#), [134](#)
LUT, *see* output LUT

M

main application [14](#), [16](#)
Mask Image option
Blob Analysis tool [94](#)
Edge Finder tool [181](#)
Maximum Area option
Blob Analysis tool [100](#)
Edge Finder tool [180](#)
Maximum Height option (Blob
Analysis tool) [101](#)

Maximum Width option (Blob
Analysis tool) [100](#)
Measurement tool [310](#)
Minimum Area option
Blob Analysis tool [100](#)
Edge Finder tool [180](#)
Minimum Height option (Blob
Analysis tool) [101](#)
Minimum Width option (Blob
Analysis tool) [100](#)
Morphology tool [334](#)
Move DN button [106](#)
Move UP button [106](#)

N

Never Hide Tool option
Histogram tool [245](#)
Line Profile tool [295](#)
New RGB Values option [363](#)
New Value option [363](#)
New Viewport option [16](#)
Noise Limits option [300](#)
Normalize Histogram option [244](#)
Normalize Selected Curve option [238](#)
Number of Regions option [465](#)
Number of ROIs to Use option [316](#)

O

Object Color option [182](#)
Offset option
Arithmetic tool [58](#)
Filter tool [222](#)
Line Profile tool [296](#), [297](#)
online help [11](#)
Open Image option [17](#)

- Open Images as option [211](#)
- Open Kernel option (Morphology tool) [336](#)
- Open Object option [120](#)
- Open ROI button [416](#)
- Open Script option [374](#)
- Open Settings option
 - Blob Analysis tool [90](#)
 - Display tool [153](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [178](#)
 - Histogram tool [235](#)
 - Line Profile tool [283](#)
 - Threshold tool [460](#)
- opening an image [49](#)
- operating systems supported [3](#)
- Operation option [58](#)
- Options menu
 - Blob Analysis tool [91](#)
 - Calibration tool [121](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [179](#)
 - main application [24](#)
 - Point & Click Script tool [376](#)
- Options option
 - Display tool [157](#)
 - File Manager tool [210](#)
 - Histogram tool [243](#)
 - Line Profile tool [290](#), [293](#)
 - Measurement tool [314](#)
- Output Image option
 - Arithmetic tool [57](#)
 - Filter tool [221](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [260](#), [263](#), [265](#)
 - Morphology tool [337](#)
 - Threshold tool [464](#)
- output LUT [21](#), [151](#)
- Output LUT Type option [159](#)
- Overlay option [23](#)

P

- P&C Script Settings option
 - Blob Analysis tool [92](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [180](#)
- P&C Script Variable option (Prompt tool) [405](#), [407](#)
- P&C Script Variables option (Export tool) [197](#)
- P&C Variable option (Blob Analysis tool) [106](#)
- Paste option [376](#)
- Perform Threshold on Output Image option [58](#)
- Picture tool [346](#)
- Pixel Change tool [362](#)
- PLAY button (Sound tool) [439](#)
- playing an .AVI file [69](#)
- Plugin option [352](#)
- Point & Click Script menu
 - Histogram tool [243](#)
 - Line Profile tool [293](#)
 - Measurement tool [314](#)
- Point & Click Script tool [370](#)
- point & click script variables
 - Blob Analysis tool [106](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [180](#)
 - Prompt tool [405](#), [407](#)
- reading and writing with Serial I/O tool [430](#)
- ROI Manager tool [419](#)
- transferring with Export tool [194](#)
- transferring with Import tool [273](#)
- using in Custom Script tool [140](#), [143](#)
- using in Text tool [449](#)

- point & click scripting
 - Arithmetic tool [63](#)
 - AVI Player tool [73](#)
 - Blob Analysis tool [113](#)
 - Calibration tool [129](#)
 - Color Plane tool [138](#)
 - Display tool [171](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [190](#)
 - Export tool [204](#)
 - File Manager tool [214](#)
 - Filter tool [230](#)
 - Histogram tool [248](#)
 - Image Modifier tool [270](#)
 - Import tool [278](#)
 - Line Profile tool [307](#)
 - Measurement tool [332](#)
 - Morphology tool [343](#)
 - Picture tool [359](#)
 - Pixel Change tool [367](#)
 - Prompt tool [410](#)
 - ROI Manager tool [424](#)
 - Serial I/O tool [436](#)
 - Sound tool [442](#)
 - Text tool [454](#)
 - Threshold tool [469](#)
 - TWAIN tool [475](#)
 - point & click scripting variables
 - Histogram tool [244](#)
 - Line Profile tool [294](#)
 - Measurement tool [315](#)
 - point & click variables
 - Sound tool [442](#)
 - points, calibration [122](#)
 - points, finding [174](#)
 - port [432](#)
 - Position tab (ROI Manager tool) [417](#)
 - Preferred Color Image Format option [71](#)
 - Prefix option [430](#)
 - Print Image option [17](#)
 - Print option
 - Display tool [154](#)
 - Histogram tool [236](#)
 - Line Profile tool [284](#)
 - Threshold tool [461](#)
 - printing [48](#)
 - product support [479](#)
 - Prompt Text option [405](#), [407](#)
 - Prompt tool [402](#)
- ## R
- Radius option [184](#)
 - Read button (Serial I/O tool) [433](#)
 - Read from Disk option [159](#)
 - Reference Point X Coordinate option [419](#)
 - Reference Point Y Coordinate option [419](#)
 - Refresh Viewports option [23](#)
 - regions of interest, *see* ROIs
 - related documents [xix](#)
 - Remove boundary blobs option [101](#)
 - Remove Hist option [466](#)
 - removing the software [12](#)
 - Rename Object button [125](#)
 - Rename option [253](#)
 - requirements [3](#)
 - Reset button [355](#)
 - Reset Counter on Run option [355](#)
 - Reset Trigger option [356](#)
 - Restore Original LUT button [163](#)
 - Results option [326](#)

- rewinding an .AVI file [69](#)
- RGB color model [132](#)
- RGB option [134](#)
- ROI Attachment option [24](#)
- ROI Manager tool [412](#)
- ROI Name option [416](#), [418](#)
- ROI Type option [26](#), [416](#)
- ROIs [25](#), [36](#), [484](#)
- Rotation option [419](#)
- Rotation tab (Image Modifier tool) [262](#)
- Run button
 - Arithmetic tool [59](#)
 - Custom Script tool [142](#)
 - Point & Click Script tool [381](#)

S

- saturation [132](#)
- Save As Kernel option (Morphology tool) [336](#)
- Save As Object option [120](#)
- Save As ROI button [416](#)
- Save As Script option [375](#)
- Save As Settings option
 - Blob Analysis tool [91](#)
 - Display tool [154](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [178](#)
 - Histogram tool [235](#)
 - Line Profile tool [283](#)
 - Threshold tool [460](#)
- Save Device Settings option [349](#)
- Save Image As option [17](#)
- Save Kernel As option (Filter tool) [221](#)
- Save Kernel List option (Morphology tool) [336](#)
- Save Kernel option (Filter tool) [220](#)
- Save option (File Manager tool) [210](#)
- Save Script option [375](#)
- Save Settings option
 - Blob Analysis tool [90](#)
 - Display tool [153](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [178](#)
 - Histogram tool [235](#)
 - Line Profile tool [283](#)
 - Threshold tool [460](#)
- Save/Append All Information to DISK option
 - Histogram tool [245](#)
 - Line Profile tool [295](#)
- saving an image [49](#)
- Scale button (Image Modifier tool) [265](#)
- Scale factor (Image Modifier tool) [265](#)
- Scale tab (Image Modifier tool) [264](#)
- Script File option [142](#)
- Script menu (Point & Click Script tool) [379](#)
- Script Variable Type option [407](#)
- second derivative [286](#)
- security key [4](#), [9](#)
- Select Font button [448](#)
- Selected Images option
 - Export tool [199](#)
 - Import tool [276](#)
- Selected Variables option
 - Export tool [197](#)
 - Import tool [274](#)
- Serial I/O tool [428](#)
- Server option
 - Export tool [195](#), [199](#)
 - Import tool [274](#), [276](#)
- service department [479](#)
- Set Active Cell in Kernel option (Filter tool) [223](#)

Set Active Cell option (Morphology tool) 339
Set MAX Measurement Bar to option 299
Set MIN Measurement Bar to option 299
Set Object to Default option 121
Settings menu (Picture tool) 349
Show Debug Box option 377
Show Distance Box option 287
Show Edges Box option 289
Show Output button 392
Show Statistics option (Histogram tool) 239
Show Toolbox option 30
Slope option 297
smoothing value 296
software installation 4
software removal 12
Sort ascending option 101
Sort options 96
sound files, playing 438
Sound tool 438
Start Frame button 70
Start Passthru option 351
starting the program 15
Statistic Settings option 91
Status Bar option 24
Step button 381
STOP button 439
stop light (Point & Click Script tool) 381
Stop Passthru option 351
Stop statement (Point & Click Script tool) 391
stopping an .AVI file 69
Storage Type option 353

Suffix option 431
support 479
 e-mail 482
 fax 482
 telephone 479
 World Wide Web 482
system requirements 3

T

Take Absolute Value of Output Image option 58
Take Derivative option 286
technical support 479
 e-mail 482
 fax 482
 telephone 479
 World-Wide Web 482
telephone support 479
Test Selected Calibration Object option 124
testing the security key 9
Text Color option 449
Text File option
 Export tool 195
 Import tool 274
Text tab (Prompt tool) 406
Text tool 446
Threshold button 459
Threshold Color option 466
Threshold tool 456
Threshold using HSL option 465
Threshold using RGB option 465
thresholding, automatic
 Blob Analysis tool 96
 Edge Finder tool 183
 Threshold tool 456, 465

- thresholding, built-in
 - Blob Analysis tool [95](#)
 - Edge Finder tool [182](#)
- thresholding, manual [456](#)
- thumbnail images [211](#), [252](#)
- Tile Horizontal option [18](#)
- Tile Vertical option [18](#)
- Time Delay option (Picture tool) [355](#)
- time delay script item (Point & Click Script tool) [391](#)
- Time Units option [355](#)
- Timeout option [352](#)
- Time-Out Read option [433](#)
- Time-Out Write option [432](#)
- Timer On option [379](#)
- Title, Axis option
 - Display tool [154](#)
 - Histogram tool [236](#)
 - Line Profile tool [284](#)
 - Threshold tool [461](#)
- Toolbar [31](#)
- Toolbar option [24](#)
- Toolbox [30](#)
- tools [14](#), [30](#)
- Tools menu (main application) [29](#)
- Total Frames option [68](#)
- Transfer button
 - Export tool [197](#), [200](#)
 - Import tool [274](#), [276](#)
- Transfer menu
 - Blob Analysis tool [92](#)
 - Display tool [157](#)
 - Histogram tool [240](#)
 - Line Profile tool [290](#)
 - Measurement tool [312](#)
- Transition option [357](#)
- Trigger Type option [356](#)

- Triggering option [356](#)
- troubleshooting checklist [478](#)
- TWAIN tool [472](#)
- Two Kernels option [223](#)
- Type option (Measurement tool) [317](#)

U

- UL(X,Y) option [414](#)
- Uninstall option [12](#)
- units of measure
 - Calibration tool [124](#)
 - Measurement tool [327](#)
 - Picture tool [355](#)
- Update option
 - Display tool [160](#)
 - Image Manager tool [252](#)
- Update Text button [448](#)
- Use Active ROI option
 - Display tool [164](#)
 - Threshold tool [466](#)
- Use Counter when saving option [211](#)
- Use HSL Arithmetic option [59](#)
- Use HSL Filtering option [222](#)
- Use RGB Arithmetic option [59](#)
- Use RGB Filtering option [222](#)

V

- Variable Group Name option [195](#)
- Variable in String option (Text tool) [449](#)
- Variables tab
 - Export tool [194](#)
 - Import tool [273](#)
- variables, *see* point & click script variables

Vertical Contrast option (Display tool)

[161](#)

Vertical Scale option [351](#)

viewports [14](#), [19](#), [20](#), [34](#)

Z

zoom [43](#)

W

Wait Until Play Completes option [440](#)

WAV File option [439](#)

While loop () [382](#)

Width option

Line Profile tool [296](#)

Picture tool [350](#)

ROI Manager tool [415](#)

Window menu (main application) [18](#)

Windows clipboard [47](#)

World Coordinates field [122](#)

World-Wide Web [482](#)

Write button (Serial I/O tool) [433](#)

Write to Disk option

Blob Analysis tool [94](#)

Display tool [159](#)

Histogram tool [242](#)

Line Profile tool [293](#)

Measurement tool [314](#)

X

X-Axis End Points option [164](#)

Y

Y,I,Q option [134](#)

YIQ color model [133](#)

Data Translation Support Policy

Data Translation, Inc. (Data Translation) offers support upon the following terms and conditions at prices published by Data Translation from time to time. Current price information is available from Data Translation, or its authorized distributor. If Licensee elects to obtain support services from Data Translation, Licensee must complete the Support Order Form attached hereto and submit to Data Translation the completed form, along with Licensee's purchase order for support. Support will only be provided for all (not less than all) Licensed Processors (as defined in the Data Translation Software License Agreement).

1. DEFINITIONS.

Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the meanings assigned thereto in the applicable Data Translation Software License Agreement (the Agreement). The following terms have the meanings set forth below:

Enhanced Release means a new release of any Product that contains new features and may contain corrections to previously identified errors. Enhanced Releases are designated in the tenths digit of the release designation (e.g., 1.2 is an Enhanced Release from 1.1.x).

Maintenance Release means a new release of any Product that contains corrections to previously identified errors. Maintenance Releases are designated in the hundredths digit of the release designation (e.g., 1.2.2 is a Maintenance Release from 1.2.1).

Major Release means a new version of any Product that involves major feature changes. Major Releases are designated in the ones digit of the release designation (e.g., 2.0, 3.0, etc., are Major Releases).

2. DATA TRANSLATION'S OBLIGATIONS.

Subject to the terms of the Agreement, and this Support Policy, Data Translation will provide the following support services (Support Services) for the Products comprising the Software, as they may be

used with the Licensed Processors:

(a) problem reporting, tracing and monitoring by internet electronic mail; (b) telephone support for problem determination, verification and resolution (or instruction as to work-around, as applicable) on a call-back basis during Data Translation's normal weekday business hours of 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m. Eastern Time, excluding holidays; (c) one (1) copy of each Maintenance Release for the Products comprising the Software; (d) commercially reasonable efforts to diagnose and resolve defects and errors in the Software and Documentation; and (e) furnishing of the maintenance and technical support described above, for the current release and the immediately previous Enhanced Release of the Software. Support Services will be delivered in English. Enhanced Releases and Major Releases can be purchased by Licensee at a discount of twenty five percent (25%) off the then-current list prices for such releases.

3. EXCLUSIONS.

Support Services do not include: (a) the provision of or support for Products other than those identified in the Agreement as to which the applicable license and support fees shall have been paid, including without limitation, compilers, debuggers, linkers or other third party software or hardware tools or components used in conjunction with any Product; (b) services required as a result of neglect, misuse, accident, relocation or improper operation of any Product or component thereof, or the failure to maintain proper operating and environmental conditions; (c) support for processors other than Licensed Processors or for Products modified by or on behalf of Licensee; (d) repair or restoration of any Software arising from or caused by any casualty, act of God, riot, war, failure or interruption of any electrical power, air conditioning, telephone or communication line or any other like cause.

It is Licensee's responsibility to have adequate knowledge and proficiency with the use of the compilers and various software languages and

Data Translation Support Policy

operating systems used with the Products, and this Support Policy does not cover training of, or detailed direction on the correct use of these compilers, operating systems, or components thereof. On-site assistance shall not be provided hereunder, but may be available on a per call basis at Data Translation's then current rates (Specialized Application Support Charges) for labor, travel time, transportation, subsistence and materials during normal business hours, excluding holidays observed by Data Translation. The troubleshooting of faulty Licensee programming logic may also be subject to Specialized Application Support Charges and is not covered under this Support Policy. Direct authoring or development of customized application code is not provided hereunder but may be available on a per call basis upon payment of Specialized Application Support Charges.

4. LICENSEE'S OBLIGATIONS.

Licensee agrees: (a) that the Designated Contact persons identified on the Support Order Form (or such other replacement individuals as Licensee may designate in writing to Data Translation) shall be the sole contacts for the coordination and receipt of the Support Services set forth in Section 2 of this Support Policy; (b) to maintain for the term of the support, an internet address for electronic mail communications with Data Translation; (c) to provide reasonable supporting data (including written descriptions of problems, as requested by Data Translation) and to aid in the identification of reported problems; (d) to install and treat all software releases delivered under this Support Policy as Software in accordance with the terms of the Agreement; and (e) to maintain the Agreement in force and effect.

5. TERM AND TERMINATION.

5.1 Term. For each Product comprising the Software, Support Services will begin on the later of the date the Software warranty granted in the Agreement expires or the date of Licensee's election to obtain Support Services and will apply to such Product for an initial term of one (1) year, unless an

alternative commencement date is identified in the Support Order Form. The initial term will automatically be extended for additional terms of one (1) year unless Support Services are terminated at the expiration of the initial term or any additional term, by either party upon thirty (30) days prior written notice to the other party.

5.2 Default. If Licensee is in default of its obligations under the Agreement (except for Licensee's obligation to maintain valid licenses for the Software, in which case termination is immediate) and such default continues for thirty (30) days following receipt of written notice from Data Translation, Data Translation may, in addition to any other remedies it may have, terminate the Support Services.

6. CHARGES, TAXES AND PAYMENTS.

6.1 Payment. The Support Fee in respect of the initial term, and, as adjusted pursuant to Section 5.2 in respect of additional terms, is payable in full prior to the commencement of the initial term or any additional term, as applicable.

6.2 Changes From Term to Term. The Support Fee and the terms and conditions of this Support Policy may be subject to change effective at the end of the initial term or any additional term by giving Licensee at least sixty (60) days prior written notice.

6.3 Taxes. The charges specified in this Support Policy are exclusive of taxes. Licensee will pay, or reimburse Data Translation, for all taxes imposed on Licensee or Data Translation arising out of this Support Policy except for any income tax imposed on Data Translation by a governmental entity. Such charges shall be grossed-up for any withholding tax imposed on Data Translation by a foreign governmental entity.

6.4 Additional Charges. Licensee agrees that Data Translation or its authorized distributor will have the right to charge in accordance with Data Translation's then-current policies for any services resulting from

Data Translation Support Policy

(a) Licensee's modification of the Software, (b) Licensee's failure to utilize the then-current release, or the immediately previous Enhanced Release, of the Software, (c) Licensee's failure to maintain Data Translation Support Services throughout the term of the Agreement, (d) problems, errors or inquiries relating to computer hardware or software other than the Software, or (e) problems, errors or inquiries resulting from the misuse or damage or of the Software or from the combination of the Software with other programming or equipment to the extent such combination has not been authorized by Data Translation. Pursuant to Section 2.4 of the Agreement, the Support Fee will also be adjusted in accordance with Data Translation's then current fee schedule as additional Licensed Processors are added. Support Fees do not include travel and living expenses or expenses for installation, training, file conversion costs, optional products and services, directories, shipping charges or the cost of any recommended hardware, third party software, or third party software maintenance fees or operating system upgrade.

7. WARRANTY LIMITATION.

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY STATED IN THIS SUPPORT POLICY, THERE ARE NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE SUPPORT SERVICES PROVIDED HEREUNDER (INCLUDING THE FIXING OF ERRORS THAT MAY BE CONTAINED IN THE APPLICABLE DATA TRANSLATION SOFTWARE), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES SET FORTH IN THIS SUPPORT POLICY ARE EXCLUSIVE, AND ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED.

8. GENERAL PROVISIONS.

Upon the election by Licensee to obtain Support Services, the terms of this Support Policy shall be governed by and are made a part of the Agreement.

